

FINAL SCOPING REPORT

Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment for the Proposed Development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure; near Smithfield, within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State.



April 2024

Prepared by:
Council for Scientific and
Industrial Research (CSIR)



Prepared for:
Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd and
Veroniva (Pty) Ltd



PART A: MAIN REPORT



SCOPING AND ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT

for the

Proposed Development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure; near Smithfield, within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State

FINAL SCOPING REPORT

April 2024

Prepared for:

Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd and Veroniva (Pty) Ltd

Prepared by:

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

P. O. Box 320, Stellenbosch, 7599
Tel: 021 888 2400

Postnet Suite 367, Private Bag x10, Musgrave
Road, 4062; Tel: 031 242 2300

Lead Authors:

Paul Lochner, Rohaida Abed, Suvasha Ramcharan, and Helen Antonopoulos (CSIR)

Specialists:

Johann Lanz; Corné Niemandt; Russell Tate; Samuel Laurence; Quinton Lawson; Bernard Oberholzer; Dr Jayson Orton; Dr John Almond; Dale Barrow; Hardy Luttig; Louis Jonk; and Julian Conrad

Mapping:

Luanita Snyman-Van der Walt (CSIR)

Formatting and Desktop Publishing:

Magdel van der Merwe (DTP Solutions)

Report Details

Title:	Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment for the Proposed Development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILo) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure; near Smithfield, within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State: FINAL SCOPING REPORT.	
Purpose of this report:	<p>The purpose of this Final Scoping Report is to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Present the details of and the need for the proposed project; ▪ Describe the affected environment at a sufficient level of detail to facilitate informed decision-making; ▪ Provide an overview of the Scoping Process that has been followed, including public consultation; ▪ Provide an overview of the potential positive and negative impacts of the proposed project on the environment; ▪ Provide recommendations to avoid or mitigate negative impacts and to enhance the positive benefits of the proposed project (based on a high-level); and ▪ Provide the Plan of Study for the EIA Phase for the proposed project. <p>The Draft Scoping Report was made available to all Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&APs), Organs of State and relevant stakeholders for a 30-day review period, which extended from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024, excluding public holidays. All comments submitted during the 30-day review period have been incorporated in a Comments and Responses Report, and addressed, as applicable and where relevant, and is included as an appendix to this Final Scoping Report. The Final Scoping Report is being submitted to the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) for consideration.</p>	
Prepared for:	Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd and Veroniva (Pty) Ltd	
Prepared by:	CSIR:	
Lead Authors:	P. O. Box 320, Stellenbosch, 7599	Postnet Suite 367, Private Bag x10, Musgrave Road, 4062
Mapping:	Tel: 021 888 2400	Tel: 031 242 2300
Specialists:	Email: ems@csir.co.za	Email: ems@csir.co.za
Formatting and Desktop Publishing:	Paul Lochner, Rohaida Abed, Suvasha Ramcharan and Helen Antonopoulos (CSIR)	
Date:	Luanita Snyman-Van der Walt (CSIR)	
DFFE Reference No:	Johann Lanz; Corné Niemandt; Russell Tate; Samuel Laurence; Quinton Lawson; Bernard Oberholzer; Dr Jayson Orton; Dr John Almond; Dale Barrow; Hardy Luttig; Louis Jonk; and Julian Conrad	
To be cited as:	Magdel van der Merwe, DTP Solutions	
	April 2024	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2535 	
	CSIR, 2024. Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment for the Proposed Development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILo) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure; near Smithfield, within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State. <u>Final Scoping Report</u> . CSIR Report Number: CSIR/SPLA/SECO/ER/2024/0005/B	

Contents

PART A: MAIN REPORT

Executive Summary

Chapter 1	Introduction
Chapter 2	Project Description
Chapter 3	Description of the Affected Environment
Chapter 4	Approach to EIA Process and Public Participation
Chapter 5	Project Alternatives
Chapter 6	Issues and Potential Impacts
Chapter 7	Plan of Study for EIA

PART B: APPENDICES

Appendix A	Curriculum Vitae of the Environmental Assessment Practitioners
Appendix B	Declaration of Independence of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner
Appendix C	Pre-Consultation with the Competent Authority
Appendix D	Maps
Appendix E	Specialist Site Sensitivity Verifications and Inputs
Appendix F	Database of Interested and/or Affected Parties
Appendix G	Public Participation for the Scoping Phase
Appendix H	Additional Information

Key Changes made from the DRAFT Scoping Report that was issued for I&AP, Stakeholder and Organ of State Review from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024

Key change description	Change made – Yes (denoted by ✓) or N/A (denoted by ■)															
	Chapters								Appendices							
	Summary	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
The term “Draft Scoping Report” and has been updated to “Final Scoping Report”, where applicable	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
Status update provided on Bid Window 7 of the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPPPP)	■	✓	■	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
Link to Appendix G.6 of the Final Scoping Report which includes feedback from the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) on the acceptance of the approach followed for Palaeontology (i.e. Site Sensitivity Verification confirming low to very low sensitivity with no further Palaeontology assessment needed).	✓	✓	■	■	✓	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■
Section 4.1.1.6 of Chapter 4 of the Final Scoping Report has been added to include feedback on the DFFE Solar Exclusion Norm published in GG 50388, GN 4558 on 27 March 2024.	■	■	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
Update of the preliminary mitigation measure for potential avifaunal impacts as follows (i.e. specifying that power lines of 132 kV or lower voltages should be considered to be placed underground where possible): <i>Where possible, power lines of 132 kV or less should be buried underground.</i>	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
Inclusion of Table 7.7 that provides a summary of the key issues raised by stakeholders during the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Report, as well as summarised key responses. Feedback that the issues raised by stakeholders during the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Report are in line with the potential impacts and issues initially raised by the specialists for further assessment in the EIA Phase. Feedback that no changes needed to be made to the Plan of Study for EIA based on comments received.	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■
Updated with SAHRA Case Numbers assigned to the projects.	■	■	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓
Updated with Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) Reference Numbers assigned to the projects.	✓	■	■	■	✓	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	✓
Updated with details of the Public Participation Process undertaken thus far, including the status and progress made on the Scoping Process such as status of comments received from key organs of state.	✓	✓	✓	■	✓	✓	✓	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■

Key change description	Change made – Yes (denoted by ✓) or N/A (denoted by ■)															
	Chapters								Appendices							
	Summary	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
Updated with additional information regarding the submission of the Application for EA to the DFFE, as well as DFFE's acknowledgment of receipt.	■	■	■	■	✓	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
Added proof of placement of the newspaper advertisements (Appendix G.2), correspondence and proof of correspondence sent to stakeholders for the Draft Scoping Report release (Appendix G.4); proof of submission of the Draft Scoping Report and Application Form to the DFFE (Appendix G.5); comments received from stakeholders during the 30-day review of the Draft Scoping Report (Appendix G.6); and Comments and Responses Trail (Appendix G.7).	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■
Updated the database of I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State to reflect additions to and removals from the database based on requests and additional research on valid contact details.	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	✓	■

Note from the CSIR: If sections are not mentioned in the above table, this means that either there have been no changes or no major changes to these sections.

Executive Summary

INTRODUCTION AND PROJECT LOCALITY

Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd (the project owner) with support from Veroniva (Pty) Ltd, are proposing to develop three Solar Photovoltaic (PV) and Battery Energy Storage System (BESS) Facilities, and associated Electricity Grid Infrastructure (EGI), near Smithfield within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State (Figure A). The project is referred to as the “Biesjesvlei” Solar PV, BESS and EGI development.

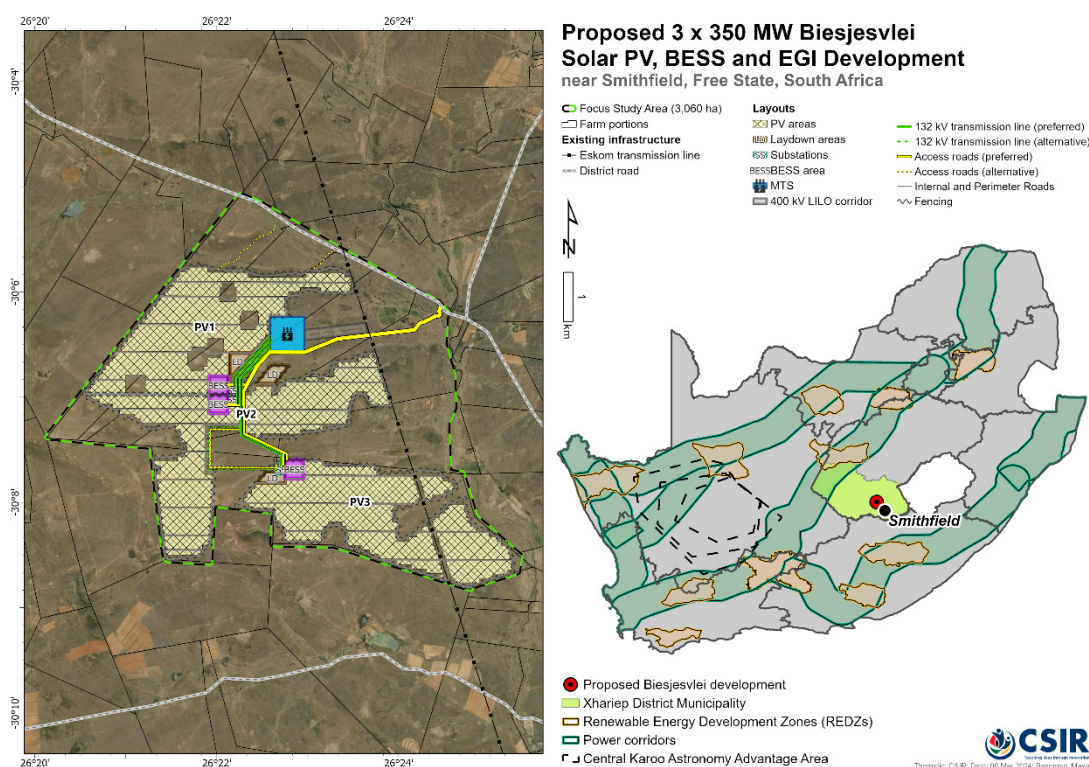


Figure A. Locality map for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV1 to PV3; Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to 3; and Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, near Smithfield in the Free State.

The proposed projects are not located within any of the Renewable Energy Development Zones (REDZs) that were gazetted in GN 114 on 16 February 2018; and GN 144 on 26 February 2021. The proposed projects are also not located within any of the Strategic Transmission Corridors that were gazetted in GN 113 on 16 February 2018; and GN 1637 on 24 December 2021.

Each solar PV facility will have a range of associated infrastructure and is proposed to connect to an existing 400 kV power line via dedicated 132 kV power lines, a proposed independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO).

Each of the Solar PV Facilities would be its own project and would require its own, separate Environmental Authorisation (EA). The same applies to the BESS and EGI projects. Each project will have a specific Project Applicant. The following projects are being proposed (Figure B):

- **PROJECTS 1 TO 3:** The proposed development of three Solar PV Facilities and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei PV1 to Biesjesvlei PV3).
- **PROJECTS 4 TO 6:** The proposed development of three BESS and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to Biesjesvlei BESS 3).
- **PROJECTS 7 to 9:** The proposed development of a 132 kV Overhead Power Line from each Biesjesvlei PV Facility to the proposed MTS, and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to Biesjesvlei EGI 3).
- **PROJECT 10:** The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV MTS and a 400 kV LILO from the MTS to the existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

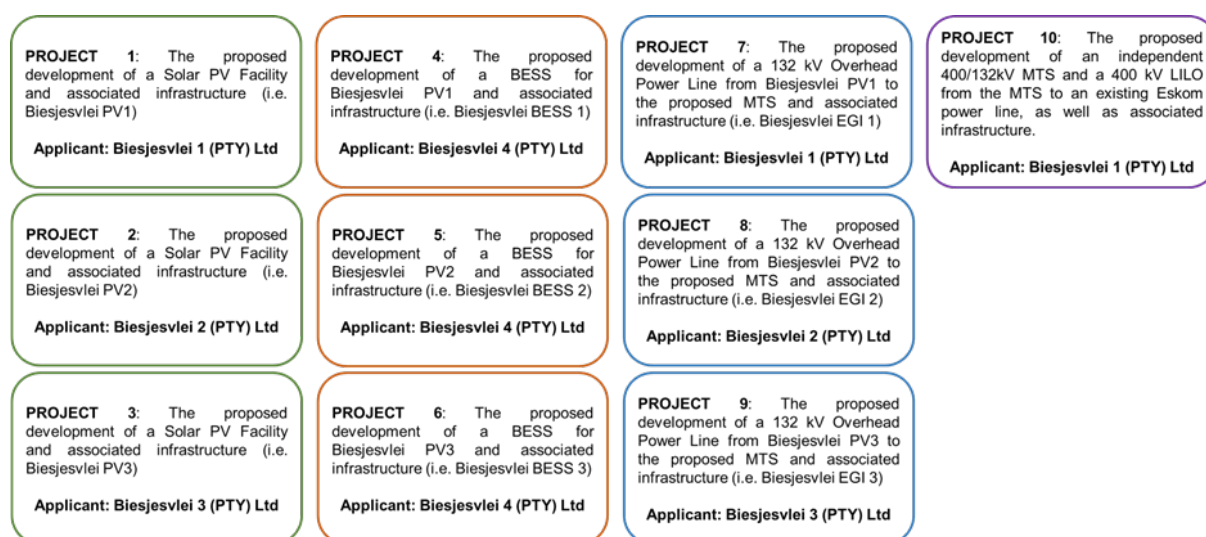


Figure B: Breakdown of the projects that comprise the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development.

REPORT COMBINATION AND AVAILABILITY

A request to combine the Environmental Assessment reporting, for Projects 1 to 9, in terms of Regulation 11 of the 2014 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations (as amended), and the issuing of multiple EAs in terms of Regulations 25 (1) and (2) was discussed with the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) at the Pre-Application Meeting on 6 October 2023. A letter was submitted to the DFFE to request for the combination and issuing of multiple EAs in October 2023. The DFFE approved the request for combination and multiple EAs (should they be granted) in a letter dated 1 November 2023, sent via email on 6 November 2023.

The report for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) [i.e. **this report**] is not included in the combined reporting because only one EA is required for this project. Hence, one standalone report has been compiled for Project 10 [i.e. **this report**].

The reporting structure indicated in Figure C is being used.

In summary, separate combined reports have been compiled for each PV Facility, BESS and EGI cluster (i.e. Projects 1 to 9) and a separate Scoping Report has been compiled for the MTS and LILO (i.e. Project 10) [i.e. this report]. Overall, four Scoping Reports have been compiled for the proposed development, and it is proposed that 10 separate EAs will be issued (should they be granted).

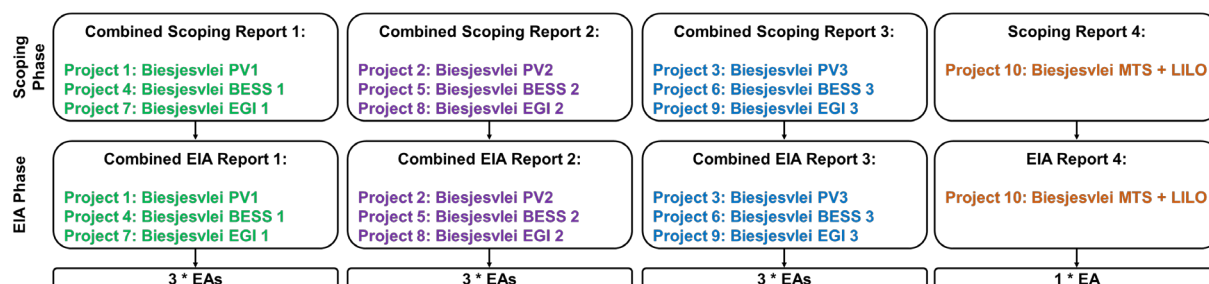


Figure C: Environmental Assessment Reporting Structure for the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development.

This Scoping Report only addresses the Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10).

The Draft Scoping Report was released to all Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&APs), Organs of State and relevant stakeholders for a 30-day review period, which extended from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024 (excluding public holidays). All comments received during the 30-day review have been incorporated into a detailed Comments and Responses Report, and addressed, as applicable and where relevant, and have been included as Appendix G.7 of this Final Scoping Report. The Final Scoping Report is being submitted to the DFFE for consideration.

An integrated Public Participation Process is being undertaken for the proposed projects (i.e. Projects 1 to 10).

COMPETENT AUTHORITY AND APPLICANT

The Competent Authority for the proposed project is the National DFFE as an agreement has been reached in terms of Section 24C(3)(b) of NEMA between the Free State Department of Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEA) and DFFE to confirm that the proposed project can be decided upon by the DFFE. A copy of this agreement is included in Appendix C.8 of the Scoping Report.

The Project Applicant for the proposed project is Biesjesvlei 1 (Pty) Ltd.

NEED FOR THE EIA

The proposed project triggers the need for an EA in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) published in GN R326, R327, R325 and R324 and further amended on 11 June 2021 in GN 517; and on 3 March 2022 in GN 1816. Chapter 4 of the Scoping Report contains a detailed list of activities, which may be triggered by the project and the various project components and thus forms part of this Scoping and EIA Process. Listed below is the key listed activity triggered for the project (Table A).

Table A. Key Listed Activity

Project	Listing Notice, Listed Activity and Description
Project 10: Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure	GN R325 (Listing Notice 2), Activity 9: The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity with a capacity of 275 kilovolts or more, outside an urban area or industrial complex excluding the development of bypass infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity where such bypass infrastructure is (a) temporarily required to allow for maintenance of existing infrastructure; (b) 2 kilometres or shorter in length; (c) within an existing transmission line servitude; and (d) will be removed within 18 months of the commencement of development.

The purpose of the Scoping and EIA Process is to identify, assess and report on any potential impacts the proposed project, if implemented, may have on the receiving environment. The Scoping and EIA therefore needs to show the Competent Authority and the Project Applicant what the consequences of their choices will be in terms of impacts on the biophysical and socio-economic environment and how such impacts can be, as far as possible, enhanced or mitigated and managed as the case may be.

PROJECT EIA TEAM

In accordance with Regulation 12 (1) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) has been appointed by the Project Developer to undertake the required Scoping and EIA Process in order to determine the potential biophysical, social and economic impacts associated with undertaking the proposed development. The project team and the relevant specialists are indicated in Table B below.

Table B. Project Team for the Scoping and EIA Process

NAME	ORGANISATION	ROLE/STUDY TO BE UNDERTAKEN
<i>Environmental Management Services (CSIR)</i>		
Paul Lochner (<i>Registered EAP (2019/745)</i>)	CSIR	EAP, Technical Advisor and Quality Assurance
Rohaida Abed (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.; Registered EAP (2021/4067)</i>)	CSIR	EAP and Project Manager
Helen Antonopoulos	CSIR	Project Officer
Suvasha Ramcharan (<i>Cand.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	Project Officer
Phindile Mthembu	CSIR	Project Officer
Luanita Snyman van der Walt (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	GIS Specialist
Lizande Kellerman (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	Public Participation Specialist
<i>Specialists</i>		
Johann Lanz (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Private	Agriculture and Soils Compliance Statement
Corné Niemandt (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Samuel Laurence (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Enviro-Insight cc	Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment, Terrestrial Plant Species Compliance Statement, and Terrestrial Animal Species Compliance Statement
Russell Tate (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Tate Environmental Specialist Services (sub-contracted by Enviro-Insight)	Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment
Samuel Laurence (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Enviro-Insight cc	Avifauna Impact Assessment
Quinton Lawson (<i>SACAP, 3686</i>) Bernard Oberholzer (<i>SACLAP, 87018</i>)	QARC and BOLA	Visual Impact Assessment
Dr Jayson Orton (<i>APHP: Member 43; ASAPA CRM Section: Member 233</i>)	ASHA Consulting (Pty) Ltd	Heritage Impact Assessment (Archaeology and Cultural Landscape)
Dr John Almond (<i>PSSA and APHP Member</i>)	Natura Viva cc	Palaeontology
Dale Barrow (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Hardy Luttig Louis Jonk (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Julian Conrad	GEOSS South Africa (PTY) Ltd	Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion
Rohaida Abed (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.; Registered EAP (2021/4067)</i>) Lizande Kellerman (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Willan Adonis ¹	CSIR	Civil Aviation Site Sensitivity Verification

The specialist assessments will be detailed during the EIA Phase and will comply with Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), or the Assessment Protocols published in GN 320 on March 2020; or the Assessment Protocols published in GN 1150 on October 2020. However, the Geotechnical Letter of Opinion serves as a technical report and the aforementioned legislation will thus not be applicable.

STUDY AREA

The study area or preferred site for all the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV Facilities, BESS, 132 kV power lines, MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure (i.e., Projects 1 to 10) covers approximately 3 060 hectares (ha). These farm properties are listed in Table C.

¹ This staff member resigned from the CSIR at the end of December 2023.

Table C: Farm portions and SG codes for the Study Area

FARM PORTION	SG CODE
Farm Benoni 534	F03100000000053400000
Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521	F03100000000052100000
Farm Biesjesvlei 372	F03100000000037200000
Farm Klein Badfontein 369	F03100000000036900000
Farm Modderkuil 396	F03100000000039600000
Farm Paalland 373	F03100000000037300000
Remaining Extent of Farm Pompoenfontein 118	F03100000000011800000
Portion 1 of Farm Pompoenfontein 118	F03100000000011800001
Farm Ronde Bult 408	F03100000000040800000
Farm Salpetervlei 756	F03100000000075600000
Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34	F0310000000003400001

As part of the Scoping and EIA Process, the full extent of the study area has been assessed by the specialists in order to identify environmental sensitivities and no-go areas. The preferred site serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the terms “site” and “study area” are used synonymously in the Scoping Report.

PROJECT DESCRIPTION

A summary of the key components of the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) and technical information is described in Table D below.

Table D. Summary of the components and associated infrastructure for Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)

Component	Description
Independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Footprint: Approximately 36 ha ▪ Height: 15 m ▪ Capacity: 400/132 kV ▪ Associated infrastructure includes busbars, feeder bays, transformers and transformer bays.
Building Infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Operational and Maintenance (O&M) Building and Offices (approximately 500 m² in area, and 7 m in height)
Fencing around the MTS Perimeter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Type</u>: Palisade or mesh or fully electrified ▪ <u>Security</u>: Access points will be managed and monitored by an appointed security service provider.

Component	Description
Internal Roads within the MTS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Height</u>: Between 2 - 3 m ▪ <u>Details</u>: New internal gravel roads will need to be established within the fenced off area of the MTS. ▪ <u>Width</u>: Approximately 4 m
400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The LILO will be routed above ground from the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV Overhead Power Line to the proposed MTS. ▪ <u>Height</u>: Up to 37 m ▪ <u>Length</u>: Approximately 1 km ▪ <u>Servitude</u>: 40 m wide ▪ <u>Pylon specifications</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ <u>Type</u>: Lattice structures. ○ <u>Tower</u>: Self-supporting and Angle Strain. ○ <u>Foundation</u>: The size of the footprint area for the base of the tower foundation will range to approximately 100 m². The minimum working area required around a structure position is 20 m x 20 m. ○ <u>Span Length</u>: 200 m – 375 m
Service Road for the LILO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Details</u>: A new gravel service road will need to be established below the LILO. ▪ <u>Width</u>: Approximately 4 m
External Access Roads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads. Specifically, three access route options are being considered: Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which are routed along the N6; S1262; and S119. Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Existing roads will be used as far as practically achievable.

Component	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>New Access Roads</u>: Where new access roads are required within the study area, these will be 4 - 8 m wide. ▪ <u>Existing Access Roads</u>: Where existing roads are used within the study area, they may need to be upgraded, as described below. ▪ The Traffic Specialist² has noted the following based on preliminary investigations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The N6, S1262, and S119 are suitable and do not need to be upgraded. ○ The N6, S1262, and S119 are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening by more than 4 m or more than 6 m may be required at localised positions (i.e. intersections). Specifically, road widening by approximately 9 m will be required at the S1262 and S119 intersection. ○ Existing internal farm roads (local farm roads within the farm property boundaries) will need to be upgraded to accommodate the abnormal loads as required. This includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A: Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required. ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B: Road widening by approximately 7 m (at the widest point) will be required. ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C: Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required. ▪ An existing bridge on the S119 will also need to be inspected by a Structural Engineer. ▪ The existing bridge on the existing internal farm road leading from Access Route Option A will most likely need to be rebuilt or realigned to minimise

² The Traffic Impact Assessment is being undertaken for the Biesjesvlei PV (Projects 1 to 3) and Biesjesvlei BESS (Projects 4 to 6). Traffic related information will still inform the EGI projects.

Component	Description
	the turns that the abnormal loads need to navigate. Additional detail will be provided in the EIA Phase.
Storm water channels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Details to be confirmed once the Engineering, Procurement and Construction (EPC) contractor has been selected and the design is finalised. Where necessary, a detailed storm water management plan would need to be developed.
Work area during the construction phase (i.e. laydown area)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Footprint: Up to 13 ha
Water Requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Approximately 8 000 m³ to 12 000 m³ of water is estimated to be required per year for the construction phase. ▪ Approximately 10 000 m³ to 16 000 m³ of water is estimated to be required per year for the operational phase. ▪ Water requirements during the decommissioning phase are expected to be the same as the construction phase. ▪ Potential sources: Existing boreholes on site or from the Local Municipality via trucks.
Construction Period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 12 – 24 months
Operational Period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Once the commercial operation date is achieved, the proposed EGI will transmit electricity for a minimum period of 20 to 30 years.

POTENTIAL ISSUES AND HIGH-LEVEL IMPACT ASSESSMENT

Potential key preliminary issues and impacts associated with the proposed project, and preliminary mitigation measures have been identified by the specialist team for the Scoping Phase. This is based on an evaluation of the status quo of the receiving environment, by the specialists, either through desktop assessments or site investigations, where relevant and required. The impact ratings and mitigation measures are high-level for the purposes of Scoping, and, where necessary, will be confirmed and detailed during the EIA Phase.

These preliminary key potential issues and direct impacts are summarised in Table E below and are included in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report. Issues raised during the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Report were in line with the potential issues identified below for further assessment in the EIA Phase. The Terms of Reference for the various Specialist Assessments and Inputs are included in Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report.

At the Scoping Phase, based on the preliminary impacts described below, there are no negative impacts that are rated as Very High significance after mitigation. Overall, it can be concluded that the effect of potential impacts can be limited or reduced to acceptable levels through avoidance, minimisation and the implementation of appropriate mitigation measures and management actions during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases.

Table E. Summary of Issues to be addressed during the EIA Phase as part of the Specialist Assessments / Inputs³

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key Issues / Impacts to be addressed in the EIA Phase
Agriculture	<p>Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loss of agricultural potential by occupation of land; ▪ Loss of agricultural potential by soil degradation; ▪ Loss of agricultural potential by dust generation; ▪ Increased financial security for farming operations (<i>positive impact</i>); and ▪ Improved security against stock theft and other crime due to the presence of security infrastructure and security personnel (<i>positive impact</i>).
Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species (including Animal and Plant Species)	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat loss and fragmentation. ▪ Loss of protected species; ▪ Increased alien invasive species; ▪ Increased erosion and soil compaction; and ▪ Littering and general pollution. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increased alien invasive species. ▪ Loss of species composition and diversity; and ▪ Littering and general pollution. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loss of habitat; and ▪ Increased alien invasive species.
Aquatic Biodiversity and Species	<p>Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat Quality Degradation; ▪ Water Quality Degradation; and ▪ Aquatic Habitat Connectivity Loss.

³ Impacts / issues in the table are all classified as negative, except where specified as positive.

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key Issues / Impacts to be addressed in the EIA Phase
<p style="text-align: center;">Avifauna</p>	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Disturbance of foraging and breeding behaviours of birds due to noise, dust and lighting; and ▪ Loss of habitat due to clearing, trenching, alteration and exclusion from previously accessible habitats. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Continued disturbance due to operational activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.); ▪ Loss of habitat due to altered and excluded habitats and threat of fire; ▪ Direct mortality from electrocution and collision with infrastructure (e.g. fences, overhead power lines); and ▪ Attraction to the facility exacerbating potential impacts. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Continued disturbance due to decommissioning activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.); ▪ Habitat loss reclamation from rehabilitation activities (<i>positive impact</i>); and ▪ Removal of power lines to promote safe passage (lowering collision risk) through the site and avoiding attraction by birds perching and nesting (<i>positive impact</i>).
<p style="text-align: center;">Visual</p>	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential effect of dust and noise from trucks and construction machinery during the construction period, and the effect of this on nearby farmsteads and visitors to the area; and ▪ Potential visual effect of haul roads, access roads, stockpiles and construction camps in the visually exposed landscape. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential visual intrusion of the MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure on receptors; and ▪ Potential visual impact of an industrial type of activity on the pastoral / rural character and sense of place of the area. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential visual effect of any remaining structures, platforms and disused roads on the landscape.

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key Issues / Impacts to be addressed in the EIA Phase
<p>Heritage (including Archaeology and Cultural Landscape)</p>	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Damage or destruction of archaeological materials; ▪ Damage or destruction of graves; ▪ Damage to built heritage resources; and ▪ Intrusion of the power line, MTS, equipment and all associated infrastructure into the landscape. <p>Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intrusion of the power line, MTS, equipment and all associated infrastructure into the landscape.
<p>Palaeontology</p>	<p>Note that a palaeontological impact assessment is not required. Refer to the Palaeontology Site Sensitivity Verification (SSV) in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report for additional information on the palaeontology within the study area, as well as feedback on the motivation for no further palaeontology assessments being required for the proposed projects. This approach is accepted and supported by the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA), as indicated in Appendix G.6 of this Final Scoping Report.</p>
<p>Geotechnical</p>	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Displacement of geologic material. <p>Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Contamination of subsoils and loss of topsoil. <p>Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increased unnatural hard surfaces yielding increased runoff, potentially increasing erosion.
<p>Civil Aviation</p>	<p>Note that there are no impacts with respect to Civil Aviation as confirmed through the Site Sensitivity Verification included in Appendix E.9 of the Scoping Report.</p>



CHAPTER 1: Introduction

Contents

1. INTRODUCTION	1-3
1.1. Report Combination and Multiple EAs	1-4
1.2. Chapter Overview	1-5
1.3. Overview of the Proposed Project	1-6
1.4. Project Motivation	1-6
1.5. Legal Requirements for an EIA	1-9
1.6. Project Owner and Developer	1-10
1.7. Project Applicants	1-11
1.8. Competent Authority	1-11
1.9. EIA Project Team	1-12
1.10. Details and Expertise of the CSIR EIA Project Management Team	1-13
1.11. Need and Desirability	1-14
1.12. Objectives for this Scoping Report	1-32

Tables

Table 1.1: Key Listed Activity for the proposed project	1-10
Table 1.2: Project Applicant Details	1-11
Table 1.3: The EIA Project Team	1-12
Table 1.4: The Guideline on the Need and Desirability's list of questions to determine the "Need and Desirability" of the proposed project.	1-15
Table 1.5: Compliance with Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	1-33

Figures

Figure 1.1: Breakdown of the projects that comprise the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development. _____	1-3
Figure 1.2: Environmental Assessment Reporting Structure for the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development. _____	1-4
Figure 1.3: Locality map for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV Facilities 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to 3; and Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, near Smithfield in the Free State. _____	1-5

1. INTRODUCTION

Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd (the project owner) with support from Veroniva (Pty) Ltd, are proposing to develop three Solar Photovoltaic (PV) and Battery Energy Storage System (BESS) Facilities, and associated Electricity Grid Infrastructure (EGI), near Smithfield within the Mohokare Local Municipality, Xhariep District Municipality, Free State. The project is referred to as the “Biesjesvlei” Solar PV, BESS and EGI development.

Each solar PV facility will have a range of associated infrastructure and is proposed to connect to an existing 400 kV power line via dedicated 132 kV power lines, a proposed independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO).

Each of the Solar PV Facilities would be its own project and would require its own, separate Environmental Authorisation (EA). The same applies to the BESS and EGI projects. Each project will have a specific Project Applicant. The following projects are being proposed (Figure 1.1):

- **PROJECTS 1 TO 3:** The proposed development of three Solar PV Facilities and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei PV1 to Biesjesvlei PV3).
- **PROJECTS 4 TO 6:** The proposed development of three BESS and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to Biesjesvlei BESS 3).
- **PROJECTS 7 TO 9:** The proposed development of a 132 kV Overhead Power Line from each Biesjesvlei PV Facility to the proposed MTS, and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to Biesjesvlei EGI 3).
- **PROJECT 10:** The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV MTS and a 400 kV LILO from the MTS to the existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

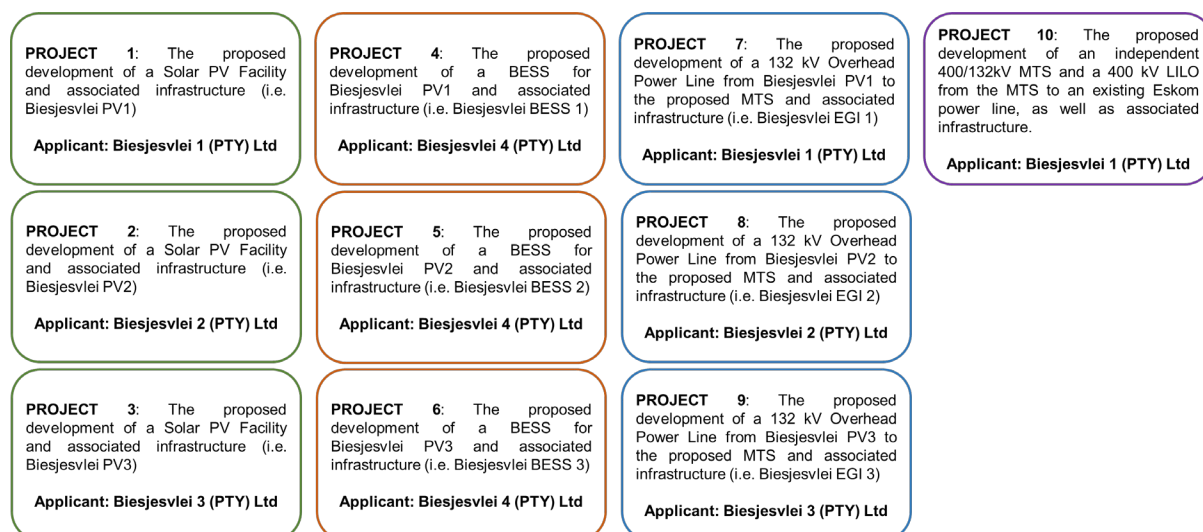


Figure 1.1: Breakdown of the projects that comprise the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development.

1.1. Report Combination and Multiple EAs

A request to combine the Environmental Assessment reporting, for Projects 1 to 9, in terms of Regulation 11 of the 2014 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations (as amended), and the issuing of multiple EAs in terms of Regulations 25 (1) and (2) was discussed with the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) at the Pre-Application Meeting on 6 October 2023. A letter was submitted to the DFFE via email on 11 October 2023 to motivate for the combination and issuing of multiple EAs. The DFFE approved the combination and multiple EA request in a letter dated 1 November 2023, sent via email on 6 November 2023. Refer to Appendix C.7 of this Scoping Report for a copy of the DFFE approval of the report combination and multiple EAs (should they be granted).

As discussed at the Pre-Application Meeting on 6 October 2023, the report for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) **[i.e. this report]** is not included in the combined reporting because only one EA is required for this project. Hence, one standalone report has been compiled for Project 10 **(i.e. this report)**.

The reporting structure indicated in Figure 1.2 is being used to undertake a consolidated assessment process and to ensure that the potential environmental impacts of each activity, in relation to the location at which they will take place, are considered. The combined reporting process reduces the administrative aspects on the Case Officer and reduces the number of reports that need to be reviewed by Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs), while still maintaining high levels of environmental rigour and clear reporting.

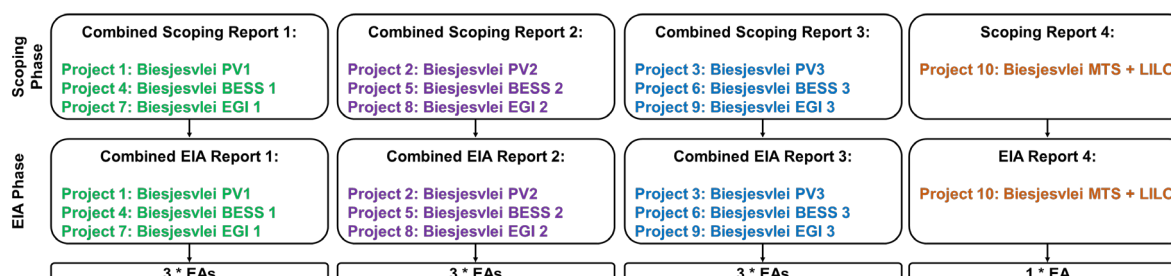


Figure 1.2: Environmental Assessment Reporting Structure for the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development.

Therefore, separate combined reports have been compiled for each PV Facility, BESS and EGI cluster (i.e. Projects 1 to 9) and a separate Scoping Report has been compiled for the MTS and LILO (i.e. Project 10) **[i.e. this report]**. Overall, four Scoping Reports have been compiled for the proposed development, as indicated in Figure 1.2 above, and it is proposed that 10 separate EAs will be issued (should they be granted).

In terms of the Public Participation Process (PPP), an integrated approach is being followed for all 10 proposed projects. This forms an integral part of the Scoping and EIA Process and assists in identifying issues to be considered. Details on the PPP are included in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report.

This Scoping Report only addresses **Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO** (Project 10) (hereafter referred to as the “proposed project”). However, reference is made to the Biesjesvlei Solar PV (Projects 1 to 3), BESS (Projects 4 to 6) and EGI (Projects 7 to 9) projects for contextual purposes, where needed.

1.2. Chapter Overview

This chapter provides an introduction of the proposed project, and includes the following:

- An overview of the proposed MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure;
- Project Motivation;
- The legal requirements for an EIA;
- Information on the Project Owner, Project Developer and Project Applicant;
- The Competent Authority and EIA Project Team;
- Details and Expertise of the CSIR EIA Project Management Team;
- Need and Desirability;
- The objectives of the Scoping Report; and
- Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

Figure 1.3 provides a locality map of the proposed projects (Projects 1 to 10).

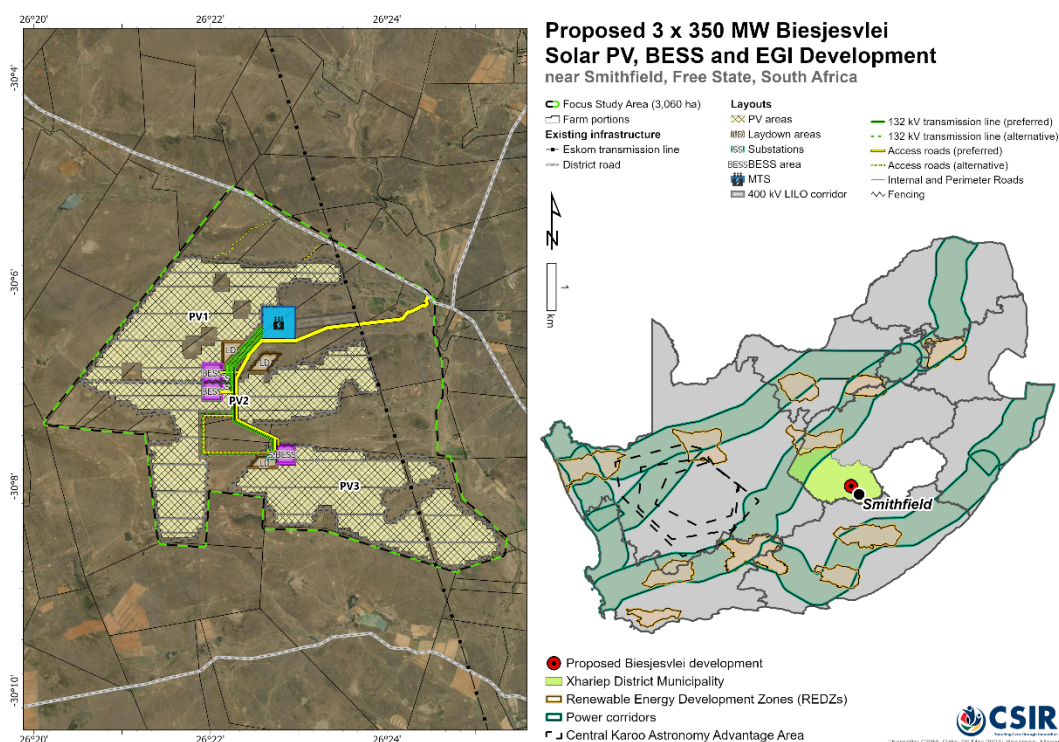


Figure 1.3: Locality map for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV Facilities 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to 3; and Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, near Smithfield in the Free State.

1.3. Overview of the Proposed Project

An overview of the key components of the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO are described in this section. A detailed project description is provided in Chapter 2 of this Scoping Report.

The proposed project will consist of the following key components:

- Independent 400/132 kV MTS;
- 400 kV LILO from the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV overhead power line to the proposed MTS;
- Building infrastructure;
- Fencing;
- Internal roads within the MTS;
- Service road for the LILO;
- External access roads;
- Storm water channels; and
- Laydown area.

1.4. Project Motivation

From a project perspective, the proposed MTS and LILO are required to provide the necessary infrastructure to support the Biesjesvlei PV, BESS and EGI projects. The MTS and LILO will enable the power generated by the proposed Biesjesvlei PV projects to be transmitted and connected to the national grid. It is therefore regarded as essential infrastructure for the operation of the proposed Biesjesvlei PV projects.

From a wider energy related perspective, the development of utility-scale solar PV is the least cost option for South Africa for new electricity generation. The shortage of electricity generation and continued loadshedding is a major constraint on economic recovery for South Africa. Consequently, the development of new solar PV such as proposed in the Biesjesvlei package of projects is urgently needed and will bring significant socio-economic benefits by contributing to national energy security. The Biesjesvlei PV projects require new grid connections, which demonstrates the need for the LILO and MTS development. Additional motivation is provided below within this context.

The need for renewable energy is clear, in both a local and international context, with South Africa becoming an integral part of the global transition towards renewable sources of electricity generation. South Africa is one of the highest per capita producers of carbon emissions in the world. These emissions are largely a result of an energy-intensive economy and high dependence on coal-based electricity generation to meet more than 90% of its energy needs. Consequently, the South African government is committed to supplementing the existing generation capacity of thermal and nuclear power plants with renewable energy power generation, thus creating the framework that will lead to an increase in the supply of clean energy for the nation. The development of renewable energy is important for South Africa to reduce its overall environmental footprint from power generation (including externality costs), and thereby to steer the country on a pathway towards sustainability.

Commitment toward decarbonisation of the economy is clearly illustrated in South Africa's National Development Plan (NDP) Vision 2030 published in 2012. Chapters 4 and 5 of the NDP advocates for increased investment in an energy sector that is both economically inclusive and environmentally sustainable – with renewable energy at the core of enabling this transition. The plan identifies, as a priority, the production of sufficient energy to support industry at competitive prices, ensuring access for poor households, while reducing the carbon intensity of the economy.

In addition, due to the current constrained energy landscape and frequent loadshedding, the South African Government has articulated a plan to address the energy crisis. The President of South Africa delivered a speech on 25 July 2022 to inform the public of the plan towards achieving a reliable, affordable and sustainable energy supply (The Presidency, 2022¹). In addition, the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment also held a stakeholder engagement session on 21 July 2022 during which she highlighted proposed mechanisms for streamlining environmental approvals for solar energy development in low and medium sensitivity areas throughout the country; as well as power line and substation development within low and medium sensitivity areas within the gazetted EGI corridors (DFFE, 2022²). One of those mechanisms has already been gazetted for implementation (i.e. the EGI Standard published in GG 47095; GN 2313, dated 27 July 2022).

Furthermore, on 19 May 2023, the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment delivered feedback on the DFFE's Budget Vote 2023/24 (Vote 32) at the Good Hope Chamber in Parliament (DFFE, 2023³). She reported that the DFFE IEM Directorate had a review project pipeline of 9 789 MW for renewable energy EA Applications. The Minister also reported that the DFFE had reduced decision-making timeframes for renewable energy EA applications from 107 days to 57 days, as best as possible (DFFE, 2023).

Further, the Integrated Resource Plan (IRP) for South Africa for the period 2010 to 2030 (referred to as "IRP2010") was released by government in 2010, and an updated report was published in 2013, which proposed to secure 17 800 MW of renewable energy capacity by 2030 (including solar, wind and other energy sources). In August 2011, the Department of Energy (DoE) (currently operating as the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE)) launched the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPPPP) and invited potential IPPs to submit proposals for the financing, construction, operation and maintenance of the first 3 725 MW of onshore wind, solar thermal, PV, biomass, biogas, landfill gas or small hydropower projects. On 18 August 2015, an additional procurement target of 6 300 MW to be generated from renewable energy sources was added to the REIPPPP for the years 2021 - 2025, as published in GN 733, GG 39111. Of this, the additional target allocated for solar PV was 2 200 MW.

¹ The Presidency (2022). *Address by President Cyril Ramaphosa on actions to address the electricity crisis, Union Buildings, Tshwane*. Accessed online: <https://www.thepresidency.gov.za/speeches/address-president-cyril-ramaphosa-actions-address-electricity-crisis%2C-union-buildings%2C-tshwane> [August 2022]

² DFFE (2022). *Minister Creecy announces improved environmental assessment processes for solar energy*. Accessed online: https://www.dffe.gov.za/creecy_environmentalassessmentprocesses_solarenergy [August 2022]

³ DFFE (2023). *Minister Barbara Creecy: Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment Dept Budget Vote 2023/24*. Accessed online: <https://www.gov.za/speeches/minister-barbara-creecy-forestry-fisheries-and-environment-dept-budget-vote-202324-19-may> [November 2023]

The IRP 2019⁴ was gazetted by the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy, Gwede Mantashe, in October 2019. The update revised the energy forecast for South Africa to the year 2030. Provision has been made for new additional capacity by 2030 including in particular 14 400 MW of wind and 6 000 MW of solar PV. In terms of the REIPPPP, submitted proposals are then evaluated according to a Request for Proposal (RFP). The bidders whose responses rank the highest (according to stipulated criteria) generally have the greatest potential to be appointed as “Preferred Bidders” by the DMRE.

Bidding Window 5 was conducted during 2021 with an allocation of 2 600 MW for new wind and solar energy. The successful bidders were announced on 28 October 2021.

Bidding Window 6 was announced in April 2022 with an allocation of 4200 MW of renewable energy of which solar comprises 1000 MW. Six preferred bidders have been selected for Bidding Window 6 for solar PV projects.

Bidding Window 7 was announced in December 2023 and will close in May 2024. It will aim to procure 5 000 MW (i.e. 3 200 MW from wind and 1 800 MW from Solar PV).

Should the proposed Biesjesvlei projects be acceptable and authorised, it is considered viable that long-term benefits for the community and society in the Smithfield area would be realised. The proposed Biesjesvlei projects will provide an opportunity for additional employment in an area where job creation is identified as a key priority. The proposed projects will make use of local labour as much as possible. It is difficult to specify the actual number of employment opportunities that will be created at this stage; however, estimates are provided below for the proposed MTS and LILO project:

- During the construction phase, between 10 and 20 skilled, and between 30 and 50 unskilled employment opportunities are expected to be created.
- During the operational phase, between 1 and 4 skilled, and between 2 and 4 unskilled employment opportunities are expected to be created over the lifespan of the proposed infrastructure.

It should be noted that the employment opportunities estimates are dependent on the final engineering design and the REIPPPP RFP provisions at that point in time.

The proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI projects are intended to address the current energy shortages in South Africa and assist in meeting the need for additional renewable energy generation capacity, as required by the IRP. The total generation capacity of the entire project (i.e. should all three Solar facilities be authorised) would be in the order of up to 1 050 MWdc⁵. The proposed MTS and LILO are vital components in realising this capacity.

⁴ The IRP was updated in 2023 (2023 Draft IRP) and released for public comment in January 2024. It has not been gazetted for implementation yet.

⁵ The total generation capacity is an estimate at this stage and may change.

As a means of comparison, for 2023 the municipal area of Bloemfontein in the Free State has a total electricity load forecast of 507 MW, whilst the province itself has a peak load of 1 623 MW (Eskom, 2023⁶). The total provincial peak load forecast for the Free State is expected to increase to about 1 798 MW by 2032 (Eskom, 2023).

The proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI projects would also have international significance as they contribute to South Africa being able to meet some of its international obligations by aligning domestic policy with internationally agreed strategies and standards as set by the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), the Paris Agreement on Climate Change, Kyoto Protocol, and United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity (UNCBD), all of which South Africa is a signatory to. Renewable energy is critical to South Africa as this source of energy is recognised as a major contributor to climate protection, has a much lower environmental impact significance, as well as advancing economic and social development.

It is intended that the Biesjesvlei package of projects will be bid into a future bidding program such as the REIPPPP (or another suitable tender process linked to the IRP). A viable grid connection is important for these processes.

1.5. Legal Requirements for an EIA

Section 24(1) of the NEMA, states that “*In order to give effect to the general objectives of integrated environmental management laid down in this Chapter, the potential impact on the environment of listed activities must be considered, investigated, assessed and reported to the competent authority charged by this Act with granting the relevant EA*”. The reference to “listed activities” relates to the regulations promulgated in GN R982, R983, R984 and R985 in GG 38282, dated 4 December 2014, which came into effect on 8 December 2014. These were amended on 7 April 2017, specifically promulgated in GN R326, R327, R325 and R324 in GG 40772; and further amended on 11 June 2021 in GN 517; and on 3 March 2022 in GN 1816. GN R327 and GN R324 includes listed activities that trigger the need for a Basic Assessment (BA) Process, whereas GN R325 includes listed activities that trigger the need for a full Scoping and EIA Process. Additional detail is provided in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report.

The proposed project requires a Scoping and EIA Process.

The proposed project is not located within any of the Renewable Energy Development Zones (REDZs) that were gazetted in GN 114 on 16 February 2018; and GN 144 on 26 February 2021. The proposed project is also not located within any of the Strategic Transmission Corridors that were gazetted in GN 113 on 16 February 2018; and GN 1637 on 24 December 2021. Hence, a BA Process is not possible in this instance.

Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report contains a detailed list of activities contained in GN R327, R325, and R324, which may be triggered by the proposed project and the various project components and thus forms part of this Scoping and EIA Process. Listed below is the key listed activity triggered for the proposed project (Table 1.1).

⁶ Eskom (2023). Transmission Development Plan (2023 – 2033). Accessed online: https://www.eskom.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2023/01/Transmission_Development_Plan_2023%E2%80%932033_Rev1.pdf [October 2023].

Table 1.1: Key Listed Activity for the proposed project

Project	Listing Notice, Listed Activity and Description
<p>Project 10: Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure</p>	<p>GN R325 (Listing Notice 2), Activity 9: The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity with a capacity of 275 kilovolts or more, outside an urban area or industrial complex excluding the development of bypass infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity where such bypass infrastructure is (a) temporarily required to allow for maintenance of existing infrastructure; (b) 2 kilometres or shorter in length; (c) within an existing transmission line servitude; and (d) will be removed within 18 months of the commencement of development.</p>

1.6. Project Owner and Developer

Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd and Veroniva (Pty) Ltd are committed to developing renewable energy and associated EGI in South Africa, and thus investing in the country.

Scatec (formerly Scatec Solar) was founded in 2001 and holds its headquarters in Norway. Scatec is focused on making renewable energy a sustainable and affordable source on a global scale. The company develops, builds, owns and operates a number of renewable energy plants internationally and within Africa. The company currently has over 20 power plants in operation providing an estimated total of 3 025 MW. These power plants include Hydro, Solar and Wind; and are located in Brazil, Czech Republic, Egypt, Honduras, Jordan, Laos, Malaysia, Mozambique, Philippines, Rwanda, South Africa, Uganda, Ukraine, and Vietnam.

Specifically linked to investment within South Africa, Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd has been involved in the following major solar energy projects and has successfully constructed projects under the REIPPPP and Risk Mitigation Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (RMIPPPP):

- **Upington:** This consists of three solar power plants totalling 258 MW, approximately 25 km outside of Upington. These plants are in operation. It was awarded preferred bidder status in the REIPPPP Bidding Window 4 in 2015. The projects started commercial operation in 2020. In 2023, Scatec sold its equity share in the project but continues to provide Operations & Maintenance and Asset Management services to the power plant.
- **Linde:** This includes a 40 MW solar plant located in the Northern Cape. This plant is in operation. It was commissioned in July 2014 and holds a 20-year PPA with Eskom. It is considered to be the first of the large-scale PV plants in production from the Bidding Window 2 of the REIPPPP.
- **Dreunberg:** This includes a 75 MW solar plant located in the Eastern Cape. This plant is in operation. It was commissioned in December 2014, and was the second project won under Bidding Window 2 of the REIPPPP. The project holds a 20-year PPA with Eskom.
- **Kalkbult:** This includes a 75 MW solar plant located in the Northern Cape. This plant is in operation, and is one of the largest solar plants in South Africa. It was commissioned in March 2014 and was the first project commissioned under Bidding Window 1 of the REIPPPP and the first project to be connected to the grid and operational in South Africa. The project holds a 20-year PPA with Eskom.
- **Kenhardt 1-3:** In 2021, Scatec was awarded preferred bidder status for the three Kenhardt Solar PV projects in the Northern Cape, under the RMIPPPP. The projects are under

construction currently and have a total capacity of 540 MW. It also includes 1 140 MWh battery storage. The power will be sold under a 20-year PPA.

- **Grootfontein 1-3 (Bidding Window 5):** In October 2021, Scatec was awarded preferred bidder status on three solar projects totalling 273 MW. The power produced will be sold under 20-year PPAs.

Veroniva (Pty) Ltd (hereafter referred to as Veroniva) was founded in 2012 and is a leading renewable energy developer specialising in developing large-scale renewable energy projects in Southern Africa. Veroniva has successfully developed (from site identification to fully permitted) projects of more than 1400 MW. Specifically, Veroniva has developed 813 MW of peak solar PV capacity projects in South Africa, which have been awarded to IPPs under RMIPPPP and REIPPPP. This includes the Kenhardt 1-3 projects, as well as the Grootfontein 1-3 (Bidding Window 5) projects listed above being taken forward by Scatec.

1.7. Project Applicants

The Project Applicant for the proposed project is indicated in Table 1.2.

Table 1.2: Project Applicant Details

Project	Applicant
Project 10: Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure	Biesjesvlei 1 (Pty) Ltd

1.8. Competent Authority

The 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended in GN 517 on 11 June 2021 states that the Competent Authority (CA) in respect of the listed activities “*is the CA in the province in which the activity is to be undertaken, unless: (a) it is an application for an activity contemplated in Section 24C(2) of the Act, in which case the CA is the Minister or an organ of state with delegated powers in terms of Section 42(1) of the Act; or (b) the application is a mining application in which case the CA is the Minister responsible for mineral resources*”.

Based on the above, since the proposed project is for EGI supporting a renewable energy facility, the Free State Department of Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEA) would have served as the CA.

However, Section 24C (3) of NEMA states that the “*Minister, the Minister responsible for mineral resources and an MEC may agree that applications for environmental authorisations with regard to any activity or class of activities (a) contemplated in subsections (2) and (2B) may be dealt with by the MEC or the Minister responsible for mineral resources; (b) in respect of which the MEC is identified as the competent authority may be dealt with by the Minister or the Minister responsible for mineral resources*”.

Linked to the above, an agreement has been reached in terms of Section 24C(3)(b) of NEMA between the Free State DESTEA and DFFE to confirm that the proposed project can be decided upon by the DFFE. A copy of this agreement is included in Appendix C.8 of the Scoping Report. Therefore, the CA for the proposed project (i.e. Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) is the National DFFE.

1.9. EIA Project Team

In accordance with Regulation 12 (1) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) Environmental Management Services (EMS) group has been appointed to undertake the required Environmental Assessment Processes (for Projects 1 to 10) in order to determine the potential biophysical, social and economic impacts associated with the proposed developments, and to identify how such negative impacts can be avoided, remedied, mitigated or managed; and how positive impacts can be enhanced.

The project team, which is involved in this Scoping and EIA Process, is listed in Table 1.3 below. This team includes several specialists who have extensive experience in conducting specialist studies for renewable energy, BESS and EGI projects in South Africa. The specialist studies relevant to the proposed project are also indicated in Table 1.3 below.

Table 1.3: The EIA Project Team

NAME	ORGANISATION	ROLE/STUDY TO BE UNDERTAKEN
<i>Environmental Management Services (CSIR)</i>		
Paul Lochner (<i>Registered EAP (2019/745)</i>)	CSIR	EAP, Technical Advisor and Quality Assurance
Rohaida Abed (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.; Registered EAP (2021/4067)</i>)	CSIR	EAP and Project Manager
Helen Antonopoulos	CSIR	Project Officer
Suvasha Ramcharan (<i>Cand.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	Project Officer
Phindile Mthembu	CSIR	Project Officer
Luanita Snyman van der Walt (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	GIS Specialist
Lizande Kellerman (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	CSIR	Public Participation Specialist
<i>Specialists</i>		
Johann Lanz (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Private	Agriculture and Soils Compliance Statement
Corné Niemandt (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Samuel Laurence (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Enviro-Insight cc	Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment, Terrestrial Plant Species Compliance Statement, and Terrestrial Animal Species Compliance Statement
Russell Tate (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Tate Environmental Specialist Services (sub-contracted by Enviro-Insight)	Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment
Samuel Laurence (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>)	Enviro-Insight cc	Avifauna Impact Assessment
Quinton Lawson (<i>SACAP, 3686</i>) Bernard Oberholzer (<i>SACLAP, 87018</i>)	QARC and BOLA	Visual Impact Assessment
Dr Jayson Orton (<i>APHP: Member 43; ASAPA CRM Section: Member 233</i>)	ASHA Consulting (Pty) Ltd	Heritage Impact Assessment (Archaeology and Cultural Landscape)
Dr John Almond (<i>PSSA and APHP Member</i>)	Natura Viva cc	Palaeontology
Dale Barrow (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Hardy Luttig Louis Jonk (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Julian Conrad	GEOSS South Africa (PTY) Ltd	Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion

NAME	ORGANISATION	ROLE/STUDY TO BE UNDERTAKEN
Rohaida Abed (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i> ; Registered EAP (2021/4067)) Lizande Kellerman (<i>Pr.Sci.Nat.</i>) Willan Adonis ⁷	CSIR	Civil Aviation Site Sensitivity Verification

1.10. Details and Expertise of the CSIR EIA Project Management Team

This section provides information on the expertise of the CSIR EIA Project Management Team and Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAPs).

Paul Lochner (*Registered EAP; Technical Advisor and Quality Assurance*):

Paul Lochner is an EAP at the CSIR in Stellenbosch, with over 30 years of experience in a wide range of environmental assessment and management studies. Paul commenced work at CSIR in 1992, after completing a B.Sc. degree in Civil Engineering and a Masters in Environmental Science, both at the University of Cape Town. His initial work at focused on wetlands and estuarine management; environmental engineering in the coastal zone; and coastal zone management plans. Since 2008, Paul has been the leader and manager of the Environmental Management Services (EMS) group within CSIR that has been at the forefront of advancing environmental assessment in South Africa. This group currently consists of approximately 12 environmental scientists, planners and engineers, with offices in Stellenbosch, Cape Town and Durban. Paul's particular experience is in environmental planning and assessment for renewable energy, EGI, desalination, oil and gas, wetlands and coastal zone management, and industrial and port development. He has been closely involvement in the research and application of Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) in South Africa, and also has wide experience in Environmental and Social Impact Assessment, Environmental Management Programmes (EMPRs) and Environmental Screening Studies. He has been the project leader for over 40 SEAs and EIAs. He also served as project leader for a suite of SEAs commissioned by the DFFE from 2014 to 2020. Paul is a Registered EAP (2019/745) with the Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA).

Rohaida Abed (*Pr. Sci. Nat. and Registered EAP, Project Manager*):

Rohaida Abed is an EAP in the EMS group of the CSIR. She has 14 years of experience in the Environmental Management field, and has been involved in various transport infrastructure related projects as an Environmental Control Officer. She has also been involved in BAs and EIAs relating to renewable energy, port infrastructure and bulk liquid storage facilities in the capacity of Project Manager. She also worked on the SEA for Gas Pipeline and EGI Expansion from 2017 to 2019, which was commissioned by the National Departments of Environmental Affairs, Energy and Public Enterprises. She is a registered Professional Natural Scientist (400247/14) with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP), and a Registered EAP (2021/4067) with the EAPASA.

Helen Antonopoulos (*Project Officer*):

Helen Antonopoulos is an Environmental Scientist in the EMS group of the CSIR and holds BSc, BSc Honours, and MSc degrees in Environmental and Geographical Science from the University of Cape Town. She has compiled numerous EA applications, and BA, Scoping and EIA Reports

⁷ This staff member resigned from the CSIR at the end of December 2023.

for Wind and Solar Energy Facilities in the Western Cape, Northern Cape, and Free State. She currently serves as member of the National Executive Committee (NEC) of the International Association for Impact Assessment South Africa (IAIASa).

Suvasha Ramcharan (Project Officer):

Suvasha Ramcharan is an Environmental Scientist in the EMS group at the CSIR in Durban. Suvasha holds a BSc, BSc Honours, and MSc (cum laude) degrees in Environmental Science from the University of KwaZulu-Natal. She has compiled numerous EA Applications, Scoping and EIA Reports, BA Reports and EMPs for renewable energy projects in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, Northern Cape and Mpumalanga. Suvasha is a registered Candidate Natural Scientist (159219) with the SACNASP.

Phindile Mthembu (Project Officer):

Phindile holds a BSS and BSc Honours in Geography and Environmental Management from the University of KwaZulu-Natal, and a MSc in Geography from the University of KwaZulu-Natal. She has experience in reviewing BA, Scoping and EIA Reports for various projects for Provincial Government. She is an Environmental Consultant in training at the CSIR EMS group. At the CSIR, she has assisted in compiling BA, Scoping and EIA Reports for wind and solar energy facilities in various provinces. Her area of interests includes reviewing and conducting EIAs. She is also part of the project team for the Phase 3 Wind and Solar SEA.

1.11. Need and Desirability

It is an important requirement in the EIA Process to review the need and desirability of the proposed projects. Guidelines on Need and Desirability were published by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) [now operating as the DFFE] in 2017⁸. These guidelines list specific questions to determine need and desirability of proposed developments. This checklist is a useful tool in addressing specific questions relating to the need and desirability of a project and assists in explaining that need and desirability at the provincial and local context. Need and desirability answer the question of whether the activity is being proposed at the right time and in the right place.

Table 1.4 includes a list of questions based on the DFFE's Guideline to determine the need and desirability of the proposed projects. It should be noted this table will be informed by the outcomes of the Scoping and EIA Process and will be updated once the Specialist Assessments are completed in the EIA Phase. Preliminary information has been provided.

It is important to reiterate that the need for the proposed MTS and LILO is based on the need for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV projects. Therefore, Table 1.4 has been completed within this context, as described in Section 1.4 of this chapter.

⁸ DEA (2017), Guideline on Need and Desirability, Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA), Pretoria, South Africa. ISBN: 978-0-9802694-4-4.

Table 1.4: The Guideline on the Need and Desirability’s list of questions to determine the “Need and Desirability” of the proposed project.

NEED	
Question	Response
1. How will this development (and its separate elements/aspects) impact on the ecological integrity of the area?	
<p>1.1. How were the following ecological integrity considerations taken into account?:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1.1. Threatened Ecosystems, 1.1.2. Sensitive, vulnerable, highly dynamic or stressed ecosystems, such as coastal shores, estuaries, wetlands, and similar systems require specific attention in management and planning procedures, especially where they are subject to significant human resource usage and development pressure, 1.1.3. Critical Biodiversity Areas ("CBAs") and Ecological Support Areas ("ESAs"), 1.1.4. Conservation targets, 1.1.5. Ecological drivers of the ecosystem, 1.1.6. Environmental Management Framework, 1.1.7. Spatial Development Framework, and 1.1.8. Global and international responsibilities relating to the environment (e.g. RAMSAR sites, Climate Change, etc.). 	<p>The ecological sensitivities present within the study area will be addressed in detail in the following assessments during the EIA Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment, and Terrestrial Plant and Animal Species Compliance Statement; ▪ Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment; and ▪ Avifauna Assessment. <p>The ecological integrity considerations such as Threatened Ecosystems; sensitive ecosystems; Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs); and conservation targets have been taken into consideration through environmental screening. At the commencement of this Scoping and EIA Process, the study area was plotted on the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) Screening Tool to identify high-level environmental sensitivities, which include various relevant features relating to ecological integrity. The specialists considered these sensitivities and undertook Site Sensitivity Verifications (SSVs) within the study area, where required, in order to confirm or dispute the sensitivities identified by the Screening Tool. The specialists then formulated environmental feature and sensitivity maps for the study area. Thereafter, the Project Developer took such sensitivities, and other considerations, into account and formulated the Buildable Areas, which avoid the no-go areas identified by the specialists. The Buildable Areas were also used to inform the design of the layout. The preliminary layout currently proposed at this Scoping Phase will be further refined and/or detailed during the EIA Phase.</p> <p>During the EIA Phase, the specialists will also identify mitigation measures to indicate how to suitably develop within these areas so that the ecological integrity is maintained.</p> <p>In terms of CBAs and ESAs, a Screening Tool Report generated during the screening phase of the proposed projects, in November 2022, indicated that the study area only contained ESA 1 and 2. This was based on the 2015 Free State Province Biodiversity Plan (FSPBP). However,</p>

NEED	
Question	Response
	<p>a more recent Screening Tool Report generated following specialist SSVs indicated that the study area contains CBA 1 and 2, as well as ESA 1 and 2. This is based on the 2019 FSPBP that was made available on the Screening Tool. Based on feedback received from the Free State Department of Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEA), the reason for the change from ESA to CBA was due to aquatic features. Refer to Appendix G.3 of this Final Scoping Report for a copy of this DESTEA correspondence.</p> <p>Conservation planning data is generally at a coarse spatial resolution. As such, in order to effectively and accurately account for the habitat features which are responsible for the classification of the hexagons (planning units) under the FSPBP, the appointed Aquatic Biodiversity specialist delineated the wetland areas and identified buffer zones for the proposed project. These areas confirmed the status provided in the conservation plan features but refined the extent (i.e. the specialist SSV has refined the exact locations of the CBA, as well as provided suitable buffer classifications). The proposed project avoids the wetlands delineated by the Aquatic Specialist. Access roads traverse these areas; however, this is acceptable as adequate mitigation will be adopted.</p> <p>The appointed Aquatic Biodiversity specialist and Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist explain that development on the terrestrial portions within the CBA hexagons would not be considered a fatal flaw for the proposed Biesjesvlei projects (i.e. Projects 1 to 10). Note that the main infrastructure associated with Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 are not located within any of the wetlands identified by the Aquatic Biodiversity specialist. In addition, all the Biesjesvlei projects, except for part of Biesjesvlei PV3 (Project 3) [which is the subject of a separate report], are not located within any of the terrestrial portions of the CBA hexagons identified in the 2019 FSPBP. For additional information, refer to the SSVs for Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species; and Aquatic Biodiversity and Species in Appendix E.2 and Appendix E.3 of this Scoping Report, respectively.</p> <p>The Terrestrial Biodiversity SSV identified the following sensitive areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Very High sensitivity</u>: Koppies and watercourse / wetlands; and ▪ <u>Medium sensitivity</u>: Grassland. <p>The Aquatic Biodiversity SSV identified the following sensitive areas:</p>

NEED	
Question	Response
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Very high sensitivity</u>: Channelled Valley Bottom (CVB) wetlands and Unchanneled Valley Bottom (UVB) wetlands; and ▪ <u>High sensitivity</u>: Seep wetlands. <p>The Avifauna SSV (Appendix E.4 of this SSV) identified the following sensitivities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>High sensitivity</u>: Drainage Line and Wetland Infusions and Isolated Small Rocky Ridges “Koppies”; ▪ <u>Medium sensitivity</u>: Grassland (Natural and Semi-natural); and ▪ <u>Low sensitivity</u>: Agricultural Fields and Fallow Fields. <p>The sensitivity mapping is included in Chapter 3 and Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report and will be further detailed during the EIA Phase following the completion of detailed specialist assessments. The sensitivities identified by the various specialists, as highlighted above, have been taken into consideration and the no-go areas identified by the specialists avoided into order to identify the Buildable Areas.</p>
<p>1.2. How will this development disturb or enhance ecosystems and/or result in the loss or protection of biological diversity? What measures were explored to firstly avoid these negative impacts, and where these negative impacts could not be avoided altogether, what measures were explored to minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts? What measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?</p>	<p>The ecological sensitivities present within the study area will be addressed in detail in the following assessments during the EIA Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment, and Terrestrial Plant and Animal Species Compliance Statement; ▪ Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment; and ▪ Avifauna Assessment. <p>Refer to the response to Question 1.1 regarding the sensitivities identified in the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Plant and Animal Species, Aquatic Biodiversity and Species, and Avifauna SSVs.</p> <p>The sensitivity mapping is included in Chapter 3 and Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report and will be further detailed during the EIA Phase following the completion of detailed specialist assessments. The sensitivities identified by the various specialists, as highlighted above, have been taken into consideration and the no-go areas avoided into order to identify the Buildable Areas.</p>

NEED	
Question	Response
	<p>Preliminary high-level impacts and mitigation measures have been identified for the Scoping Phase and included in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report, which will be detailed during the EIA Phase.</p> <p>Measures to avoid, remedy, mitigate and manage impacts will be included in the Environmental Management Programmes (EMPrs) that will be compiled for the proposed projects during the EIA Phase and included in the EIA Report.</p>
<p>1.3. How will this development pollute and/or degrade the biophysical environment? What measures were explored to firstly avoid these impacts, and where impacts could not be avoided altogether, what measures were explored to minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts? What measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?</p>	<p>Various SSVs have been compiled and are included in Appendix E of this Scoping Report. These SSVs have identified sensitivities within the study area that should be avoided, based on desktop assessments and field work, where needed. This has informed the identification of the Buildable Areas.</p> <p>In addition, various potential negative impacts that the proposed project may result in, such as degradation to the biophysical environment and potential pollution, have been identified for the Scoping Phase. The associated high-level mitigation measures have also been identified. Such potential impacts and mitigation measures are summarised in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report. All the potential impacts will be assessed in further detail and refined during the EIA Phase. Measures to avoid, remedy, mitigate or manage biophysical impacts will also be included in the EMPrs that will be compiled for the proposed project during the EIA Phase and included in the EIA Report.</p>
<p>1.4. What waste will be generated by this development? What measures were explored to firstly avoid waste, and where waste could not be avoided altogether; what measures were explored to minimise, reuse and/or recycle the waste? What measures have been explored to safely treat and/or dispose of unavoidable waste?</p>	<p>Low volumes of solid waste are estimated to be generated during the construction and operational phases of the proposed project. Specifically, it is estimated that approximately 12 m³ to 15 m³ of solid waste will be generated every month during the construction phase.</p> <p>The following waste materials are expected during the construction phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Packaging material, such as the cardboard, plastic and wooden packaging and off-cuts; ▪ Hazardous waste from empty tins, oils, soil containing oil and diesel (in the event of spills), and chemicals; ▪ Building rubble, discarded bricks, wood and concrete; ▪ Domestic waste generated by personnel; and ▪ Vegetation waste generated from the clearing of vegetation.

NEED	
Question	Response
	<p>Waste generated on site will be disposed of at a registered waste disposal facility. Refer to Chapter 2 (Project Description) of this Scoping Report for further information regarding the proposed waste management.</p> <p>Measures to avoid, remedy, reduce, mitigate or manage waste will be included in the EMPs that will be compiled for the proposed project during the EIA Phase and included in the EIA Report.</p>
<p>1.5. How will this development disturb or enhance landscapes and/or sites that constitute the nation's cultural heritage? What measures were explored to firstly avoid these impacts, and where impacts could not be avoided altogether, what measures were explored to minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts? What measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?</p>	<p>A Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be undertaken during the EIA Phase to assess potential archaeological and cultural impacts resulting from the proposed project. The following preliminary high-level potential impacts have been identified at the Scoping Phase from a heritage perspective:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Construction Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Damage or destruction of archaeological materials. ○ Damage or destruction of graves. ○ Damage to built heritage resources. ○ Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape. ▪ Operational Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Intrusion of the power line and MTS into the landscape. ▪ Decommissioning Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape. <p>Refer to Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report for more information on the preliminary high-level impacts listed above. The impact assessment will be further detailed during the EIA Phase and the HIA will be included in the EIA Report. The HIA will also be sent to the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) for comment during the EIA Phase.</p> <p>A Palaeontology SSV Report has been completed and included in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report. The SSV Report notes that the Screening Tool depicts a Medium to Very High palaeo-sensitivity for the study area. However, the specialist has recommended, based on a 2-day palaeontological site visit, that the study area is of Low to Very Low palaeo-sensitivity. If any fossiliferous deposits are exposed by surface clearance or excavations during the construction phase, the Chance Fossils Finds Protocol should be fully implemented. The Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be incorporated into the EMP in the EIA Phase to ensure that it is fully</p>

NEED	
Question	Response
	implemented during the construction phase. The SSV confirms that there are no fatal flaws and no objections on palaeontological heritage grounds to the authorisation of the proposed projects. Pending the discovery of significant, previously unrecorded fossil sites in the Construction Phase (which can be handled using the Chance Fossil Finds Protocol), <u>no further specialist palaeontological studies, reporting, monitoring or mitigation are considered necessary for the proposed projects</u> . Therefore, no further assessment is necessary from a palaeontology perspective, as explained in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report. SAHRA has also confirmed that this is acceptable. Proof of correspondence from SAHRA is included in Appendix G.6 of this Final Scoping Report.
1.6. How will this development use and/or impact on non-renewable natural resources? What measures were explored to ensure responsible and equitable use of the resources? How have the consequences of the depletion of the non-renewable natural resources been considered? What measures were explored to firstly avoid these impacts, and where impacts could not be avoided altogether, what measures were explored to minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts? What measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?	Measures to avoid, remedy, mitigate or manage impacts on non-renewable natural resources will be included in the EMPs that will be compiled for the proposed projects during the EIA Phase and included in the EIA Report. However, the proposed Biesjesvlei cluster of projects are focused on the use of renewable natural resources (i.e. a Solar PV Facility, BESS and Electricity Grid Infrastructure (EGI)).
1.7. How will this development use and/or impact on renewable natural resources and the ecosystem of which they are part? Will the use of the resources and/or impact on the ecosystem jeopardise the integrity of the resource and/or system taking into account carrying capacity restrictions, limits of acceptable change, and thresholds? What measures were explored to firstly avoid the use of resources, or if avoidance is not possible, to minimise the use of resources? What measures were taken to ensure responsible and equitable use of the resources? What measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?	South Africa has heavily relied on coal as a source of electricity for decades. Due to the nature of coal as a non-renewable resource that causes major environmental degradation, there is a need to identify alternative resources that could promote sustainable energy as well as cleaner energy production mechanisms. The proposed Biesjesvlei PV, BESS and EGI project aims to harness the solar resources available in the area for the generation, storage, dispatching and transmission of electricity. The proposed cluster of projects is seen as a source of 'clean energy' and reduces the dependence on non-renewable sources.
1.7.1. Does the proposed development exacerbate the increased dependency on increased use of resources to maintain economic growth or does it reduce resource dependency (i.e. de-materialised growth)? (note: sustainability requires that settlements reduce their ecological footprint by using less material and energy demands and reduce the amount of waste they generate, without compromising their quest to improve their quality of life)	The proposed Biesjesvlei cluster of projects are a sustainable option for the area and the footprint will, as far as possible, avoid areas of very high environmental sensitivity. Where impacts cannot be avoided, the footprint will be placed to minimise, mitigate or manage potential impacts to the receiving environment.
1.7.2. Does the proposed use of natural resources constitute the best use thereof? Is the use justifiable when considering intra- and intergenerational equity, and are there more important priorities for which	In addition, various potential negative impacts as a result of the proposed project have been identified for the Scoping Phase. The associated high-level mitigation measures have also been identified. Such potential impacts and mitigation measures are summarised in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report. All the potential impacts will be assessed in further detail and refined during the EIA Phase.

NEED	
Question	Response
<p>the resources should be used (i.e. what are the opportunity costs of using these resources of the proposed development alternative?)</p> <p>1.7.3. Do the proposed location, type and scale of development promote a reduced dependency on resources?</p>	
<p>1.8. How were a risk-averse and cautious approach applied in terms of ecological impacts?</p> <p>1.8.1. What are the limits of current knowledge (note: the gaps, uncertainties and assumptions must be clearly stated)?</p> <p>1.8.2. What is the level of risk associated with the limits of current knowledge?</p> <p>1.8.3. Based on the limits of knowledge and the level of risk, how and to what extent was a risk-averse and cautious approach applied to the development?</p>	<p>The precautionary approach has been adopted for this study, i.e. assuming the worst-case scenario will occur and then identifying ways to mitigate or manage these impacts. In addition, the specialist assessments that will be compiled during the EIA Phase will provide detailed feedback on any uncertainties, assumptions, and risks associated with limits of current knowledge.</p>
<p>1.9. How will the ecological impacts resulting from this development impact on people's environmental right in terms following:</p> <p>1.9.1. Negative impacts: e.g. access to resources, opportunity costs, loss of amenity (e.g. open space), air and water quality impacts, nuisance (noise, odour, etc.), health impacts, visual impacts, etc. What measures were taken to firstly avoid negative impacts, but if avoidance is not possible, to minimise, manage and remedy negative impacts?</p> <p>1.9.2. Positive impacts: e.g. improved access to resources, improved amenity, improved air or water quality, etc. What measures were taken to enhance positive impacts?</p>	<p>A dedicated Socio-Economic Assessment will not be undertaken during the EIA Phase for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo project as it is not required by the Screening Tool. The need for the proposed MTS and LILo is based on the need for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV projects. The development of new solar PV such as proposed in the Biesjesvlei package of projects is urgently needed and will bring significant socio-economic benefits by contributing to national energy security. A Socio-Economic Assessment is being undertaken for the Biesjesvlei PV and BESS projects (Projects 1 to 6), and relevant findings from the assessment will therefore inform this MTS and LILo project. Furthermore, the EAP will ensure that adequate socio-economic aspects are covered in the EMPs, to be compiled in the EIA Phase.</p> <p>For contextual purposes, listed below are the high-level impacts that have been identified during the Scoping Phase specifically for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV and Biesjesvlei BESS projects (Projects 1 to 6) [which are the subject of separate reports]:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Construction Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Capital investment contributing to the national, regional and local economy; ○ Generation of employment, income and skills; ○ Social disruption and change in social dynamics; and ○ Reduced quality of life and increased risks due to construction near residences. ▪ Operational Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Operational investment contributing to the national, regional and local economy; ○ Generation of employment, income, and skills;

NEED	
Question	Response
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Increased community prosperity through contributions and income from the proposed projects; and ○ Increased South African power generation reducing the probability of load shedding. ▪ Decommissioning Phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reduced employment and funding.
1.10. Describe the linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services applicable to the area in question and how the development's ecological impacts will result in socio-economic impacts (e.g. on livelihoods, loss of heritage site, opportunity costs, etc.)?	Linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services applicable to the area will be considered as part of the relevant specialist assessments during the EIA Phase.
1.11. Based on all of the above, how will this development positively or negatively impact on ecological integrity objectives / targets / considerations of the area?	<p>The impacts on ecological integrity objectives of the area will be addressed in the following assessments during the EIA Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment, and Terrestrial Plant and Animal Species Compliance Statement; ▪ Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment; and ▪ Avifauna Assessment. <p>Refer to the responses provided to Questions 1.1 to 1.10 regarding the sensitivities identified in these SSVs.</p>
1.12. Considering the need to secure ecological integrity and a healthy biophysical environment, describe how the alternatives identified (in terms of all the different elements of the development and all the different impacts being proposed), resulted in the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of ecological considerations?	<p>Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report includes a description of the alternatives. The no-go alternative will be assessed during the EIA Phase. Activity and technology alternatives are not feasible, as the only feasible method of transmitting the electricity that is generated by the proposed solar PV facilities to the national grid is via the proposed MTS and overhead power lines i.e. LILO. Furthermore, the technology that is proposed for the construction and operation of the proposed MTS and LILO will be guided by national standards, best practice, and requirements from Eskom.</p> <p>The approach followed to identify the buildable areas was to use environmental and social constraints to avoid sensitive features, thus applying mitigation hierarchy thinking. This approach replaces the need to rank alternative sites and locations, as it leads to the selection of the least sensitive development footprint.</p>

NEED	
Question	Response
1.13. Describe the positive and negative cumulative ecological/biophysical impacts bearing in mind the size, scale, scope and nature of the project in relation to its location and existing and other planned developments in the area?	Refer to Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report where the potential cumulative impacts are discussed at a high-level on a preliminary basis, where relevant. The impacts will be assessed in further detail during the EIA Phase. Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report contains a list of all other renewable energy / EGI projects within a 30 km radius that will be considered in the cumulative impact assessment.
2.1. What is the socio-economic context of the area, based on, amongst other considerations, the following considerations?	
2.1.1. The IDP (and its sector plans' vision, objectives, strategies, indicators and targets) and any other strategic plans, frameworks of policies applicable to the area.	<p>The proposed project is entirely located within the Mohokare Local Municipality (MLM) and the Xhariep District Municipality (XDM).</p> <p>The 2023/2024 Final Integrated Development Plan (IDP) lists the following objectives for the MLM (MLM, 2023⁹; Pages 47-48):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Good governance and administration; ▪ Municipal financial viability; ▪ Basic service delivery; ▪ Local economic development; and ▪ Ensuring that the municipality is kept safe and clean. <p>The vision and mission of the MLM are listed below (MLM, 2023, Page 4):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Vision: <i>“To be a community driven municipality that ensures sustainable quality service delivery applying principles of good governance”</i> ▪ Mission: <i>“A performance-driven municipality that utilises its resources efficiently to respond to community needs”.</i> <p>The IDP recognises solar energy development as key opportunities in terms of local economic development (MLM, 2023). The development of the proposed MTS and LILO project will therefore also be in line with the mission and vision of the MLM in terms of sustainability and efficient use of resources.</p>

⁹ Mohokare Local Municipality Final Integrated Development Plan (IDP) 2023 – 2024. 2023. Available: [https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20\(2023\).pdf](https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20(2023).pdf) [online] Accessed: November 2023

NEED	
Question	Response
	<p>The MLM IDP states that unemployment is a challenge in the municipality, and that various local economic development programmes will be implemented to assist in addressing this challenge (MLM, 2023). Unemployment is also discussed as a challenge in the 2023/2024 Final IDP for the XDM (XDM, 2023¹⁰). In line with this, the proposed project will create various job opportunities and economic spin offs during the construction and operational phases (if EA is granted by the DFFE). Refer to Section 1.4 of this chapter for feedback on estimated job creation opportunities for the proposed project.</p> <p>Therefore, the proposed project would help to address the need for increased electricity supply to the national grid while also providing advanced skills transfer and training to the local communities and creating contractual and permanent employment in the area.</p>
2.1.2. Spatial priorities and desired spatial patterns (e.g. need for integrated of segregated communities, need to upgrade informal settlements, need for densification, etc.)	This is not applicable as the proposed projects are located within a rural/agricultural area and the study area is zoned for agricultural use.
2.1.3. Spatial characteristics (e.g. existing land uses, planned land uses, cultural landscapes, etc.)	<p>The land within the study area is currently being used for livestock grazing and agriculture. Some areas are showing signs of overgrazing and trampling. Specifically, there are croplands (currently used for lucerne) in the north-eastern extent of the study area, which have been excluded from the Buildable Areas. The study area also contains various fence lines, gravel roads and tar roads. In addition, the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV Overhead Power Line runs through the study area.</p> <p>An HIA will be undertaken during the EIA Phase to assess potential archaeological and cultural impacts resulting from the proposed project. Refer to the response to Question 1.5 for detailed feedback on the preliminary high-level impacts identified on Archaeology and Cultural Heritage at this stage, as well as feedback on the palaeontology.</p> <p>An Agricultural Compliance Statement has been commissioned and will be completed during the EIA Phase. The Compliance Statement will consider the impact of the proposed project in terms of the land capability and agricultural potential. The proposed study area is identified as being of predominantly low and medium sensitivity for agricultural resources.</p>

¹⁰ Xhariep District Final Integrated Development Plan (IDP) 2023 – 2024. 2023. Available: <http://www.xhariep.fs.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/2023/07/FINAL-IDP-2023-24.pdf> [online] Accessed: November 2023.

NEED	
Question	Response
	<p>As noted, EMPs will be compiled for the proposed project to ensure that all potential negative impacts identified are suitably managed and mitigated, and potential positive impacts are enhanced.</p> <p>The impact on the sense of place is difficult to predict and would potentially be ambiguous. This is due to the subjective nature of perceptions regarding the relative attraction or disturbance of the EGI in a rural/agricultural landscape. The visual impact and considerations will be further assessed as part of the Visual Impact Assessment to be undertaken during the EIA Phase. A Visual SSV has been commissioned and is included in Appendix E.5 of this Scoping Report. The SSV has provided more accurate mapping of landscape features at the detailed project scale, being a refinement of the Screening Tool Landscape Sensitivity Map (where relevant). No significant landscape or scenic features would be affected by the currently proposed projects based on the preliminary layout and Buildable Areas.</p> <p>The sensitivity mapping is included in Chapter 3 and Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report and will be further detailed during the EIA Phase following the completion of detailed specialist assessments. The sensitivities identified by the various specialists have been taken into consideration and the no-go areas avoided in order to identify the Buildable Areas.</p>
2.1.4. Municipal Economic Development Strategy ("LED Strategy").	The LED Strategy will be considered, and potential alignment, will be discussed in the EIA Phase. In the 2023/2024 MLM Final IDP, LED is listed as Key Performance Area 5, and it is linked to the strategic objective of enhancement of the local economy of the municipality (MLM, 2023). The 2023/2024 MLM Final IDP states that the target is to develop the 5-year LED Strategy and have it approved by Council by June 2023 (MLM, 2023). However, at the time of compiling this Scoping Report, only the 2007 – 2012 Integrated LED Plan was available online (MLM, 2007 ¹¹). The 2023/2024 MLM Final IDP lists solar energy investment (and by virtue its associated EGI) as an LED project for 2023/2024 (MLM, 2023).
2.2. Considering the socio-economic context, what will the socio-economic impacts be of the development (and its separate elements/aspects), and specifically also on the socio-economic objectives of the area?	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project. A preliminary socio-economic profile is also included in Chapter 3 of this Scoping Report.

¹¹ Mohokare Local Municipality Integrated Local Economic Development Plan 2007 – 2012. 2007. Available: <https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/led/LED%20Plan%2015-11-06.pdf> [online] Accessed: November 2023.

NEED	
Question	Response
2.2.1. Will the development complement the local socio-economic initiatives (such as local economic development (LED) initiatives), or skills development programs?	
2.3. How will this development address the specific physical, psychological, developmental, cultural and social needs and interests of the relevant communities?	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project. Issues raised by Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) to this effect will also be addressed in the relevant Comments and Responses Trail of the EIA Report.
2.4. Will the development result in equitable (intra- and inter-generational) impact distribution, in the short- and long term? Will the impact be socially and economically sustainable in the short- and long-term?	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project.
2.5. In terms of location, describe how the placement of the proposed development will:	
2.5.1. result in the creation of residential and employment opportunities in close proximity to or integrated with each other	Local employment opportunities will be provided as far as possible. Refer to Section 1.4 of this chapter for feedback on estimated job creation opportunities for the proposed project. It should be noted that the employment opportunities provided are estimates and is dependent on the final engineering design and the REIPPPP Request for Proposal provisions at that point in time.
2.5.2. reduce the need for transport of people and goods	This is not applicable as the proposed project is located within a remote rural/agricultural area and the study area is zoned for agricultural use. The proposed project includes the development of EGI (i.e. MTS and LILo) to facilitate the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV and BESS, and associated infrastructure development.
2.5.3. result in access to public transport or enable non-motorised and pedestrian transport (e.g. will the development result in densification and the achievement of thresholds in terms public transport)	This is not applicable as the proposed project is located within a remote rural/agricultural area and the study area is zoned for agricultural use. Refer to the response provided to Question 2.5.2.
2.5.4. compliment other uses in the area	The land within the study area is currently being used for livestock grazing and agriculture. Some areas are showing signs of overgrazing and trampling. Specifically, there are croplands (currently used for lucerne) in the north-eastern extent of the study area, which have been excluded from the Buildable Areas. During the EIA Phase, the Agricultural Compliance Statement will provide feedback on the potential impact the proposed project will have on agriculture, and whether the current land use can be complimented. It is expected that the proposed project will have wider societal benefits of generating additional income and employment in the local economy.
2.5.5. be in line with the planning for the area	The 2023/2024 MLM Final IDP lists solar energy investment (and by virtue its associated EGI) as an LED project for 2023/2024 (MLM, 2023). The development of the proposed project is

NEED	
Question	Response
	also in line with the mission and vision of the MLM in terms of sustainability and efficient use of resources, as well as in terms of job creation.
2.5.6. for urban related development, make use of the underutilised land available with the urban edge	This is not applicable as the proposed project is located within a remote rural/agricultural area and the study area is zoned for agricultural use.
2.5.7. optimise the use of existing resources and infrastructure	The proposed Biesjesvlei PV projects are planned to connect to the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV overhead power line via dedicated proposed 132 kV power lines, as well as an independent proposed MTS and LILO (i.e. the subject of this report). Therefore, existing infrastructure is being considered.
2.5.8. opportunity costs in terms of bulk infrastructure expansions in non-priority areas (e.g. not aligned with the bulk infrastructure planning for the settlement that reflects the spatial reconstruction priorities of the settlement)	The proposed project is for EGI development to support the proposed Solar PV and BESS projects and is therefore not related to bulk infrastructure expansion.
2.5.9. discourage "urban sprawl" and contribute to compaction/densification	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project.
2.5.10. contribute to the correction of the historically distorted spatial patterns of settlements and to the optimum use of existing infrastructure in excess of current needs	This is not applicable as the proposed project is located within a remote rural/agricultural area and the study area is zoned for agricultural use.
2.5.11. encourage environmentally sustainable land development practices and processes	The proposed MTS and LILO will provide necessary infrastructure for the operation of the proposed solar PV projects. As such, it is a sustainable land development practice provided it is constructed and operated in an environmentally conscious manner.
2.5.12. take into account special locational factors that might favour the specific location (e.g. the location of a strategic mineral resource, access to the port, access to rail, etc.)	Refer to Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report for a description of the process undertaken to identify the study area as the preferred site for the proposed project.
2.5.13. the investment in the settlement or area in question will generate the highest socio-economic returns (i.e. an area with high economic potential)	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project.
2.5.14. impact on the sense of history, sense of place and heritage of the area and the socio-cultural and cultural-historic characteristics and sensitivities of the area	An HIA will be undertaken during the EIA Phase to assess potential archaeological and cultural impacts resulting from the proposed project. Refer to the response to Question 1.5 for detailed feedback on the high-level impacts identified on Archaeology and Cultural Heritage at this stage, as well as feedback on the palaeontology. The visual impact and considerations, including sense of place, will be further assessed as part of the Visual Impact Assessment to be undertaken during the EIA Phase. A SSV has been

NEED	
Question	Response
	commissioned and is included in Appendix E.5 of this Scoping Report. Refer to the response provided to Question 2.1.3 for additional feedback on the potential visual impacts.
2.5.15. in terms of the nature, scale and location of the development promote or act as a catalyst to create a more integrated settlement?	Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report includes a list of other renewable energy / EGI projects within a 30 km radius that have received EA or are currently going through an Environmental Assessment process. The cumulative impact assessment will be detailed during the EIA Phase.
2.6. How were a risk-averse and cautious approach applied in terms of socio-economic impacts?	
2.6.1. What are the limits of current knowledge (note: the gaps, uncertainties and assumptions must be clearly stated)?	The precautionary approach has been adopted for this study, i.e. assuming the worst-case scenario will occur and then identifying ways to mitigate or manage these impacts. In addition, the specialist assessments that will be compiled during the EIA Phase will provide detailed feedback on any uncertainties, assumptions, and risks associated with limits of current knowledge.
2.6.2. What is the level of risk (note: related to inequality, social fabric, livelihoods, vulnerable communities, critical resources, economic vulnerability and sustainability) associated with the limits of current knowledge?	
2.6.3. Based on the limits of knowledge and the level of risk, how and to what extent was a risk-averse and cautious approach applied to the development?	
2.7. How will the socio-economic impacts resulting from this development impact on people's environmental right in terms following:	
2.7.1. Negative impacts: e.g. health (e.g. HIV-Aids), safety, social ills, etc. What measures were taken to firstly avoid negative impacts, but if avoidance is not possible, to minimise, manage and remedy negative impacts?	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project.
2.7.2. Positive impacts. What measures were taken to enhance positive impacts?	In addition, measures to avoid, remedy, mitigate or manage negative socio-economic impacts and enhance positive socio-economic impacts will be included in the EMPs that will be compiled for the proposed project during the EIA Phase and included in the EIA Report.
2.8. Considering the linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services, describe the linkages and dependencies applicable to the area in question and how the development's socioeconomic impacts will result in ecological impacts (e.g. over utilisation of natural resources, etc.)?	Linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services applicable to the area will be considered as part of the relevant specialist assessments during the EIA Phase.
2.9. What measures were taken to pursue the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?	
2.10. What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering	With regards to the best practicable environmental option, Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report includes a description of alternatives. Refer to the response provided to Question 1.12 above for additional information on the alternatives to be considered.

NEED	
Question	Response
the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?	
2.11. What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?	
2.12. What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?	
2.13. What measures were taken to:	
2.13.1. ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties	The Public Participation Process (PPP) that is being undertaken during the Scoping Phase is described in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report, and the PPP that will be undertaken during the EIA Phase is described in Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report. The PPP aims to comply with the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). An integrated PPP is being followed for all 10 proposed Biesjesvlei projects. The Draft Scoping Report was released for a 30-day comment period, which extended from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024 (excluding public holidays), to all the relevant authorities, I&APs and stakeholders. Various methods were employed to notify potential I&APs of the proposed projects, namely, through newspaper advertisements, site notices boards, notification letters and communication via email, as well as text messages, and telephonic discussions where possible.
2.13.2. provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation	
2.13.3. ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons	
2.13.4. promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means	The Scoping and EIA Process will aim to take cognisance of all interests, needs, and values espoused by all I&APs. Opportunity for public participation will be provided to all I&APs throughout the Scoping and EIA Process in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).
2.13.5. ensure openness and transparency, and access to information in terms of the process	The PPP that is being undertaken during the Scoping Phase is described in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report, and the PPP that will be undertaken during the EIA Phase is described in Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report. Refer to the responses provided to Questions 2.13.1 – 2.13.3 above.
2.13.6. ensure that the interests, needs and values of all interested and affected parties were taken into account and that adequate recognition were given to all forms of knowledge, including traditional and ordinary knowledge	The EIA process will take cognisance of relevant interests, needs and values adopted by I&APs.

NEED	
Question	Response
2.13.7. ensure that the vital role of women and youth in environmental management and development were recognised and their full participation therein was promoted	Public participation of all I&APs will be promoted and opportunities for engagement will be provided during the EIA process.
2.14. Considering the interests, needs and values of all the interested and affected parties, describe how the development will allow for opportunities for all the segments of the community (e.g. a mixture of low-, middle-, and high-income housing opportunities) that is consistent with the priority needs of the local area (or that is proportional to the needs of an area)?	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project.
2.15. What measures have been taken to ensure that current and/or future workers will be informed of work that potentially might be harmful to human health or the environment or of dangers associated with the work, and what measures have been taken to ensure that the right of workers to refuse such work will be respected and protected?	EMPRs will be developed during the EIA Phase to address environmental, health and safety concerns. An Environmental Control Officer (ECO) will be appointed to monitor compliance with the EMPRs and EAs (should such authorisations be granted) during the construction and operational phases.
2.16. Describe how the development will impact on job creation in terms of, amongst other aspects:	
2.16.1. the number of temporary versus permanent jobs that will be created	Refer to the response provided to Question 1.9 for a description of the approach towards consideration of potential socio-economic impacts and benefits for the proposed project. Refer to the responses to Questions 2.1.1 and 2.5.1 for feedback on potential employment opportunities.
2.16.2. whether the labour available in the area will be able to take up the job opportunities (i.e. do the required skills match the skills available in the area)	
2.16.3. the distance from where labourers will have to travel	
2.16.4. the location of jobs opportunities versus the location of impacts (i.e. equitable distribution of costs and benefits)	
2.16.5. the opportunity costs in terms of job creation (e.g. a mine might create 100 jobs, but impact on 1000 agricultural jobs, etc.).	
2.17. What measures were taken to ensure:	
2.17.1. that there were intergovernmental coordination and harmonisation of policies, legislation and actions relating to the environment	Various government departments have been listed as I&APs and were given the opportunity to comment on the Draft Scoping Report and will be given the opportunity to comment on the Draft EIA Report during the 30-day public participation period.
2.17.2. that actual or potential conflicts of interest between organs of state were resolved through conflict resolution procedures?	This will be determined during the EIA Phase (following the PPP undertaken as part of the Scoping Phase).
2.18. What measures were taken to ensure that the environment will be held in public trust for the people, that the beneficial use of environmental resources will serve the	The proposed project will adhere to the principles of environmental management in NEMA. Measures taken to ensure adherence to the principles of NEMA will be determined during the

NEED	
Question	Response
public interest, and that the environment will be protected as the people's common heritage?	EIA Phase. In addition, the outcomes of this Scoping and EIA Process and the associated conditions of the EAs (should they be received) will serve to address this question.
2.19. Are the mitigation measures proposed realistic and what long-term environmental legacy and managed burden will be left?	It would be premature to decide whether proposed mitigation measures are realistic prior to the completion of the Impact Assessment Phase of this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the practicality of mitigation measures shall be determined during the EIA Phase. The proposed mitigation measures to be included in the EMPs will be informed by the specialist studies undertaken. This will include a detailed assessment of the environment as well as the impacts associated with the proposed development.
2.20. What measures were taken to ensure that the costs of remedying pollution, environmental degradation and consequent adverse health effects and of preventing, controlling or minimising further pollution, environmental damage or adverse health effects will be paid for by those responsible for harming the environment?	The EMPs for the proposed project (to be included in the EIA Report) will form part of the contractual agreement and must be adhered to by the contractors, construction workers and the Project Applicant. The EMPs will include measures to ensure that the costs to potentially remedy pollution, environmental degradation and consequent adverse health effects will be paid for by those responsible for the relevant environmental impacts. The EMPs will accordingly include measures to ensure that the costs to potentially prevent, control or minimise further pollution, environmental damage or adverse health effects will be paid for by those responsible for the relevant environmental impacts. Roles and responsibilities for the implementation of management actions and monitoring thereof will be included in the EMPs.
2.21. Considering the need to secure ecological integrity and a healthy bio-physical environment, describe how the alternatives identified (in terms of all the different elements of the development and all the different impacts being proposed), resulted in the selection of the best practicable environmental option in terms of socio-economic considerations?	The proposed development is a suitable land use option for the site. The proposed project would be robust in terms of economic viability and profitability while also being largely uninfluenced by climate change variables. The proposed project would also provide the farm owners with additional income by way of lease agreements and will also contribute to local socio-economic upliftment through job creation. Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report includes a description of the alternatives. Refer to the response provided to Question 1.12 above for additional information on the alternatives to be considered.
2.22. Describe the positive and negative cumulative socio-economic impacts bearing in mind the size, scale, scope, and nature of the project in relation to its location and other planned developments in the area?	The potential cumulative impacts resulting from the proposed project can only be objectively determined at the end of the EIA process. These will be assessed as part of the EIA Phase. Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report contains a list of all other renewable energy / EGI projects within a 30 km radius that are being considered in the cumulative impact assessment. The cumulative impacts will be assessed during the EIA Phase.

1.12. Objectives for this Scoping Report

The Scoping Phase of the EIA refers to the process of determining the spatial and temporal boundaries for the EIA. In broad terms, the objectives of the Scoping Process in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) are to:

- Confirm the process to be followed and opportunities for stakeholder engagement;
- Clarify the project scope to be covered;
- Identify and confirm the preferred activity and technology alternative;
- Identify and confirm the preferred site for the preferred activity;
- Identify the key issues to be addressed in the impact assessment phase and the approach to be followed in addressing these issues; and
- Confirm the level of assessment to be undertaken during the impact assessment.

This is achieved through parallel initiatives of consulting with:

- The lead authorities involved in the decision-making for the proposed project;
- The public to ensure that local issues are well understood; and
- The EIA specialist team to ensure that technical issues are identified.

The Scoping Process is supported by a review of relevant background literature on the local area. Through this comprehensive process, the environmental assessment can identify and focus on key issues requiring further assessment during the EIA Phase.

The primary objective of the Scoping Report is to present key stakeholders (including affected organs of state) with an overview of the proposed project and key issues that require assessment in the EIA Phase and allows the opportunity for the identification of additional issues that may require assessment.

Issues raised in response to the Draft Scoping Report that was released for a 30-day comment period, which extended from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024 (excluding public holidays), have been captured in the Issues and Responses Trail, which is included in Appendix G.7 of this Final Scoping Report. The Final Scoping Report is currently being submitted to the DFFE for consideration (i.e. approval or refusal) in line with Regulation 21 (1) of GN R326. This approval is planned to mark the end of the Scoping Phase after which the EIA Process moves into the impact assessment and reporting phase.

In terms of legal requirements, a crucial objective of the Scoping Report is to satisfy the requirements of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), as noted in Regulation 21 (3) of the GN R326. This section regulates and prescribes the content of the Scoping Report and specifies the type of supporting information that must accompany the submission of the Scoping Report to the authorities. An overview of where the requirements of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) are addressed in this Scoping Report is presented in Table 1.5.

Furthermore, this process has been designed to satisfy the requirements of Regulations 41, 42, 43 and 44 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) relating to the PPP and, specifically, the registration of and submissions from I&APs.

Table 1.5: Compliance with Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)

Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended, GN R326)	Chapter / Appendix
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(a)	Details of - i. the EAP who prepared the report; and ii. the expertise of the EAP, including a curriculum vitae;	Chapter 1, Appendix A and Appendix B
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(b)	The location of the activity, including - i. the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel; ii. where available, the physical address and farm name; iii. where the required information in items (i) and (ii) is not available, the coordinates of the boundary of the property or properties;	Chapter 1 and Chapter 2
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(c)	A plan which locates the proposed activity or activities applied for at an appropriate scale, or if it is - i. a linear activity, a description, and coordinates of the corridor in which the proposed activity or activities is to be undertaken; or ii. on land where the property has not been defined, the coordinates within which the activity is to be undertaken;	Chapter 1, Chapter 2, Chapter 3, Chapter 7, Appendix D and Appendix E
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(d)	A description of the scope of the proposed activity, including – i. all listed and specified activities triggered; ii. a description of the activities to be undertaken, including associated structures and infrastructure;	Chapter 2 and Chapter 4
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(e)	A description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process;	Chapter 4
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(f)	A motivation for the need and desirability for the proposed development including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;	Chapter 1
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(g)	A full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred activity, site and location of the development footprint within the site, including - i. details of all the alternatives considered;	Chapter 5
	ii. details of the public participation process undertaken in terms of regulation 41 of the Regulations, including copies of the supporting documents and inputs;	Chapter 4, Appendix C, Appendix F, Appendix G
	iii. a summary of the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and an indication of the manner in which the issues were incorporated, or the reasons for not including them;	Chapter 7 and Appendix G.7
	iv. the environmental attributes associated with the alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;	Chapter 3, Chapter 5, Chapter 6 and Appendix E
	v. the impacts and risks which have informed the identification of each alternative, including nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration, and probability of such identified impacts, including the degree to which these impacts –	Chapter 5 and Chapter 6

Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended, GN R326)	Chapter / Appendix
	<p>(aa) can be reversed; (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;</p> <p>vi. the methodology used in identifying and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration, and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks associated with the alternatives;</p> <p>vii. positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;</p> <p>viii. the possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;</p> <p>ix. the outcome of the site selection matrix;</p> <p>x. if no alternatives, including alternative locations for the activity, were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and</p> <p>xi. a concluding statement indicating the preferred alternatives, including the preferred location of the activity;</p>	<p>Chapter 7</p> <p>Chapter 5 and Chapter 6</p> <p>Chapter 5 and Chapter 6</p> <p>Chapter 5</p> <p>Chapter 5</p> <p>Chapter 5</p>
<p>Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(h)</p>	<p>A plan of study for undertaking the environmental impact assessment process to be undertaken, including -</p> <p>i. a description of the alternatives to be considered and assessed within the preferred site, including the option of not proceeding with the activity;</p> <p>ii. a description of the aspects to be assessed as part of the environmental impact assessment process;</p> <p>iii. aspects to be assessed by specialists;</p> <p>iv. a description of the proposed method of assessing the environmental aspects, including aspects to be assessed by specialists;</p> <p>v. a description of the proposed method of assessing duration and significance;</p> <p>vi. an indication of the stages at which the competent authority will be consulted;</p> <p>vii. particulars of the public participation process that will be conducted during the environmental impact assessment process; and</p> <p>viii. a description of the tasks that will be undertaken as part of the environmental impact assessment process;</p> <p>ix. identify suitable measures to avoid, reverse, mitigate or manage identified impacts and to determine the extent of the residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.</p>	<p>Chapter 7</p>
<p>Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(i)</p>	<p>An undertaking under oath or affirmation by the EAP in relation to -</p> <p>i. the correctness of the information provided in the report;</p> <p>ii. the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and interested and affected parties; and</p> <p>iii. any information provided by the EAP to interested and affected parties and any responses by the EAP to comments or inputs made by interested or affected parties;</p>	<p>Appendix B</p>
<p>Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(j)</p>	<p>An undertaking under oath or affirmation by the EAP in relation to the level of agreement between the EAP and interested and affected parties on the plan of study for undertaking the environmental impact assessment;</p>	<p>Appendix B</p>

Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended, GN R326)	Chapter / Appendix
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(k)	Where applicable, any specific information required by the competent authority.	Not Applicable
Appendix 2 - (2)(1)(l)	Any other matter required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act.	N/A
Appendix 2 – (2)(2)	Where a government notice gazetted by the Minister provides for any protocol or minimum information requirement to be applied to a scoping report, the requirements as indicated in such notice will apply.	Not applicable in terms of the Scoping Report, however various gazetted assessment and reporting protocols will be complied with for the specialist studies in the EIA Phase. Refer to Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report for additional information.



CHAPTER 2: Project Description

Contents

2. PROJECT DESCRIPTION	2-3
2.1 Definition of Project Study Area	2-3
2.2 Project Locality	2-5
2.3 Project Co-ordinates	2-6
2.4 Key components of Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)	2-6
2.4.1 Main Transmission Substation and associated infrastructure	2-10
2.4.2 Internal Roads within the MTS	2-10
2.4.3 Loop-In-Loop-Out	2-10
2.4.4 Service Road for the LILO	2-11
2.4.5 Storm Water	2-11
2.4.6 External Access Roads	2-12
2.5 Service Provision	2-17
2.5.1 Water Usage	2-17
2.5.2 Sewage or Liquid Effluent	2-18
2.5.3 Solid Waste Generation	2-19
2.5.4 Electricity Requirements	2-20
2.6 Socio-Economic	2-20
2.6.1 Construction Phase	2-20
2.6.2 Operational Phase	2-20
2.6.3 Socio-Economic Investment and Development	2-20
2.7 Overview of the Project Development Cycle	2-21
2.7.1 Planning and Design Phase	2-21
2.7.2 Construction Phase	2-21
2.7.3 Operational Phase	2-22
2.7.4 Decommissioning Phase	2-22
2.8 Schematic Overview of the Biesjesvlei Development	2-23

Tables

Table 2.1: Farm Properties forming the study area.	2-3
Table 2.2: Affected Farm Properties for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)	2-5
Table 2.3: Co-ordinates for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)	2-6
Table 2.4: Description of the components of Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and Associated Infrastructure	2-6
Table 2.5: Existing Access Road Specifications	2-12
Table 2.6: Preliminary Vehicle Track Analysis and Extent of Widening Required	2-15

Figures

Figure 2.1: Affected and Adjacent Farm Portions for the study area	2-4
Figure 2.2: Access Routes to the study area.	2-13
Figure 2.3: Photo of the S1262 taken along the gravel portion of the road (Source: Sturgeon Consulting, 2023).	2-13
Figure 2.4: Map indicating the relevant cement bridges (Source: Google Earth, 2023).	2-14
Figure 2.5. Schematic Overview (not to scale) of the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO development.	2-23

2. PROJECT DESCRIPTION

This chapter provides an overview of the conceptual project design and technology for the following proposed project that is addressed in this report:

- **PROJECT 10:** The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

The purpose of this chapter is to present sufficient project information on the proposed project to inform the Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Process in terms of design parameters applicable to the project.

2.1 Definition of Project Study Area

The **study area** or **preferred site** for all the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV Facilities, BESS, 132 kV power lines, MTS and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILo) and associated infrastructure (i.e. Projects 1 to 10) covers approximately 3 060 hectares (ha). These farm properties are listed in Table 2.1. The full extent of the study area has been assessed by the specialists in order to identify environmental sensitivities and no-go areas. The preferred site serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the terms “site” and “study area” are used synonymously in this report.

Table 2.1: Farm Properties forming the study area.

FARM PORTION	SG CODE
Farm Benoni 534	F03100000000053400000
Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521	F03100000000052100000
Farm Biesjesvlei 372	F03100000000037200000
Farm Klein Badfontein 369	F03100000000036900000
Farm Modderkuil 396	F03100000000039600000
Farm Paalland 373	F03100000000037300000
Remaining Extent of Farm Pompoenfontein 118	F03100000000011800000
Portion 1 of Farm Pompoenfontein 118	F03100000000011800001
Farm Ronde Bult 408	F03100000000040800000
Farm Salpetervlei 756	F03100000000075600000
Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34	F0310000000003400001

At the commencement of this Scoping and EIA Process, the study area was plotted on the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) Screening Tool to identify high-level environmental sensitivities. The specialists considered these sensitivities and undertook Site Sensitivity Verifications (SSVs) within the study area, where required, in order to confirm or dispute the sensitivities identified by the Screening Tool. The specialists then formulated environmental feature and sensitivity maps for the study area. Thereafter, the Project Developer took such

sensitivities, and other considerations, into account and formulated the **Buildable Areas**, which avoid the no-go areas identified by the specialists. The Buildable Areas were also used to inform the design of the layout. The preliminary layout currently proposed at this Scoping Phase will be further refined and/or detailed during the EIA Phase.

Figure 2.1 provides an indication of the affected farm portions and the adjacent farm portions for the entire study area.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

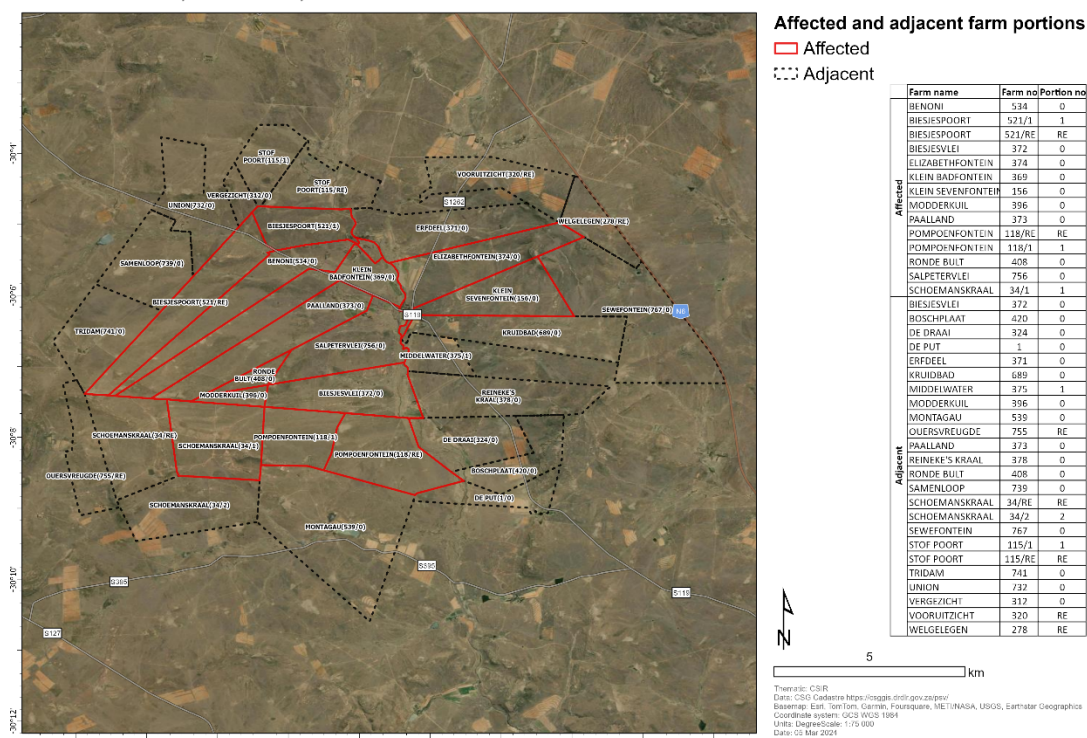


Figure 2.1: Affected and Adjacent Farm Portions for the study area

2.2 Project Locality

Appendix 2 of the 2014 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) EIA Regulations (as amended) states that a Scoping Report must provide the location of the activity, including the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel; where available, the physical address and farm name; or the coordinates of the boundary of the property or properties if the aforementioned is not available. Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) also states that a Scoping Report must include a plan which locates the proposed activity or activities applied for at an appropriate scale.

In line with the above, refer to Chapter 1 for a locality map of the proposed project and associated infrastructure. Refer to Appendix D of this Scoping Report for additional maps.

The proposed project and associated infrastructure will occur on the farm portions listed in Table 2.2 below, which also specifies the corresponding 21-digit Surveyor General code for each affected farm portion. The properties to be affected by the development of the proposed project will be leased from the property owners by the Project Applicant for the life span of the proposed project.

Table 2.2: Affected Farm Properties for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)

Farm Portion	21-digit Surveyor General code
Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and associated infrastructure within the MTS site	
Farm Klein Badfontein 369	F03100000000036900000
Farm Paalland 373	F03100000000037300000
400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) and Service Road below the 400 kV LILO	
Farm Paalland 373	F03100000000037300000
Widening of Existing Road Intersections	
Farm Benoni 534	F03100000000053400000
Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521	F03100000000052100000
Portion 1 of Farm Biesjespoort 521	F03100000000052100001
Remaining Extent of Farm Elizabethfontein 374	F03100000000037400000
Farm Klein Badfontein 369	F03100000000036900000
Farm Salpetervlei 756	F03100000000075600000
Remaining Extent of Klein Sevenfontein 156	F03100000000015600000

2.3 Project Co-ordinates

The co-ordinates of the estimated mid-points and start-middle-end points of the proposed project are detailed in Table 2.3.

Table 2.3: Co-ordinates for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)

Co-ordinate Point	Decimal Degrees		Degrees, Minutes, Seconds	
	Latitude (Y)	Longitude (X)	Latitude (S)	Longitude (E)
Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and associated infrastructure within the MTS site				
Mid-Point	-30.10666477	26.37959447	30° 06' 23.99317748" S	26° 22' 46.54010213" E
400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) and Service Road below the 400 kV LILO				
Start-Point	-30.10666477	26.37959447	30° 06' 23.99317748" S	26° 22' 46.54010213" E
Mid-Point	-30.10627456	26.38845353	30° 06' 22.58840180" S	26° 23' 18.43272040" E
End-Point	-30.10568687	26.39419563	30° 06' 20.47272702" S	26° 23' 39.10427790" E
Widening of Existing Road Intersections				
Mid-Point (S1262/S119 intersection)	-30.10423498	26.4123598	30° 06' 15.24592316" S	026° 24' 44.49527212" E
Mid-Point (S119/Option A)	-30.10220739	26.40774196	30° 06' 07.94659649" S	026° 24' 27.87105360" E
Mid-Point (S119/Option B)	-30.09339592	26.38873086	30° 05' 36.22530598" S	026° 23' 19.43109165" E
Mid-Point (S119/Option C)	-30.08839031	26.37833609	30° 05' 18.20510587" S	026° 22' 42.00993312" E

2.4 Key components of Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure)

The proposed project will consist of the key components listed below in Table 2.4. A summary of the key components of the proposed project and technical information is described in this section.

Table 2.4: Description of the components of Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and Associated Infrastructure

Component	Description
Independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Footprint: Approximately 36 ha ▪ Height: 15 m ▪ Capacity: 400/132 kV ▪ Associated infrastructure includes busbars, feeder bays, transformers and transformer bays.

Component	Description
Building Infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Operational and Maintenance (O&M) Building and Offices (approximately 500 m² in area, and 7 m in height)
Fencing around the MTS Perimeter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Type</u>: Palisade or mesh or fully electrified ▪ <u>Security</u>: Access points will be managed and monitored by an appointed security service provider. ▪ <u>Height</u>: Between 2 - 3 m
Internal Roads within the MTS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Details</u>: New internal gravel roads will need to be established within the fenced off area of the MTS. ▪ <u>Width</u>: Approximately 4 m
400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The LILO will be routed above ground from the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV Overhead Power Line to the proposed MTS. ▪ <u>Height</u>: Up to 37 m ▪ <u>Length</u>: Approximately 1 km ▪ <u>Servitude</u>: 40 m wide ▪ <u>Pylon specifications</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ <u>Type</u>: Lattice structures. ○ <u>Tower</u>: Self-supporting and Angle Strain. ○ <u>Foundation</u>: The size of the footprint area for the base of the tower foundation will range to approximately 100 m². The minimum working area required around a structure position is 20 m x 20 m. ○ <u>Span Length</u>: 200 m – 375 m
Service Road for the LILO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Details</u>: A new gravel service road will need to be established below the LILO. ▪ <u>Width</u>: Approximately 4 m
External Access Roads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads. Specifically, three access route options are being considered: Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which are routed along the N6; S1262; and S119. Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed

Component	Description
	<p>projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Existing roads will be used as far as practically achievable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>New Access Roads</u>: Where new access roads are required within the study area, these will be 4 - 8 m wide. ▪ <u>Existing Access Roads</u>: Where existing roads are used within the study area, they may need to be upgraded, as described below. ▪ The Traffic Specialist¹ has noted the following based on preliminary investigations (additional detail is provided in Section 2.4.6 of this report): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The N6, S1262, and S119 are suitable and do not need to be upgraded. ○ The N6, S1262, and S119 are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening by more than 4 m or more than 6 m may be required at localised positions (i.e. intersections). Specifically, road widening by approximately 9 m will be required at the S1262 and S119 intersection. ○ Existing internal farm roads (local farm roads within the farm property boundaries) will need to be upgraded to accommodate the abnormal loads as required. This includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A: Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required. ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B: Road widening by approximately 7 m (at the widest point) will be required. ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C: Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required.

¹ The Traffic Impact Assessment is being undertaken for the Biesjesvlei PV (Projects 1 to 3) and Biesjesvlei BESS (Projects 4 to 6). Traffic related information will still inform the EGI projects.

Component	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ An existing bridge on the S119 will also need to be inspected by a Structural Engineer. ▪ The existing bridge on the existing internal farm road leading from Access Route Option A will most likely need to be rebuilt or realigned to minimise the turns that the abnormal loads need to navigate. Additional detail will be provided in the EIA Phase.
Storm water channels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Details to be confirmed once the Engineering, Procurement and Construction (EPC) contractor has been selected and the design is finalised. Where necessary, a detailed storm water management plan would need to be developed.
Work area during the construction phase (i.e. laydown area)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Footprint: Up to 13 ha
Water Requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Approximately 8 000 m³ to 12 000 m³ of water is estimated to be required per year for the construction phase. ▪ Approximately 10 000 m³ to 16 000 m³ of water is estimated to be required per year for the operational phase. ▪ Water requirements during the decommissioning phase are expected to be the same as the construction phase. ▪ Potential sources: Existing boreholes on site or from the Local Municipality via trucks.
Construction Period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 12 – 24 months
Operational Period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Once the commercial operation date is achieved, the proposed EGI will transmit electricity for a minimum period of 20 to 30 years.

A description of the key components of the proposed project is described below.

2.4.1 Main Transmission Substation and associated infrastructure

The proposed project will include the development of an independent 400/132 kV MTS. The MTS will extend to a maximum height of 15 m, with a maximum footprint of 36 ha.

Associated infrastructure at the MTS is also proposed, such as 132 kV busbars, feeder bays, 500 MVA 400/132 kV transformers, and transformer bays.

The proposed MTS will also include an Operational and Maintenance (O&M) building and laydown area for construction purposes. The proposed O&M building is expected to extend approximately 500 m² in area, and 7 m in height. The proposed laydown area is planned to cover an estimated area of up to 13 ha.

For various reasons such as security, public protection and lawful requirements, the proposed MTS will be secured via the installation of appropriate fencing. The fencing type could be palisade or mesh or fully electrified, with an estimated height of 2 to 3 m. Access points will be managed and monitored by an appointed security service provider.

There is also the requirement for the installation of a lightning mast within the substation yard, which will not be higher than 21 m.

The MTS will be transferred from the IPP to Eskom at the Commercial Operational Date (COD). At this point, the EA (should it be granted), will be officially transferred to Eskom via a Part 1 EA Amendment Process.

2.4.2 Internal Roads within the MTS

Internal roads will also be constructed within the footprint of the MTS. The internal roads will be composed of gravel and extend approximately 4 m wide. The total internal road length will be estimated during the EIA Phase, and may vary slightly, depending on the final design.

2.4.3 Loop-In-Loop-Out

A dedicated overhead 400 kV power line (LILO) will be constructed from the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV overhead power line to the proposed MTS.

The power line will extend up to approximately 37 m in height, and approximately 1 km in length. The servitude for the 400 kV power line will be approximately 40 m wide (i.e. approximately 20 m on either side of the power line). The entire servitude will not be cleared of vegetation. Vegetation clearance within the servitude will be undertaken in compliance with relevant standards and specifications.

The line will consist of lattice structures, with self-supporting and angle strain towers. The span lengths are estimated to range between 200 m and 375 m. The size of the footprint area for the base of the tower foundation will range to approximately 100 m². The minimum working area required around a structure position is 20 m x 20 m. Exact specifications will be confirmed during the detailed design phase.

Underground power lines are not feasible because of technical losses involved with large lengths of underground cables and high costs. Maintenance is also easier on aboveground power lines in comparison to underground cables, the latter of which would result in more disruption.

A high-level corridor for the LILO has been indicated on the preliminary layout maps in Chapter 7 of this Final Scoping Report. However, the LILO route will be finalised in the EIA Phase, and it can be routed within the 3060 ha study area, which has been assessed by the specialists entirely, outside of no-go areas specified by the specialists. Should the power line route need to change post EA (should EA be granted), it is understood that such can be undertaken via a non-substantive EA amendment, provided that the power line is routed within the 3060 ha assessed area and avoids all no-go areas identified by the specialists.

2.4.4 Service Road for the LILO

A service road will also be constructed below the power line for maintenance purposes. The service road is expected to be composed of gravel and will extend approximately 4 m wide. The road length may vary slightly, depending on the final design.

2.4.5 Storm Water

The following design principles are proposed to manage storm water overland flow and mitigate erosion:

- The internal roads within the MTS are proposed to be constructed level with the natural ground level to prevent channelization of the surface water. This will also prevent concentrated surface runoff erosion;
- For scattered small ridges that have localized steeper gradients it is proposed that localized storm water cut-off channels be implemented above the areas only when evidence of erosion is observed at the natural state (prior to construction);
- Run-off needs to be managed and controlled to the natural riverbed with suitable lining and gabion structures; and
- At loading areas and building structures, allowance will be made to minimize any erosion that might occur. This can be achieved by placing vegetated grass blocks on the verges of these hardened areas to limit flow velocity and to assist with the recharge of the water table.

Therefore, the existing rainfall and storm water runoff characteristics will not be changed with the construction should the proposed design principles be implemented.

Storm water infrastructure, such as channels, will be constructed on site to ensure that storm water run-off from site is appropriately managed. Water from these channels is not likely to contain any chemicals or hazardous substances and will be released into the surrounding environment based on the natural drainage contours.

Details of storm water management are to be confirmed once the Engineering, Procurement and Construction (EPC) contractor has been selected and the design is finalised. Where necessary, a detailed Storm Water Management Plan would need to be developed during the detailed design phase (post EA, should such an authorisation be granted) and to be implemented during all phases

of the project. Recommendations for the management of storm water will be discussed in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) during the EIA Phase.

2.4.6 External Access Roads

A Traffic Impact Assessment² will be completed in the EIA Phase for the proposed project in order to determine potential traffic and transport related impacts.

The proposed project study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads (Table 2.5). The potential access routes are discussed below and illustrated in Figure 2.2:

- **Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C:**
 - Along the N6; S1262; and S119.

Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed project will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Where new access roads are required within the study area, these will have a width ranging between 4 m and 8 m. Where existing roads are used within the study area, they may need to be upgraded or widened.

Table 2.5: Existing Access Road Specifications

Road Name	Road Authority	Road Width	Gravel / Surfaced
N6	SANRAL	Between ± 8.0m and ± 10.0m	Surfaced
S1262	Free State Provincial Government	Between ± 5.0m and ± 8.0m	Gravel
S119	Free State Provincial Government	Between ± 6.0m and ± 8.0m	Gravel

Access Route Option A is the preferred main access route for the proposed project. The main existing access point from the closest surfaced road is the intersection of the N6 and S1262, located approximately 17.9 km north-west of Smithfield. This access point will provide the most direct access from a surfaced road. Figure 2.3 provides an image of the S1262 taken along the gravel portion of the road.

² The Traffic Impact Assessment is being undertaken for the Biesjesvlei PV (Projects 1 to 3) and Biesjesvlei BESS (Projects 4 to 6). Traffic related information will still inform the EGI projects.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

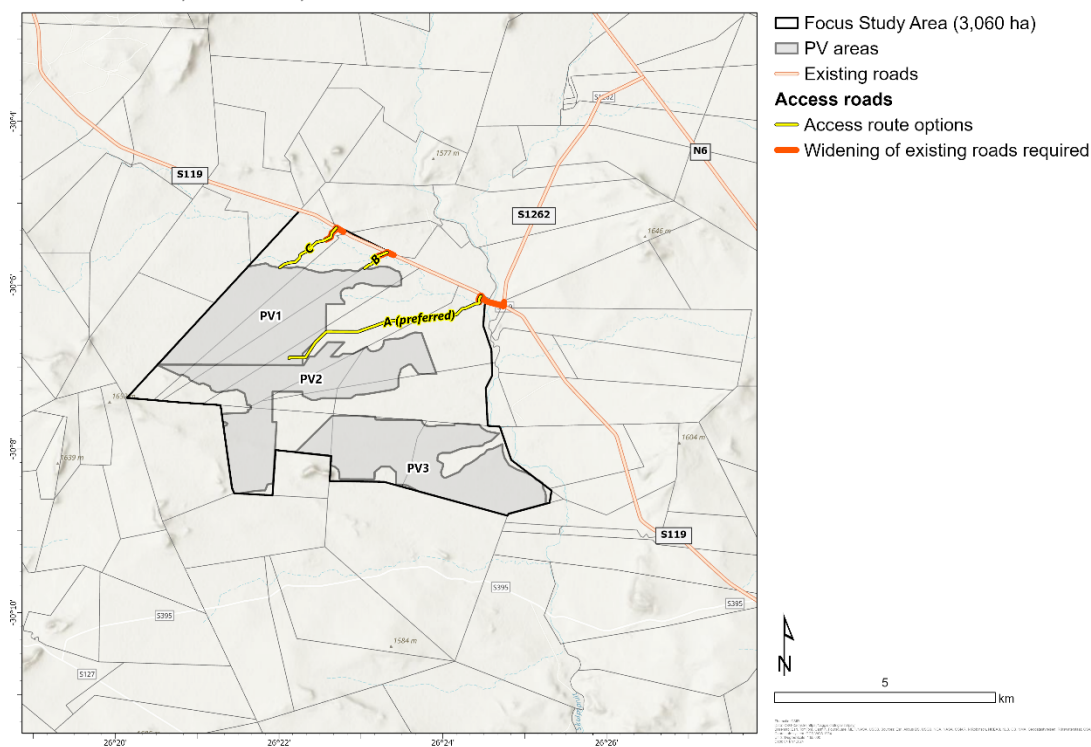


Figure 2.2: Access Routes to the study area.



Figure 2.3: Photo of the S1262 taken along the gravel portion of the road (Source: Sturgeon Consulting, 2023).

As indicated above, these existing roads in the vicinity of the study area may need to be upgraded for the proposed Biesjesvlei projects. The Traffic Specialist has noted the following based on preliminary investigations:

- Existing external access roads (N6, S1262, and S119) are suitable and do not need to be upgraded.
- The N6, S1262, and S119 are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening by more than 4 m or more than 6 m may be required at localised positions. Specifically, road widening will be required at the S1262 and S119 intersection. Additional preliminary information is provided below.
- Existing internal farm roads (local farm roads within the farm property boundaries) will need to be upgraded to accommodate the abnormal loads as required. The upgrading includes the following (additional preliminary information is provided below):
 - Road widening at the S119 and Access Route Option A intersection.
 - Road widening at the S119 and Access Route Option B intersection.
 - Road widening at the S119 and Access Route Option C intersection.
 - The existing bridge on the S119 (indicated in Figure 2.4) will need to be inspected by a Structural Engineer. If it is assumed, as a worst case that the Structural Engineer finds the existing bridge unsuitable, then the bridge will need to be upgraded. The Traffic Specialist noted that widening is not expected along the S119 bridge, however strengthening and potentially new culverts may be required.
 - The existing bridge on the existing internal farm road leading from Access Route Option A (indicated in Figure 2.4) will most likely need to be rebuilt or realigned to minimise the turns that the abnormal loads need to navigate. Additional detail will be provided in the EIA Phase.

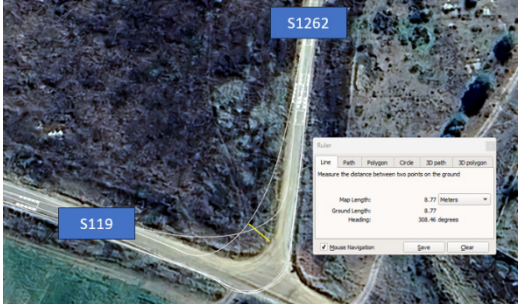

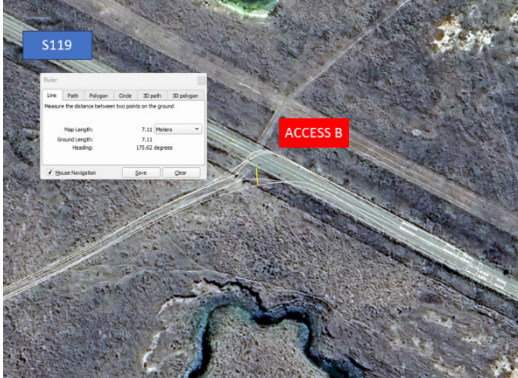


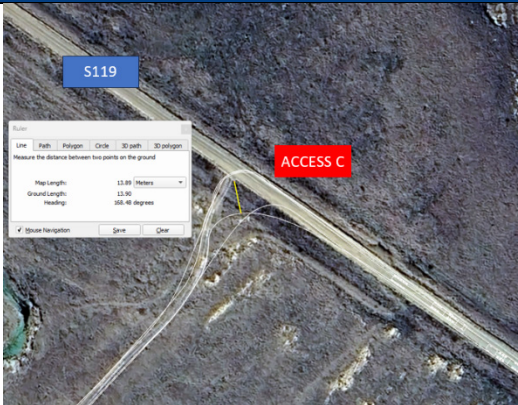
Figure 2.4: Map indicating the relevant cement bridges (Source: Google Earth, 2023).

▪ **Preliminary Vehicle Tracking Analysis**

To accommodate the turning movements of abnormal vehicles, the Traffic Specialist undertook a preliminary vehicle tracking along the Access Route Options to determine areas where the existing road will need to be widened / lengthened. Additional detail is provided in Table 2.6.

Table 2.6: Preliminary Vehicle Track Analysis and Extent of Widening Required

Intersection Location	Extent of Widening Required	Vehicle Tracking Analysis
S1262 and S119	Approximately 9 m	
S119 and Access Route Option A	Approximately 14 m	
S119 and Access Route Option B	Approximately 7 m	

Intersection Location	Extent of Widening Required	Vehicle Tracking Analysis
S119 and Access Route Option C	Approximately 14 m	

Based on the above, the following is concluded on a preliminary basis based on the wheel tracking analysis of the abnormal load vehicles (Figure 2.2):

- **Access Route Options A, B and C:** No road will need to be lengthened by more than 1 kilometre. However, road widening exceeding 6 m will be required at the **S1262 and S119 intersection** (approximately 9 m at the widest point). No other widening or lengthening of roads will be required along these routes, except at the following access points to the study area:
 - **Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A:** Road widening exceeding 6 m will be required at the **S119 and Access Route Option A intersection** (approximately 14 m at the widest point).
 - **Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B:** Road widening exceeding 6 m will be required at the **S119 and Access Route Option B intersection** (approximately 7 m at the widest point).
 - **Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C:** Road widening exceeding 6 m will be required at the **S119 and Access Route Option C intersection** (approximately 14 m at the widest point).

- **Haulage of Imported Materials**

All components fabricated in foreign countries will need to be imported into South Africa via one of the ports. The closest port to the proposed development is the Port of East London, which would result in a route from the port northwards via the N6 to the access point to the study area.

Another option will be the route from the Port of Ngqura, which follows the N2 from the port and then turns north onto the N10 to Cradock thereafter proceeds north onto the R390 to Bethulie then turns east onto the R701 to Smithfield. From Smithfield, the N6 can be taken north up to the access point to the study area.

The last option will be the route from the Port of Durban, which follows the N3 from the port to Harrismith and then turns west onto the N5 to Winburg. From Winburg, the N1 can be taken through Bloemfontein and then the N6 up to the access point to the study area.

2.5 Service Provision

The Project Developer will consult with the Mohokare Local Municipality during the EIA Phase in order to confirm the supply of services (in terms of water usage, sewage removal, solid waste removal, and electricity requirements) for the proposed project. The municipality was also consulted during the 30-day public review period of the Draft Scoping Report in order to seek comments on the proposed projects. However, no comments were received from the municipality. Refer to Appendix G.4 of this Final Scoping Report for a copy of the follow up correspondence sent to the municipality. Additional attempts to seek comments from the municipality will be made during the EIA Phase.

Should the local municipality not have adequate capacity available for the handling of waste, provision of water and sewage handling provisions; then the Project Applicant will make use of private contractors to ensure that these services are provided. An outline of the services that will be required are discussed below. Project specific information has been clearly indicated.

2.5.1 Water Usage

The proposed project will require water during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. During the construction phase, approximately 8 000 m³ to 12 000 m³ of water will be required per year. The decommissioning phase is also expected to result in the same water usage requirements. During the operational phase, approximately 10 000 m³ to 16 000 m³ of water will be required per year.

The water will be stored in storage tanks on site in the vicinity of the O&M building. It is anticipated that there will be 20 x 10 000 litre tanks on site to store the water during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases.

Water will be required for human consumption and construction and decommissioning activities during the construction and decommissioning phases. For the operational phase, water will be required for human consumption and other maintenance activities.

Water required for human consumption and other construction, operational and decommissioning phase activities should be potable water from a reputable source and should conform to South African National Standards (SANS) quality standards. If potable water is not available from an existing municipal infrastructure system, it will therefore need to be sourced and imported and safely stored on site.

The EMPr will provide recommendations for water conservation techniques during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. The staff would also be encouraged to use water sparingly during all phases.

Water required for the construction, operational and decommissioning phases will either be sourced from the following sources (in order of priority and likelihood):

- **Existing boreholes on site to source groundwater (if available and if suitable).** A Geohydrology Assessment has been commissioned as part of this Scoping and EIA Process specifically for the Biesjesvlei Solar PV and BESS projects (i.e. Projects 1 to 6)³. The Geohydrology Assessment will include a hydrocensus and analysis of the chemistry results in terms of the SANS 241-1: 2015 and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (1998) Standards. The Geohydrology Assessment will confirm if the groundwater to be sourced from existing boreholes is available and suitable for use during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. The findings will be inferred from the Geohydrology Assessment for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO project. Water pipelines may need to be constructed to transfer groundwater from existing boreholes to site, or they may be transported by trucks from the boreholes to the site. These pipelines will fall below the thresholds of the Listed Activities in the Listing Notices of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), in terms of peak throughput and internal diameter of water transportation pipelines.
- **The Mohokare Local Municipality.** Specific arrangements will be agreed with the local municipality in a Service Level Agreement (SLA). The water will be trucked to site, and such impacts will be considered in the Traffic Impact Assessment during the EIA Phase.

Both the above water sources will be considered during the Scoping and EIA Process. However, these are not alternatives, as both water sources need to be available should one not realise post-EA (should such authorisation be granted). Therefore, both the water sources will be recommended for inclusion in the EA (should such authorisation be granted) if the local municipality confirms water provision, and if the Geohydrology Assessment confirms that the groundwater from existing boreholes can be used.

2.5.2 Sewage or Liquid Effluent

The proposed project will require sewage services during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. Low volumes of sewage or liquid effluent are estimated to be generated. More specifically, it is estimated that approximately 55 m³ to 65 m³ per month will be generated during the construction phase. During the operational phase, it is estimated that 3 m³ to 5 m³ per month will be generated.

Liquid effluent will be limited to the ablution facilities during the construction and operational phases. Portable sanitation facilities (i.e. chemical toilets) will be used during the construction phase. These will be regularly serviced and emptied by a suitable and registered (private) contractor on a regular basis. Permanent ablution facilities may be installed during the operational phase. The effluent will be stored on site in watertight concrete structures (conservancy tanks) and thereafter transported to and disposed of at the Local Municipal sewerage treatment works or similar facility by a registered service provider. Due to the remote locality of the project sites, sewage cannot be disposed in the municipal waterborne sewage system.

³ The Geohydrology Assessment is being undertaken for the Biesjesvlei PV (Projects 1 to 3) and Biesjesvlei BESS (Projects 4 to 6). Geohydrology related information will still inform the EGI projects, where relevant.

2.5.3 Solid Waste Generation

The quantity of waste generated will depend on the length of the construction phase. Low volumes of solid waste are estimated to be generated. Specifically, it is estimated that approximately 12 m³ to 15 m³ of solid waste will be generated every month during the construction phase.

The following waste materials are expected during the construction phase:

- Packaging material, such as the cardboard, plastic and wooden packaging and off-cuts;
- Hazardous waste from empty tins, oils, soil containing oil and diesel (in the event of spills), and chemicals;
- Building rubble, discarded bricks, wood and concrete;
- Domestic waste generated by personnel; and
- Vegetation waste generated from the clearing of vegetation.

Solid waste will be managed via the EMPr during all project phases. The EMPr will be provided in the EIA Report, which will incorporate waste management principles. During the construction phase, general solid waste will be collected and temporarily stockpiled in skips in a designated area on site and thereafter removed, emptied into trucks, and disposed at a registered waste disposal facility on a regular or monthly basis by an approved waste disposal Contractor (i.e. a suitable Contractor) or the municipality.

Any hazardous waste (such as contaminated soil as a result of spillages) will be temporarily stockpiled in a designated area on site (i.e. placed in leak-proof storage skips), and thereafter removed off site by a suitable service provider for safe disposal at a registered hazardous waste disposal facility.

Waste disposal slips and waybills will be obtained for the collection and disposal of the general and hazardous waste. These disposal slips (i.e. safe disposal certificates) will be kept on file for auditing purposes as proof of disposal. The waste disposal facility selected will be suitable and able to receive the specified waste stream (i.e. hazardous waste will only be disposed of at a registered/licenced waste disposal facility). The details of the disposal facility will be finalised during the contracting process, prior to the commencement of construction. Where possible, recycling and re-use of material will be encouraged. Waste management will be further discussed in the EMPr during the EIA Phase.

During the operational phase after construction, minor amounts of general waste (as a result of the offices or maintenance) will be generated.

2.5.4 Electricity Requirements

In terms of electricity supply, the developer will make use of generators on site during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. The operational electrical requirements would be nominal.

2.6 Socio-Economic

It should be noted that the employment opportunity specifications provided in this report are estimates and is dependent on the final engineering design and the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP) Request for Proposal provisions, or similar programme requirements, at that point in time.

2.6.1 Construction Phase

During the construction phase, both skilled and unskilled temporary employment opportunities will be created. It is difficult to specify the actual number of employment opportunities that will be created at this stage; however, between 10 and 20 skilled, and 30 and 50 unskilled employment opportunities are expected to be created during the construction phase.

During the construction phase, employees will most likely be housed in local nearby towns and villages. Typically, the EPC contractor will be responsible for the provision of transport of construction personnel to and from site.

2.6.2 Operational Phase

Approximately between 1 and 4 skilled, and between 2 and 4 unskilled employment opportunities will be created over the lifespan of the proposed infrastructure. The unskilled jobs will be linked to services maintenance and security.

2.6.3 Socio-Economic Investment and Development

The Applicant will compile an Economic Development Plan which will be compliant with REIPPPP requirements (or similar process) and will *inter alia* set out to achieve the following:

- Create a local community trust or similar (as required by REIPPPP) which has an equity share in the project life to benefit historically disadvantaged communities;
- Initiate a skills development and training strategy to facilitate future employment from the local community;
- Give preference to local suppliers for the construction of the proposed project; and
- Support local community upliftment projects and entrepreneurship through socio-economic and enterprise development initiatives.

2.7 Overview of the Project Development Cycle

This section provides an outline of the main activities that are proposed during each phase of the proposed project. The project can be divided into the following main phases:

- Detailed Planning and Design Phase;
- Construction Phase;
- Operational Phase; and
- Decommissioning Phase.

Each activity undertaken as part of the above phases may have environmental impacts and, where applicable, has been assessed at a high-level for the Scoping Phase (Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report), and will be detailed further during the EIA Phase.

2.7.1 Planning and Design Phase

The project layout, including the exact placement of building infrastructure, will be finalised in the EIA Phase. The project layout will be informed by the findings of the specialist assessments. The specialists will be requested to comment on the final project layout.

2.7.2 Construction Phase

The construction phase will take place subsequent to the issuing of the EA (should such authorisation be granted) and if a successful bid in terms of the REIPPPP or a similar tender process is issued, and once a power purchase agreement (PPA) is signed with a suitable energy off-taker.

The duration of the construction phase for the proposed project is estimated at 12 to 24 months.

The main activities that will form part of the construction phase are:

- Removal of vegetation, where necessary, within the approved development footprint to facilitate the construction and/or establishment of infrastructure;
- Excavations for infrastructure and associated infrastructure;
- Establishment of a laydown area for equipment;
- Stockpiling of topsoil and cleared vegetation, where necessary;
- Creation of employment opportunities;
- Transportation of material and equipment to site, and personnel to and from site; and
- Construction of the infrastructure, structures and buildings.

All efforts will be made to ensure that construction work will be undertaken in compliance with local, provincial and national legislation, local and international best practice, as well as the EMP that will be compiled and included in the EIA Report. An independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO) will be appointed during the construction phase and will monitor compliance with the recommendations and conditions of the EMP and EA, respectively.

2.7.3 Operational Phase

The following activities will occur during the operational phase:

- The transmission of electricity generated by the proposed solar facility; and
- Maintenance of the EGI and associated infrastructure.

During the life span of the proposed project, on-going maintenance will be required on a scheduled basis to ensure the continued optimal functioning of the infrastructure. In general, maintenance on the structures will involve visual inspection, and only equipment that fails will be replaced in manner similar to that of construction activities. The EMPr that will be compiled and included in the EIA Report will include the requirement for method statements to be compiled prior to the operational phase to describe the manner in which maintenance will be undertaken to ensure environmental impacts are minimised.

2.7.4 Decommissioning Phase

At the end of the operational phase, the proposed project may be decommissioned, or may be redesigned and refitted so as to operate for a longer period. The main aim of decommissioning is to return the land to its original, pre-construction condition. Should the unlikely need for decommissioning arise, the decommissioning procedures will be undertaken in line with an approved EMPr and relevant legislation at the time, and the site will be rehabilitated and returned to its pre-construction state.

2.8 Schematic Overview of the Biesjesvlei Development

Figure 2.5 provides a **schematic** overview (not to scale) of the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, and EGI development, including the MTS and LILO. The Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, and EGI projects are separately addressed as Projects 1 to 9, as discussed in Chapter 1.

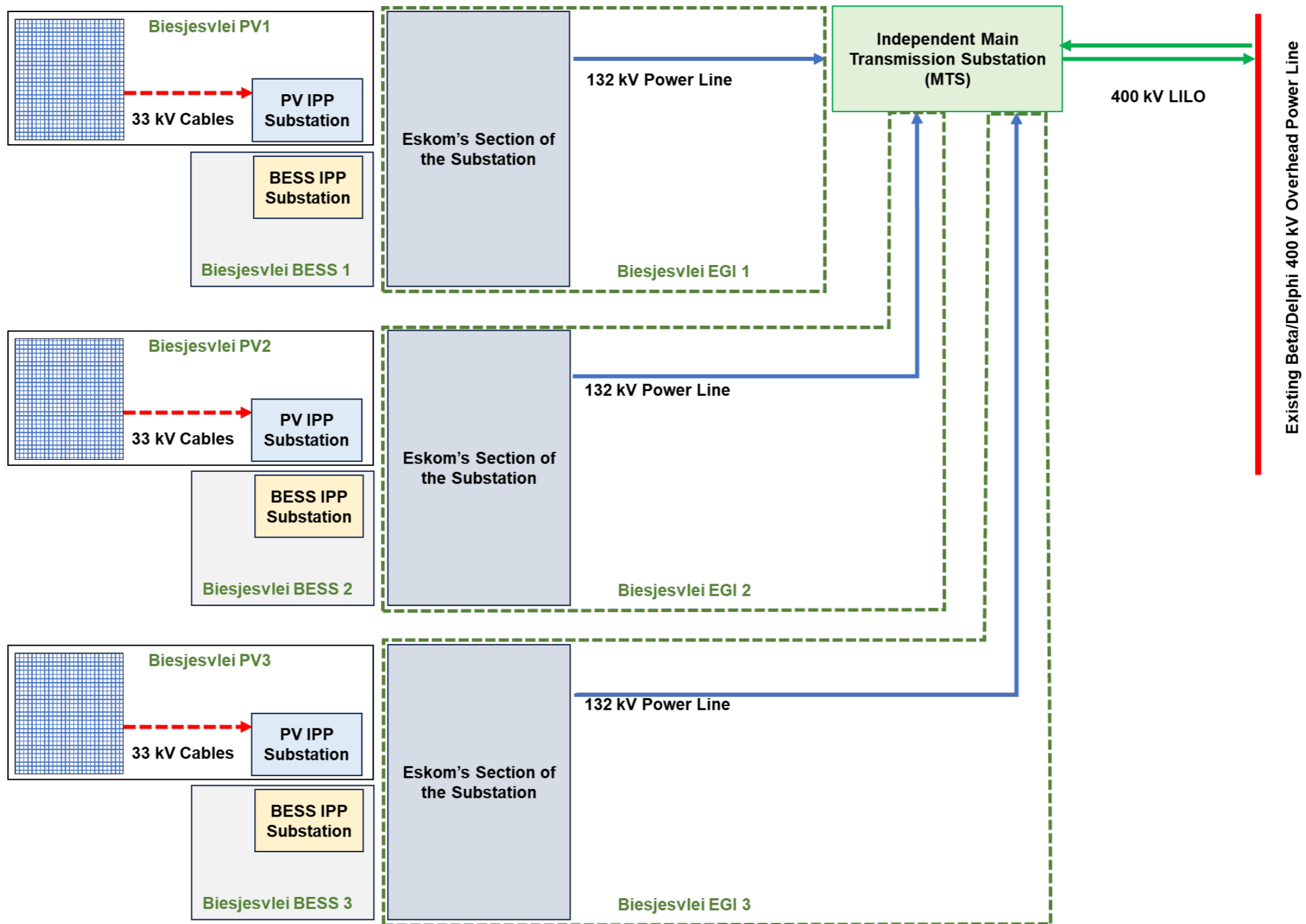


Figure 2.5. Schematic Overview (not to scale) of the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO development.



CHAPTER 3: Description of the Affected Environment

Contents

3. DESCRIPTION OF THE AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT	3-5
3.1 Background, Study Area, and Development Footprints	3-5
3.2 Biophysical Environment	3-6
3.2.1 Climate and Climate Change	3-6
3.2.1.1 General Context	3-6
3.2.1.2 Climate Change	3-10
3.2.2 Topography and Landscape	3-11
3.2.3 Geology and Soils	3-11
3.2.4 Agriculture and Land Capability	3-13
3.2.4.1 General Context	3-13
3.2.4.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-13
3.2.5 Strategic Water Source Areas	3-15
3.2.6 Aquatic Biodiversity	3-16
3.2.6.1 General Context	3-16
3.2.6.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-16
3.2.7 Terrestrial Biodiversity	3-21
3.2.7.1 Regional Vegetation	3-21
3.2.7.2 Biodiversity Conservation Planning	3-22
3.2.7.3 Terrestrial Animal Species (Excluding Avifauna)	3-25
3.2.7.4 Terrestrial Plant Species	3-27
3.2.7.5 Terrestrial Biodiversity	3-28
3.2.8 Avifauna	3-33
3.2.8.1 General Context	3-33
3.2.8.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-33
3.2.9 Visual Aspects and Sensitive Receptors	3-39
3.2.9.1 General Context	3-39
3.2.9.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-39
3.2.10 Heritage: Archaeology and Cultural Landscape	3-42
3.2.10.1 General Context	3-42
3.2.10.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-44
3.2.11 Palaeontology	3-46
3.2.11.1 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification	3-47
3.3 Socio-Economic Environment	3-48
3.3.1 Regional Context – Xhariep District Municipality	3-48
3.3.1.1 Demographics and Economic Profile	3-48
3.3.1.2 Social Characteristics	3-49
3.3.2 Local Context – Mohokare Local Municipality	3-50
3.3.2.1 Demographics and Economic Profile	3-51
3.3.2.2 Education	3-52
3.3.2.3 Employment and Income	3-52
3.3.2.4 Health and Community Services	3-54

3.3.2.5	Municipal Services	3-54
3.3.3	Study Area Context	3-55
3.4	Eco-Tourism Activities	3-55
3.5	Civil Aviation	3-56
3.6	Environmental Sensitivity Mapping	3-57

Tables

Table 3.1:	Geological formations within the study area listed in order of relative age (GEOSS, 2023).	3-12
Table 3.2:	Summary information of sensitive features associated with the proposed project.	3-18
Table 3.3:	Animal species recorded on site and their status (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).	3-26
Table 3.4:	Description of the main habitats found within the Study Area (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).	3-30
Table 3.5:	Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivities (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).	3-31
Table 3.6:	Delineated Habitats within the Study Area (extracted from Enviro Insight, 2024b).	3-34
Table 3.7:	Avifauna sensitivities (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024b).	3-37
Table 3.8:	Visual Sensitivity Categories (extracted from Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024).	3-40
Table 3.9:	Visual Sensitivity Mapping Categories for the Proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (extracted from Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024).	3-41
Table 3.12:	List of heritage resources recorded during the survey with a very high and high sensitivity (extracted from ASHA Consulting, 2024).	3-42
Table 3.13:	Total population of the XDM, MLM, Free State, and National for the period 2011 – 2016 (Sources: StatsSA 2016).	3-48
Table 3.14:	Key statistics for the MLM for 2016, 2011, and 2001 (StatsSA, 2011b; MLM IDP, 2023; StatsSA, 2024).	3-50
Table 3.15:	Key Environmental Features and Sensitivities identified by relevant Specialists at Scoping.	3-58

Figures

Figure 3.1:	Köppen-Geiger Climate Classification of South Africa, including the study area (Source: Köppen-Geiger Climate Classification).	3-7
Figure 3.2:	The average monthly distribution of rainfall within the Smithfield area, including the study area (Source: World Weather Online, 2023).	3-8
Figure 3.3:	The average annual rainfall within the Smithfield area, including the study area or the period 2010 – 2023 (Source: World Weather Online, 2023).	3-8
Figure 3.4:	The average monthly maximum and minimum temperature for the Smithfield area, including the study area (Source: World Weather Online, 2023).	3-9
Figure 3.5:	The average and maximum annual wind speeds and gusts for the Smithfield area, including the study area for the period 2010 – 2023 (Source: World Weather Online, 2023).	3-9
Figure 3.6:	Geological setting for the proposed project and associated infrastructure (Source: Council for Geoscience, 1997, Map: 1:250 000 scale Aliwal North 3026 in GEOSS, 2024).	3-12
Figure 3.7:	Agricultural sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS and associated infrastructure overlaid on agricultural sensitivity based on the Screening Tool. (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-14
Figure 3.8:	Agricultural sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO and associated infrastructure overlaid on agricultural sensitivity based on the Screening Tool. (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-15
Figure 3.9:	Watercourse delineation in the Area of Influence (Aol) (October 2023) [Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023].	3-17
Figure 3.10:	Watercourses considered in the Present Ecological Status assessment (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023).	3-17
Figure 3.11:	Aquatic Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-19
Figure 3.12:	Aquatic Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-19
Figure 3.13:	Layout and sensitivity map for the Aol and proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO. On this map, seep wetlands shown in green are assigned High sensitivity; and Channelled Valley Bottom (CVB) wetlands shown in blue are assigned Very High sensitivity (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023).	3-20
Figure 3.14:	The study area in relation to the vegetation types.	3-22
Figure 3.15:	Provincial Conservation Planning within the study area based on the 2015 FSPBP, and National Conservation Planning in terms of the South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD; Quarter 3, 2023).	3-23
Figure 3.16:	Provincial Conservation Planning within the study area based on the 2019 FSPBP, and National Conservation Planning in terms of the South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD; Quarter 3, 2023).	3-23
Figure 3.17:	Animal Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-25
Figure 3.18:	Animal Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-26

Figure 3.19:	Plant Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-27
Figure 3.20:	Plant Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-27
Figure 3.21:	Terrestrial Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-28
Figure 3.22:	Terrestrial Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-29
Figure 3.23:	Habitat delineation for the study area (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024a).	3-29
Figure 3.24:	Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity and layout map for the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024a).	3-32
Figure 3.25:	Avifauna Habitat Delineation for the Study Area (Source: Enviro Insight, 2024b).	3-34
Figure 3.26:	Avifauna sensitivity and layout map for the study area (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024b).	3-38
Figure 3.27:	Avifauna sensitivity and layout map for Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024b).	3-38
Figure 3.28:	Map of sensitive receptors and their associated visual sensitivity buffers for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure following the SSV and detailed mapping (Source: Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024).	3-41
Figure 3.29:	Archaeology and Cultural Heritage Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-45
Figure 3.30:	Archaeology and Cultural Heritage Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).	3-45
Figure 3.31:	Map showing the locations of all heritage resources recorded in the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO where Dark red = Grade IIIA/very high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity, Red = Grade IIIB/high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity, Orange = Grade GPA/medium cultural significance – High sensitivity, Yellow = Grade GPB/low cultural significance – Medium sensitivity. (Source: ASHA Consulting, 2024).	3-46
Figure 3.32:	Palaeontology sensitivity of the study area based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2023).	3-47
Figure 3.33:	Gender and age distributions within the MLM (Redrawn based on StatsSA, 2024).	3-51
Figure 3.34:	Employment status (ages 15 – 64) within the MLM (StatsSA, 2011b).	3-53
Figure 3.35:	Average household income within the MLM (StatsSA, 2011b).	3-53
Figure 3.36:	Percentage of households with access to basic services within the MLM (Redrawn based on StatsSA, 2011b; MLM IDP, 2023; and StatsSA, 2024).	3-55
Figure 3.37:	Civil Aviation (solar PV) sensitivity of the study area based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2023).	3-56
Figure 3.38:	Civil Aviation and Defence features relative to the proposed project study area based on the site visit and existing databases.	3-57
Figure 3.39:	Combined environmental feature map for the study area.	3-61
Figure 3.40:	Combined environmental sensitivity map for the study area overlaid with PV areas.	3-62
Figure 3.41:	Combined environmental sensitivity map for the study area overlain with the layout for Projects 1 to 10.	3-63

3. DESCRIPTION OF THE AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT

This chapter provides a broad overview of the affected environment for the following proposed project that is addressed in this report:

- **PROJECT 10:** The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) (hereinafter referred to as the “proposed project”).

The receiving environment is understood to include biophysical, socio-economic, and heritage aspects, which could be affected by the proposed project or which in turn might impact on the proposed project.

This information is provided to identify the potential issues and impacts of the proposed project on the environment and vice versa. The information presented within this chapter has been sourced from *inter alia*:

- Scoping inputs (where relevant) and Site Sensitivity Verifications (SSVs) from the specialists that form part of the project team;
- Feedback from the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) National Web-based Environmental Screening Tool (hereafter referred to as the Screening Tool), where applicable;
- Review of *inter alia* information sources available on the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) Biodiversity Geographical Information System (BGIS), Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (AGIS), Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) Threatened Species No-Go Map;
- Free State Community Survey 2016 Provincial Profile;
- Xhariep District Municipality (XDM) Integrated Development Plan (IDP);
- Mohokare Local Municipality (MLM) IDP;
- MLM Draft Spatial Development Framework (SDF); and
- MLM Integrated Local Economic Development Plan.

It is important to note that this chapter intends to provide a broad overview of the affected environment. Detailed descriptions of the preferred project footprints within the preferred site (i.e., the study area) that are focused on significant environmental aspects of the proposed project will be provided in the relevant specialist assessments during the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Phase.

3.1 Background, Study Area, and Development Footprints

As indicated in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report, the proposed project forms part of a cluster of 10 projects (i.e., three Solar PV facilities, three BESS, three 132 kV Overhead Power Lines and one independent MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure). The study area or preferred site for all the proposed Biesjesvlei projects and associated infrastructure (i.e., Projects 1 to 10) covers

approximately 3 060 hectares (ha). These farm properties are listed in Chapter 2 of this Scoping Report.

As part of the Scoping and EIA Process, the full extent of the study area has been assessed by the specialists in order to identify environmental sensitivities and no-go areas. The preferred site serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the terms “site” and “study area” are used synonymously in this report. Refer to Chapter 2 of this Scoping Report for feedback on the process followed to assess the study area and identify the buildable areas and preliminary layout and development footprints for the proposed project.

The proposed project is located within the MLM and XDM. Chapter 1 provides a locality map of the study area.

3.2 Biophysical Environment

3.2.1 Climate and Climate Change

3.2.1.1 General Context

The study area falls within the Grassland Biome, which is situated in the broad surrounds of Aliwal North, running in an east-west direction along the northern foothills of the Stormberg Plateau, extending northwards up the Caledon River Valley in the Free State to around Wepener and De Wetsdorp.

More specifically, according to the Köppen-Geiger climate classification method, the study area is classified as “BSk”, which is indicative of a cold, steppe, semi-arid climate characterised by cold winters and hot, dry summers (Figure 3.1). The region is characteristic of summer rainfall with most of the rainfall occurring during December to March (Figure 3.2) and a mean annual precipitation of 34.45 mm¹. Figure 3.3, displaying the mean annual precipitation for the Smithfield area for the period 2010 to 2023, indicates that in 2011, Smithfield had the highest mean annual precipitation of greater than 150 mm. The Smithfield area also has average high temperatures varying from 15°C in June and July to 29°C in December and January, and average low temperatures varying from 2°C in June and July to 16°C in January with the highest average temperatures occurring from December to February (Figure 3.4). In addition, the Smithfield area is characteristic of gusty winds prevailing for most of the year, with the average gust falling within the 15 to 30 kmph range (Figure 3.5).

¹ Weather and Climate Online. Available at: Smithfield, Free State, ZA Climate Zone, Monthly Averages, Historical Weather Data (weatherandclimate.com) [online]. Accessed: February 2024.

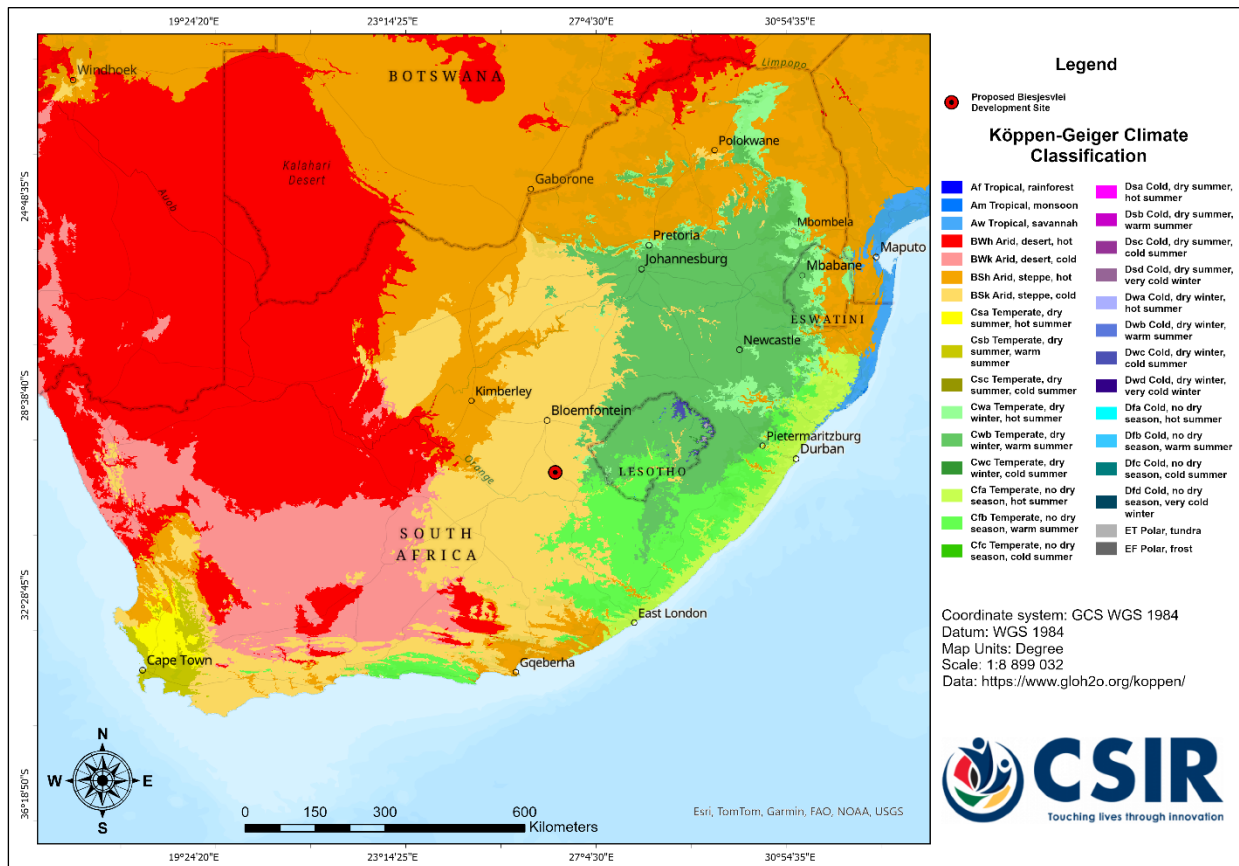


Figure 3.1: Köppen-Geiger Climate Classification of South Africa, including the study area (Source: Köppen-Geiger Climate Classification²).

² Beck, H.E., T.R. McVicar, N. Vergopolan, A. Berg, N.J. Lutsko, A. Dufour, Z. Zeng, X. Jiang, A.I.J.M. van Dijk, D.G., 2023. Miralles High-resolution (1 km) Köppen-Geiger maps for 1901–2099 based on constrained CMIP6 projections. *Scientific Data*, 10, 724, doi:10.1038/s41597-023-02549-6 (2023). Available at: <https://www.gloh2o.org/koppen/> [online]. Accessed: December 2023.

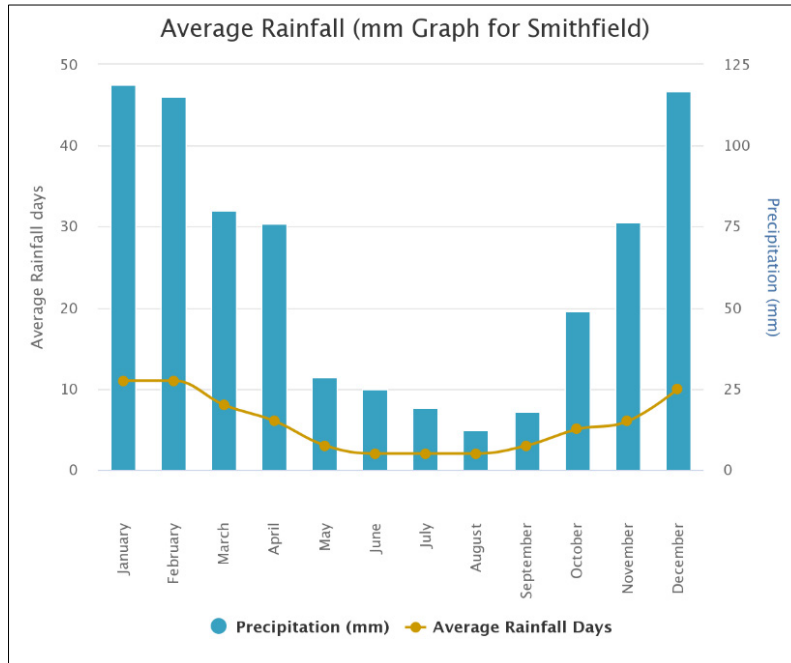


Figure 3.2: The average monthly distribution of rainfall within the Smithfield area, including the study area (Source: World Weather Online, 2023³).

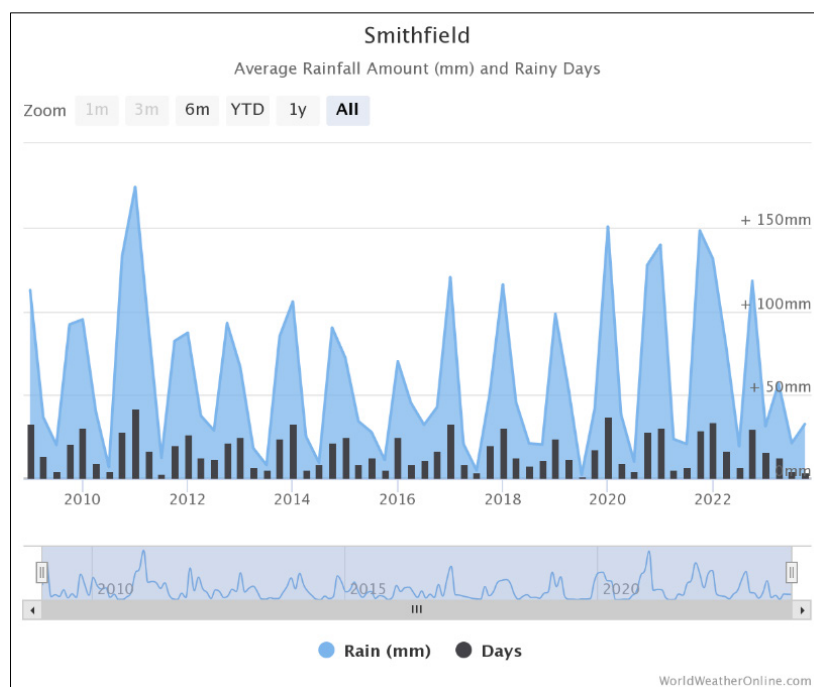


Figure 3.3: The average annual rainfall within the Smithfield area, including the study area or the period 2010 – 2023 (Source: World Weather Online, 2023³).

³ World Weather Online. 2023. Smithfield Annual Weather Averages. Available at: <https://www.worldweatheronline.com/smithfield-weather-averages/free-state/za.aspx> [online]. Accessed: December 2023.

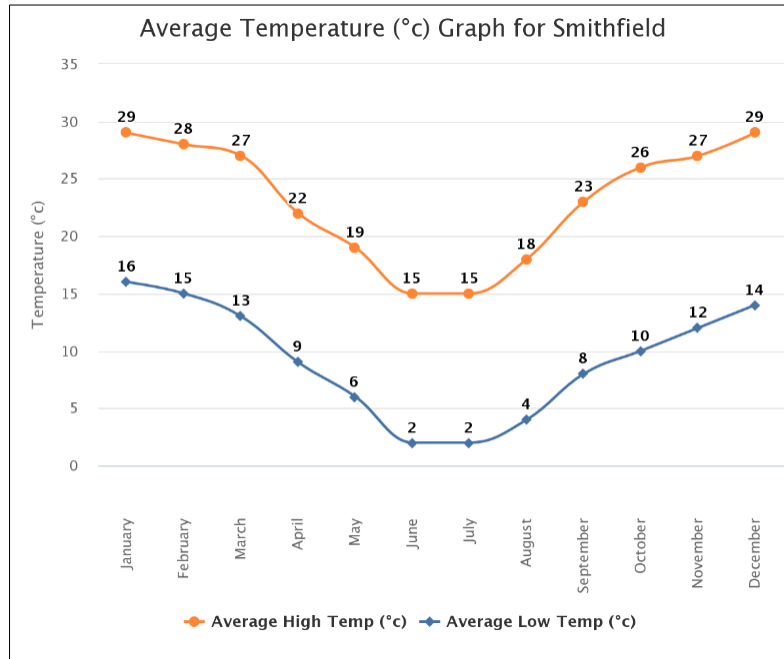


Figure 3.4: The average monthly maximum and minimum temperature for the Smithfield area, including the study area (Source: World Weather Online, 2023³).

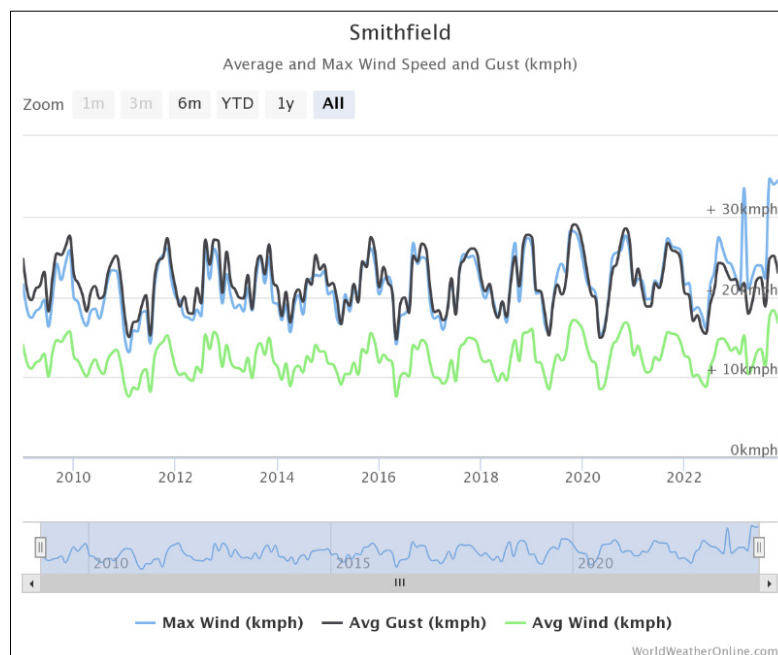


Figure 3.5: The average and maximum annual wind speeds and gusts for the Smithfield area, including the study area for the period 2010 – 2023 (Source: World Weather Online, 2023³).

3.2.1.2 Climate Change

Projected climate change data indicates that by 2050 the Free State Province and the XDM in particular, is expected to be affected by higher annual average temperatures, increasing rainfall variability, increasing storm and flood events and changing biomes⁴.

The higher temperatures will be associated with an increase in evaporation rates and an increase in the intensity of droughts. This will likely cause agricultural outputs to reduce, thereby adversely affecting food security. The XDM is currently experiencing water scarcity and issues with water quality and the drought periods coupled with reduced runoff, increased evaporation and temperatures and an increase in floods due to climate change, is expected to adversely impact the water supply and quality. Furthermore, the increase in temperatures anticipated with climate change may result in increased fire frequencies. Invasive alien plants are often highly flammable and with their large volumes, are likely to fuel more frequent fires. The combination of more frequent and intense fires will have a devastating impact on the region. The changing climate is also projected to result in the shifting of bioregions across the country. It is anticipated that the warmer temperatures being experienced in the XDM, could likely result in the Grassland and Nama Karoo biomes becoming replaced with the Savanna biome which will result in a significant loss in Grassland and Nama Karoo related species (XDM, 2022⁵). Climate change is thus one of the biggest risks facing the MLM; therefore, the MLM should prioritise efforts to reduce greenhouse gas emissions to mitigate the effects of climate change (MLM, 2023⁶).

The Green Book provides detailed projections for future climate change in South Africa. The information captured below has been summarised from the Green Book (Engelbrecht et al., 2019⁷). The projections used in the Green Book are for the following two climate change mitigation scenarios: Representative Concentration Pathways (RCP) 8.5 – where low mitigation is implemented; and RCP 4.5 – where high mitigation is implemented.

- **Fire Likelihood** - The likelihood of wildfires occurring in the interface between developed land and fire-prone vegetation in Smithfield is regarded as rare in terms of current hydro-meteorological trends. In terms of the projected number of fire danger days under an RCP 8.5 low mitigation (worst case) scenario, the study area varies from about 20 to 39. Smithfield is at a very low risk of increases in wildfires by the year 2050.
- **Flood Hazard** – The region of the MLM mainly includes a medium flooding hazard currently. There is largely a slight decrease and moderate decrease in extreme rainfall days projected for the year 2050. Smithfield is at a very low risk of increase in urban flooding under an RCP 8.5 low mitigation (worst case) scenario (projected change for 2050).
- **Drought** – In terms of the projected change in drought tendencies for the period of 1995 to 2024 relative to the 1986-2005 baseline period, Smithfield ranges from 0 to > 0 (less frequent

⁴ <https://letsrespondtoolkit.org/municipalities/free-state/xhariep/>

⁵ Xhariep District Municipality, 2022. Xhariep District Municipality Integrated Development Plan First Draft 2022-2027. Available at: <http://www.dspace.fs.gov.za/xmlui/bitstream/handle/123456789/182/Xhariep%20DM.pdf?sequence=1>. Accessed December 2023.

⁶ Mohokare Local Municipality, 2023. Mohokare Local Municipality Final Integrated Development Plan 2023-2024. Available at: [https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20\(2023\).pdf](https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20(2023).pdf). Accessed December 2023.

⁷ Engelbrecht, F., Le Roux, A., Arnold, K. and Malherbe, J. 2019. *Green Book. Detailed projections of future climate change over South Africa*. Pretoria: CSIR. Available at: <https://pta-gis-2-web1.csisr.co.za/portal/apps/GBCascade/index.html?appid=b161b2f892194ed5938374fe2192e537>. Accessed December 2023.

than the observed baseline). In terms of the projected change in drought tendencies for the period of 2035–2064 relative to the 1986–2005 baseline period, there is an increase in drought tendencies per 10 years within the study area (ranging from 0 to -0.2) (more frequent than the observed baseline). Smithfield is at a very low risk of increases in drought tendencies by the year 2050.

3.2.2 Topography and Landscape

The information described below is based on the SSVs provided by the Visual and Palaeontology Specialists, which are included in Appendix E.5 and Appendix E.7, respectively, of this Scoping Report.

The study area lies within undulating, flat to gently hilly terrain of the eastern Upper Karoo region, with low, sandstone-capped, dolerite-intruded koppies (1602, 1654 m amsl) situated on or just outside the southern margins of area while most of the project itself lies between 1480 to 1580 m amsl. These koppies, being the main scenic features in the area, provide topographic relief in the expansive gently rolling landscape. The elevation ranges from 1500 to 1600 m in the local area.

3.2.3 Geology and Soils

The information described below is based on the SSVs / Letter of Opinions provided by the Terrestrial Biodiversity, Palaeontology, and Geotechnical Specialists, which are included in Appendix E.2, E.7 and E.8 of this Scoping Report, respectively.

The main geology of the study area is listed in Table 3.1, and an extract from the 1:250 000 geology map 3026 Aliwal North (Council for Geoscience, Pretoria) overlain by the study area is shown in Figure 3.6.

The majority of the study area is underlain by fluvial sediments of the Tarkastad Subgroup (Upper Beaufort Group, Karoo Supergroup) of Early Triassic age. The flat lying to gently dipping Tarkastad Subgroup sedimentary bedrocks in Smithfield are intruded by a dense network of dykes and small sills of fine-grained dolerite of the Early Jurassic Karoo Dolerite Suite. Prominent, rubbly-weathering dolerite bodies are seen along the banks of the Skulpspruit, as low ridges in the grassy vlaktes as well as intruding the Katberg koppies along or close to the southern margins of the project area. The adjacent Katberg sandstones have been secondarily mineralised and baked to quartzite during dolerite intrusion. Small, laminated to thin-bedded, quartzitic xenoliths of channel sandstone occur within the larger dolerite bodies.

Table 3.1: Geological formations within the study area listed in order of relative age (GEOSS, 2023⁸).

Symbol	Formation/Subgroup	Group	Lithology
~ / Q-a	Quaternary Deposit		Alluvium / Terrace gravel
Jd	Jurassic Intrusion		Dolerite
Trb	Burgersdorp	Beaufort	Red and greenish-grey mudstone, subordinate sandstone

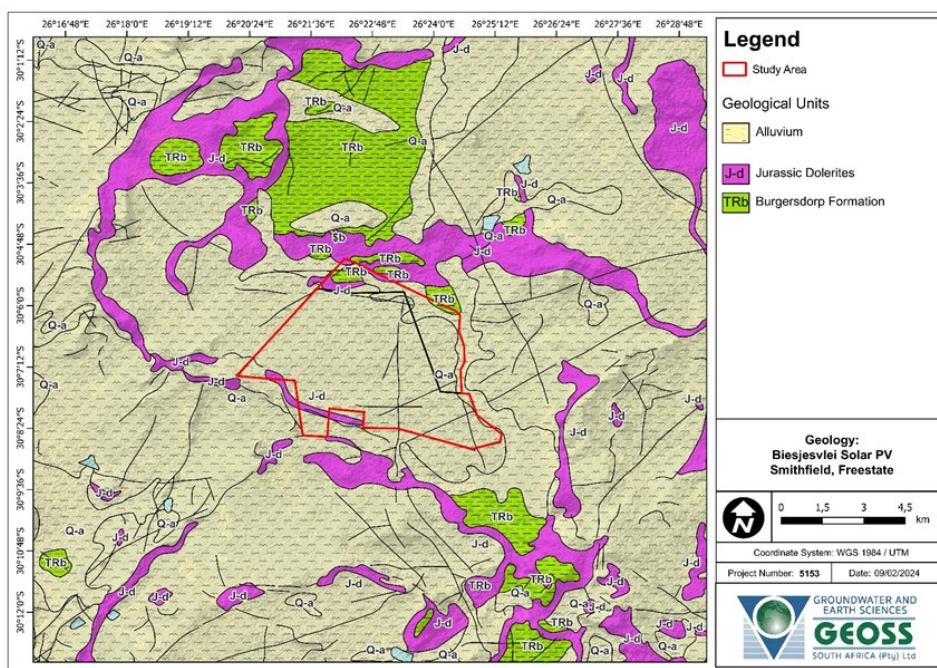


Figure 3.6: Geological setting for the proposed project and associated infrastructure (Source: Council for Geoscience, 1997, Map: 1:250 000 scale Aliwal North 3026 in GEOSS, 2024).

Most of the project area comprises thick, silty to sandy to sparsely gravelly alluvial soils, dotted with large, domical termitaria. Sparse, downwasted (eluvial) gravels occur at surface and within the upper soil. A white surface efflorescence of salts (probably nitrates or salpeter) have developed locally along the Skulpspruit, such as near Farm Salpetervlei 756. Hillslopes are mainly covered with poorly sorted colluvial gravels dominated by clasts of sandstone, dolerite, and occasional blocks of calcrete glaebule breccio-conglomerate downwasted from the base of channel sandstone units.

⁸ GEOSS (2024). Geotechnical Letter of Opinion for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Projects 1 to 10). Appendix E.8 of the Scoping Report.

3.2.4 Agriculture and Land Capability

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Agricultural Specialist (Lanz, 2024⁹), which is included in Appendix E.1 of this Scoping Report, as well as draft specialist input (Lanz, 2023¹⁰).

3.2.4.1 General Context

The Screening Tool classifies agricultural sensitivity according to two independent criteria, from two independent data sets – the land capability rating on the land capability data set and whether the land is used for cropland or not on the field crop boundary data set. All cropland is classified as either high or very high sensitivity, based on the logic that if it is under crop production, it is indeed suitable for it, irrespective of its land capability rating.

Land capability is defined as the combination of soil, climate, and terrain suitability factors for supporting rain-fed agricultural production. In 2017, the then Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) released updated and refined land capability mapping across the whole of South Africa. This has greatly improved the accuracy of the land capability rating for any particular piece of land anywhere in the country. The new land capability mapping divides land capability into 15 different categories with 1 being the lowest and 15 being the highest. This land capability data is used by the Screening Tool. The higher land capability classes (≥ 8 to 15) are likely to be suitable as arable land for the production of cultivated crops, while the lower classes (< 8) are only likely to be suitable as non-arable grazing land.

3.2.4.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

A map of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) in relation to the Agricultural Sensitivity provided by the Screening Tool is shown in Figures 3.7 and 3.8, respectively. The Screening Tool classified the study area as ranging from low to high agricultural sensitivity with the high sensitivity rating being due to some of the land being classified as cropland. However, the dataset used by the Screening Tool is outdated and all land across the footprint is no longer used as cropland. Therefore, this land within the footprint should neither be classified as cropland, nor should it be allocated a high agricultural sensitivity. Since none of the land within the study area is classified as cropland, the agricultural sensitivity is therefore purely a function of land capability. The land capability of the site is classified as ranging from 5 to 7 which is confirmed based on the assessment of the cropping potential of the site. The small-scale differences in the modelled land capability across the site are not very accurate or significant at this scale and are more a function of how the data is generated by modelling, than actual meaningful differences in agricultural potential on the ground. Values of 3 to 5 translate to a low agricultural sensitivity and values of 6 to 7 translate to a medium agricultural sensitivity, although there is little real difference between low and medium agricultural sensitivity on the ground. There is no scarcity of such agricultural land in South Africa and its conservation for agricultural production is therefore not a priority.

⁹ Lanz, J. (2024). Agriculture SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.1 of the Scoping Report.

¹⁰ Lanz, J. (2023). Draft Agriculture Compliance Statement for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI (in review).

The agricultural sensitivity, as identified by the Screening Tool, is disputed by the Agriculture SSV (Appendix E.1 of the Scoping Report). The motivation for disputing the sensitivity is predominantly that some of the land has been incorrectly classified as cropland. The cropping potential of the site is limited by the climate and soil constraints. The climate is classified as arid, and therefore of limited land capability. The land capability value is in keeping with the climate limitations that make the site totally unsuitable for crop production. Furthermore, soils are limited by shallow depth and limited drainage and moisture availability is insufficient for viable rain-fed cropping. Although such cropping may have been done on the site in the past, such production is no longer economically viable, and the agricultural potential of the site is limited to being suitable for grazing only. It should be noted that cropping potential changes with a changing agricultural economy over time. Poorer lands that may have been cropped with economic viability in the past, are abandoned as cropland because they become too marginal for viable crop production in a more challenging agricultural economy, with increased input costs.

The SSV verified that the entire study area is of less than high agricultural sensitivity with a land capability value of 5 to 7. Therefore, the high sensitivity rating by the Screening Tool is disputed and the entire footprint is confirmed as ranging from low to medium agricultural sensitivity. There are no differences between low and medium agricultural sensitivity.

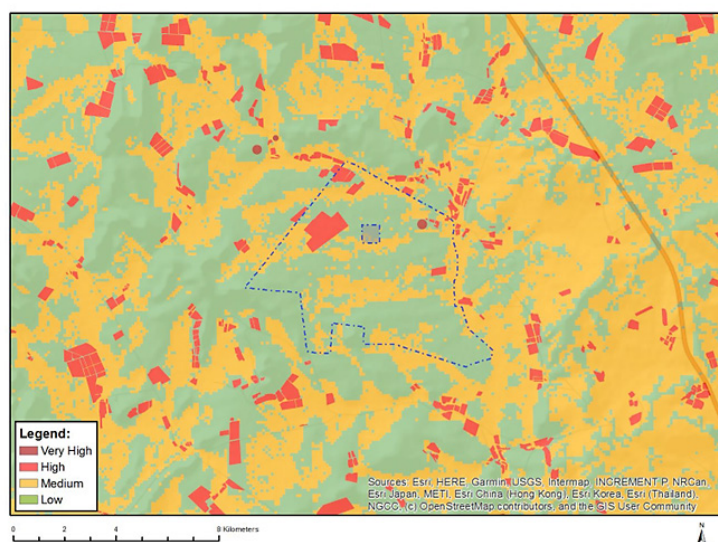


Figure 3.7: Agricultural sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS and associated infrastructure overlaid on agricultural sensitivity based on the Screening Tool. (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

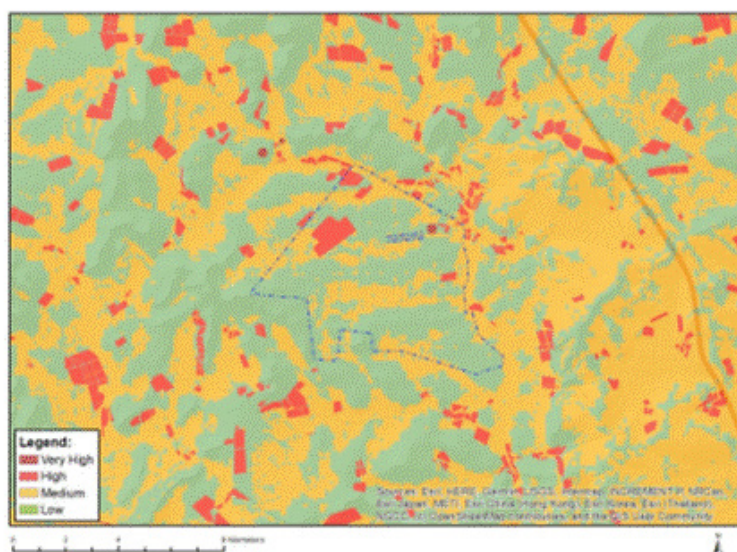


Figure 3.8: Agricultural sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO and associated infrastructure overlaid on agricultural sensitivity based on the Screening Tool. (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

3.2.5 Strategic Water Source Areas

Strategic Water Source Areas (SWSAs) are defined as “areas of land that either: (a) supply a disproportionate (i.e., relatively large) quantity of mean annual surface water runoff in relation to their size and so are considered nationally important; or (b) have high groundwater recharge and where the groundwater forms a nationally important resource; or (c) areas that meet both criteria (a) and (b)” (Le Maitre *et al.*, 2018:1 in Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) [now operating as the DFFE], 2019: Page 60¹¹).

Thirty-seven groundwater SWSAs have been identified in South Africa and are considered to be strategically important at a national level for water and economic security. The total area for groundwater SWSAs extends approximately 104 000 km² and covers approximately 9% of the land surface of South Africa (Le Maitre *et al.*, 2018, in DEFF, 2019: Page 61). They also include transboundary Water Source Areas that extend into Lesotho and Swaziland.

The study area for the proposed project is located more than 80 km south of the Bloemfontein Region Groundwater SWSA; therefore, the proposed project will not impact this area.

¹¹ Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF), 2019. Strategic Environmental Assessment for the Development of a Phased Gas Pipeline Network in South Africa. CSIR Report Number: CSIR/SPLA/EMS/ER/2019/0077/B. ISBN Number: ISBN 978-0-7988-5649-2. Stellenbosch and Durban.

3.2.6 Aquatic Biodiversity

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Aquatic Specialist (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2024¹²), which is included in Appendix E.3 of this Scoping Report, as well as draft specialist input (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023¹³).

A Desktop analysis, using existing datasets and the latest Google Earth satellite imagery, to identify aquatic features on site; a desktop survey to consider the best information available in order to provide a better evaluation of all conditions present within the study area as well as an on-site inspection to evaluate the aquatic biodiversity of the study area were all used to inform the SSV.

3.2.6.1 General Context

The study area is located in the Upper Orange River basin within the Orange River Water Management Area (WMA), within the D24H quaternary catchment. The primary drainage associated with the study area includes non-perennial and perennial watercourses which flow into the D24H-04686 Sub Quaternary Reach (SQR) of the Skulpspruit River system. The general flow of the Skulpspruit River system is southwards towards the Gariep system. The elevation of the study area is predominantly flat, with gentle ridges located in the west of the screening area or area of interest (Aoi). Furthermore, the study area consists of rural land use with livestock farming of sheep and cattle, and isolated irrigated and non-irrigated cultivation. Considering the rural setting of the Aoi, impacts relating to agricultural activities were noted to occur in the project area.

3.2.6.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

The Screening Tool Report Aquatic Biodiversity Sensitivity Map was of very high sensitivity for the study area and footprints of the proposed project, with the very high sensitivity linked to a Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Area (FEPA) sub-catchment and rivers (Figures 3.11 and 3.12).

Following the site inspection and based on local on-site conditions, the Aquatic Specialist undertook more detailed sensitivity mapping (at the project scale) for the proposed project.

Three wetland hydrogeomorphic (HGM) types were present within the established Aoi of the proposed project. The HGM types consist of Channelled Valley Bottom (CVB), Unchanneled Valley Bottom (UVB) and seep wetland units. It is important to note that the riverine component of the study forms the central channels of HGM1 and HGM2. These wetland habitats are separated into 17 HGM units. The watercourse delineations are provided in Figure 3.9. It is important to note that not all HGM units in the Aoi are expected to be impacted and further assessment of these units was not required. The watercourse units to be included in the detailed assessment are presented in Figure 3.10.

¹² Tate Environmental Specialist Services (2024). Aquatic Biodiversity and Species SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.3 of the Scoping Report.

¹³ Tate Environmental Specialist Services (2023). Draft Aquatic Biodiversity Assessment for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI (in review).

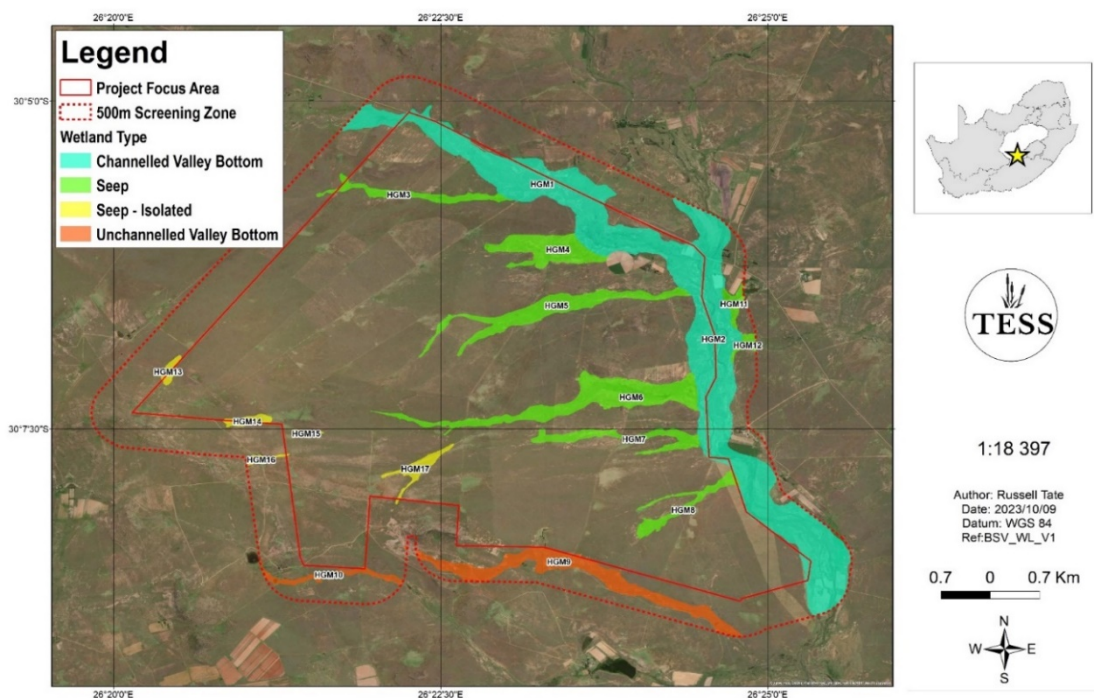


Figure 3.9: Watercourse delineation in the Area of Influence (AoI) (October 2023) [Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023].

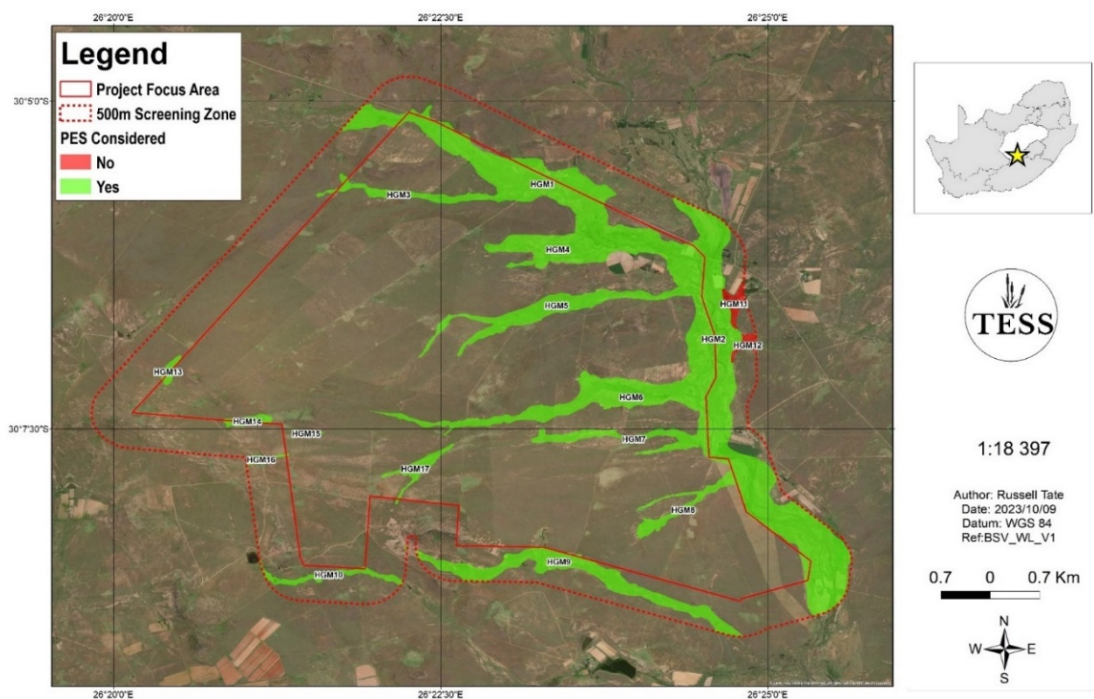


Figure 3.10: Watercourses considered in the Present Ecological Status assessment (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023).

A summary of the primary sensitive habitat considerations is provided in Table 3.2 below.

Table 3.2: Summary information of sensitive features associated with the proposed project.

Feature	Sensitivity	Buffer	Notes
CVB Wetland	Very High	19 m	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These areas must be excluded from development activities. ▪ Any direct impacts to these systems must be minimised. ▪ It is recommended that a single access route over the main CVB wetlands is constructed. ▪ No more than one crossing is recommended.
UVB Wetland	Very High	19 m	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These systems must be avoided. ▪ Only existing crossings structures can be utilised. Where these are to be utilised, they must be upgraded with suitable culverts.
Seep Wetlands	High	19 m	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These areas must be excluded from development activities. ▪ Although these systems are less sensitive it is recommended that crossing permanently wet areas is restricted. ▪ Where access routes are required to cross over seep wetlands, these must make use of multiple culverts.

It is noted that the proposed project will take place within the regulated areas within 500 m from the delineated wetland areas. Furthermore, there are proposed watercourses crossings to be constructed. Watercourses within the Aol are sensitive and important habitats and must be avoided. In order to ensure the preservation of these systems, a 19 m buffer zone must be applied. Direct unavoidable impacts to sensitive habitats due to road crossing requirements of the proposed development are expected; therefore, it is recommended that appropriate culvert options are investigated and implemented. These must consider habitat connectivity and should not result in hydraulic impact to downstream or upslope environments.

The aquatic features within the study area have been delineated at a finer scale and refined as compared to the Screening Tool / Free State Province Biodiversity Plan (FSPBP) and assigned Very High sensitivity (CVB and UVB Wetlands) and High sensitivity (Seep Wetlands). At a finer scale, the outcomes of the Aquatic Biodiversity SSV confirmed the very high sensitivity rating for the rivers allocated on the Screening Tool, and thereby verified the desktop information.

Figures 3.11 and 3.12 below presents the information from the Screening Tool for the Aquatic Biodiversity Theme as it relates to the study area and the proposed MTS and LILO footprints, respectively.

Overall, the Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) is confirmed to be high sensitivity due to the association of the project and presence of sensitive wetland habitats (Figure 3.13). However, the footprint of the main infrastructure of Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO does not intersect with any of the delineated Very High and High sensitivity wetlands i.e., these features are avoided.

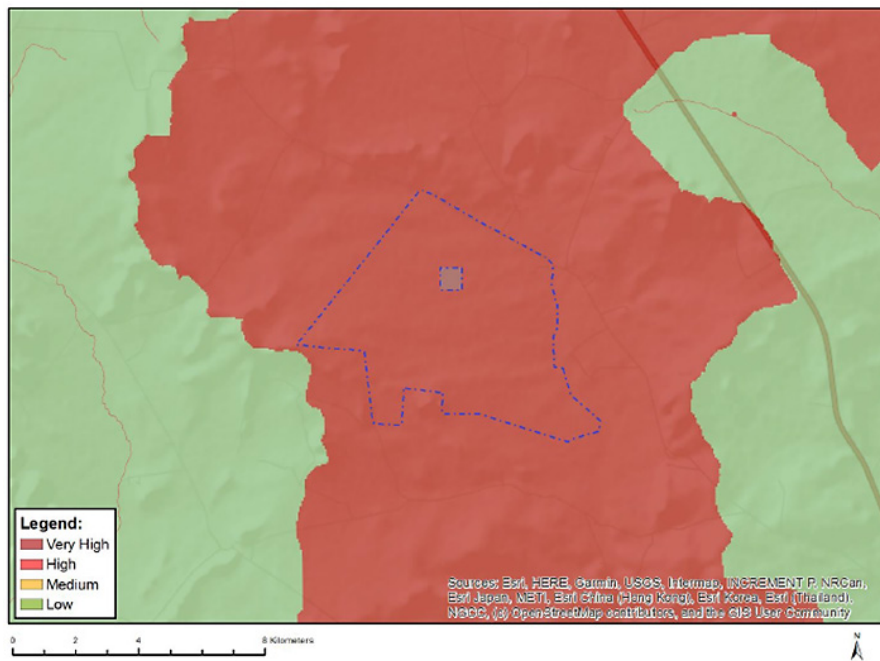


Figure 3.11: Aquatic Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

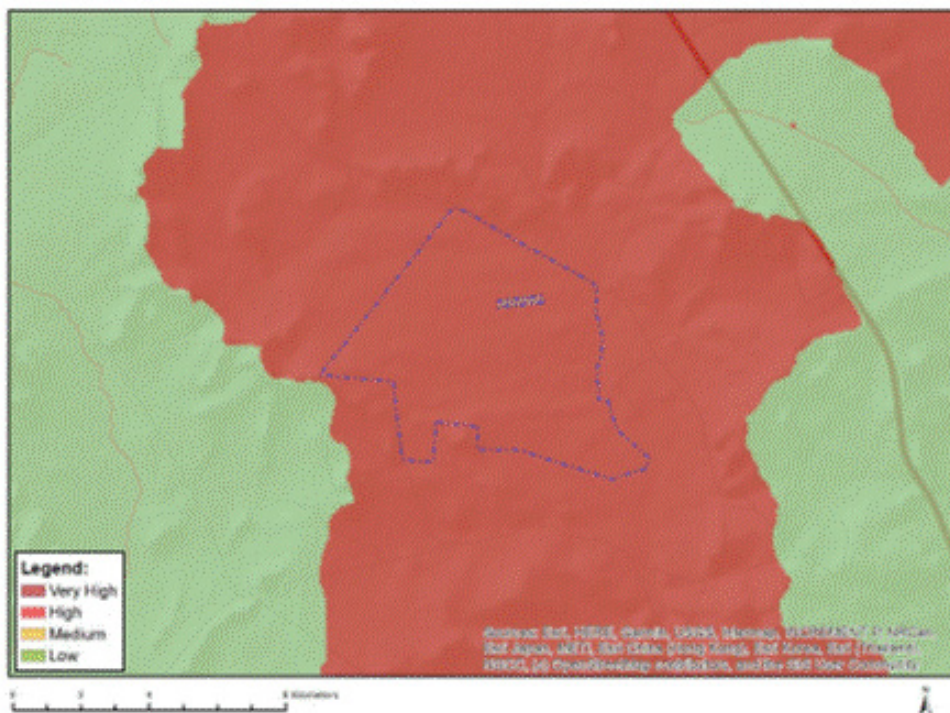


Figure 3.12: Aquatic Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

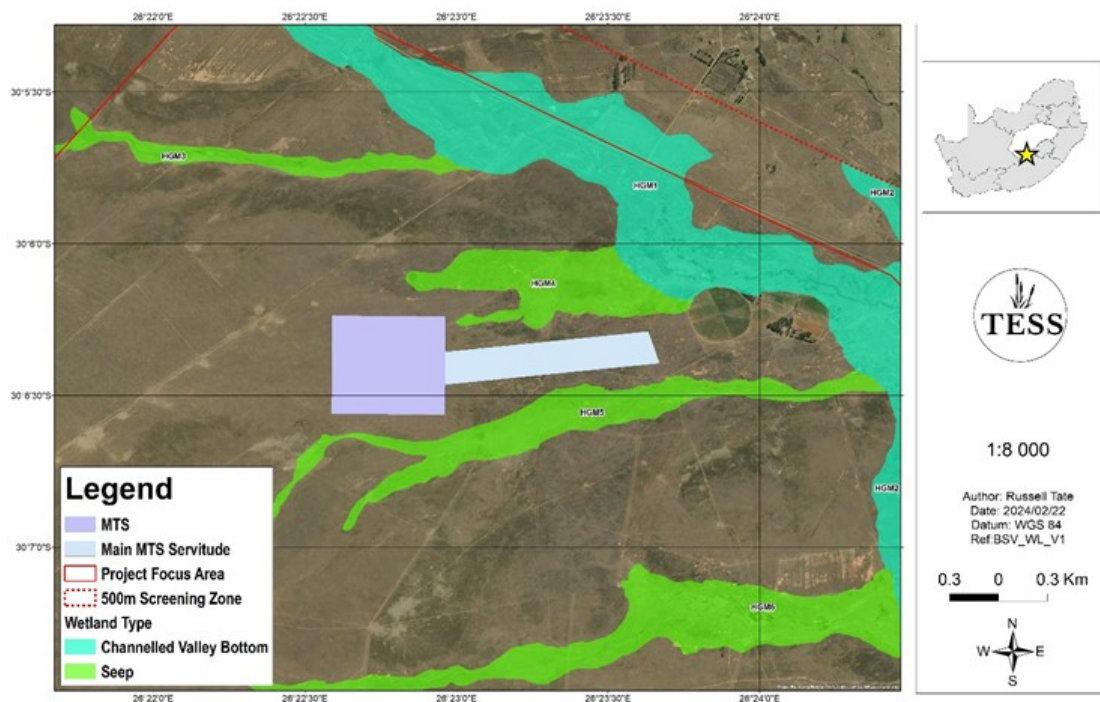


Figure 3.13: Layout and sensitivity map for the Aol and proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO. On this map, seep wetlands shown in green are assigned High sensitivity; and Channelled Valley Bottom (CVB) wetlands shown in blue are assigned Very High sensitivity (Tate Environmental Specialist Services, 2023).

3.2.7 Terrestrial Biodiversity

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Terrestrial Specialist (Enviro-Insight, 2024a¹⁴), which is included in Appendix E.2 of this Scoping Report, as well as draft specialist input (Enviro-Insight, 2023a¹⁵).

A Desktop analysis, using existing datasets and the latest Google Earth satellite imagery, to identify habitats on site; a desktop survey to consider the best information available in order to provide a better evaluation of all conditions present within the study area as well as an on-site inspection to evaluate the terrestrial biodiversity and sensitive flora and fauna aspects of the study area were all used to inform the SSV.

A site visit was undertaken in November 2022 (wet season) by the Terrestrial Specialist where the Terrestrial Biodiversity and sensitive flora aspects of the survey area were evaluated. During the field surveys performed, the habitats were evaluated on foot, and a series of georeferenced photographs were taken of the habitat attributes. The field surveys focused on identifying dominant flora species, main habitat types as well as the actual and potential presence of Species of Conservation Concern (SCC) (either classified as Threatened by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) (2022), protected by the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) (2007, as amended) or other legislation applicable provincially or nationally).

3.2.7.1 Regional Vegetation

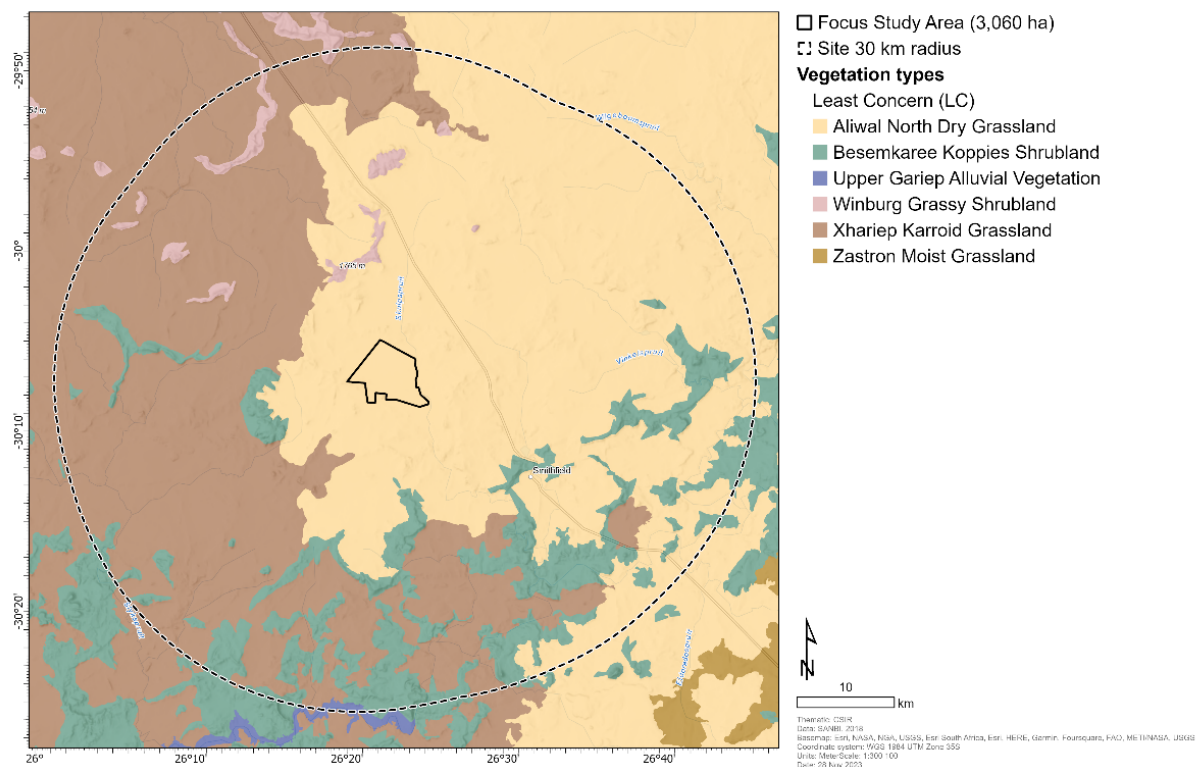
The study area falls within the Grassland Biome, and within the Aliwal North Dry Grassland (Gh2) [Least Concern] vegetation type (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006, as amended¹⁶) (Figure 3.14). From a Terrestrial Biodiversity perspective, this vegetation type is an important system for grassland associated animals, as it supports provincially protected species and has the potential to support endemic species, and it serves as important areas for the conservation of avifauna.

¹⁴ Enviro-Insight (2024a). Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.2 of the Scoping Report.

¹⁵ Enviro-Insight (2023a). Draft Terrestrial Biodiversity Assessment Report for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI (in review).

¹⁶ Mucina, L. and Rutherford, M.C. (Eds.) 2010. The vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. Strelizia 19. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa



3.2.7.2 Biodiversity Conservation Planning

Critically Endangered and Threatened Ecosystems

Based on the SSV, there are no Critically Endangered, Threatened and/or Vulnerable Ecosystems present within the study area of the proposed project. Additional information will be provided during the EIA Phase.

Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas

Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) are indicated in terms of the FSPBP Technical Report and CBA Map. This was developed by the Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (FS DESTEA) by using a Systematic Conservation Planning approach.

CBAs are terrestrial and aquatic features in the landscape that are critical for retaining biodiversity and supporting continued ecosystem functioning and services. The primary purpose of CBAs is to inform land-use planning in order to promote sustainable development and protection of important natural habitat and landscapes.

In terms of CBAs and ESAs, a Screening Tool Report generated during the screening phase of the proposed project, in November 2022, indicated that the study area only contained ESA 1 and 2. This was based on the 2015 FSPBP, as indicated in Figure 3.15 below.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development
near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

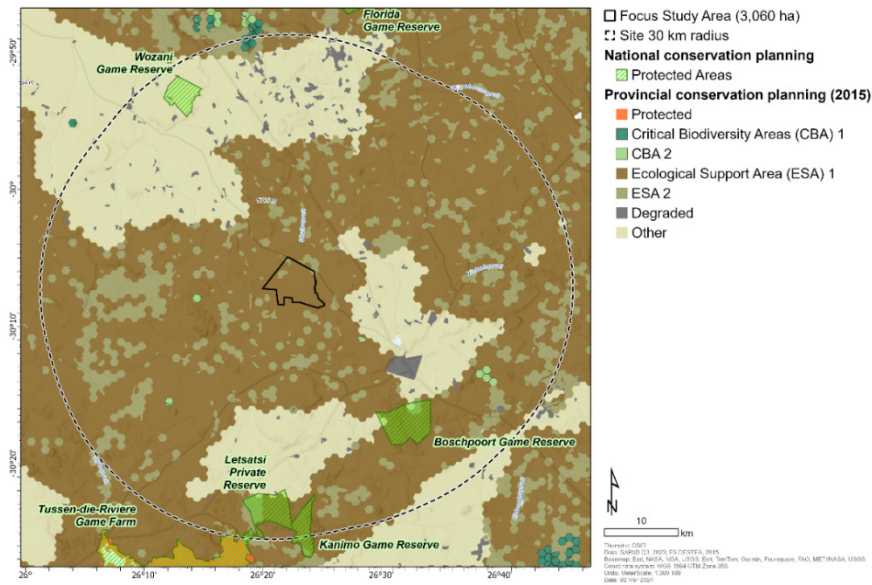


Figure 3.15: Provincial Conservation Planning within the study area based on the 2015 FSPBP, and National Conservation Planning in terms of the South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD; Quarter 3, 2023).

However, a more recent Screening Tool Report generated in late 2023 indicated that the study area contains CBA 1 and 2, as well as ESA 1 and 2. This is based on the 2019 FSPBP (Figure 3.16) that was made available to the public via the Screening Tool in late 2023, after the Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist SSV and fieldwork.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development
near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

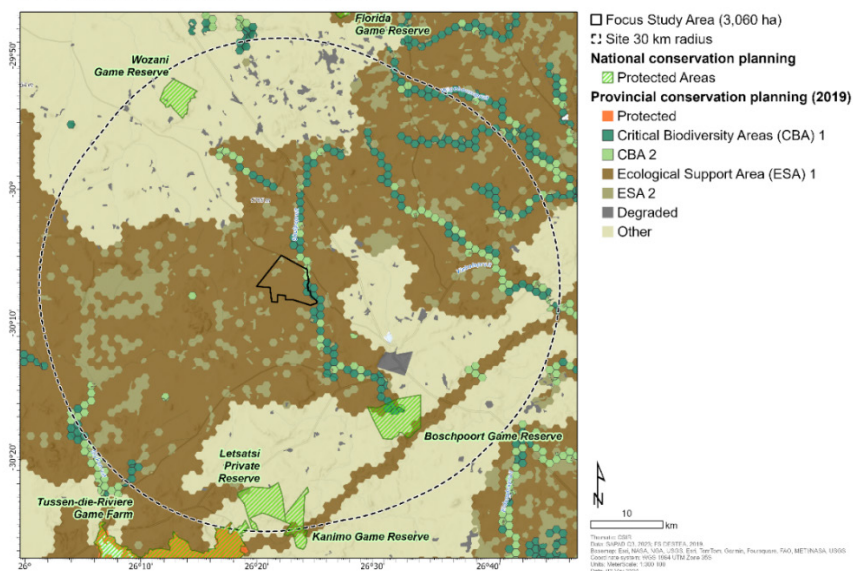


Figure 3.16: Provincial Conservation Planning within the study area based on the 2019 FSPBP, and National Conservation Planning in terms of the South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD; Quarter 3, 2023).

Based on feedback received from the FS DESTEA, the reason for the change from ESA to CBA was due to aquatic features. Refer to Appendix G.3 of this Scoping Report for a copy of this DESTEA correspondence.

Conservation planning data is generally at a coarse spatial resolution. As such, in order to effectively and accurately account for the habitat features which are responsible for the classification of the hexagons (planning units) under the FSPBP, the appointed Aquatic Biodiversity specialist delineated the wetland areas and identified buffer zones for the proposed project. These areas confirmed the status provided in the conservation plan features but refined the extent (i.e. the specialist SSV has refined the exact locations of the CBA, as well as provided suitable buffer classifications). As indicated above, the proposed project avoids the wetlands delineated by the Aquatic Specialist. Access roads traverse these areas; however, this is acceptable as adequate mitigation will be adopted.

The appointed Aquatic Biodiversity specialist and Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist explain that development on the terrestrial portions within the CBA hexagons would not be considered a fatal flaw for the proposed project. Note that the main infrastructure associated with Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 are not located within any of the wetlands identified by the Aquatic Biodiversity specialist.

In addition, all the Biesjesvlei projects, except for part of Biesjesvlei PV3 (Project 3) [which is the subject of a separate report], are not located within any of the terrestrial portions of the CBA hexagons identified in the 2019 FSPBP. For additional information, refer to the SSVs for Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species, and Aquatic Biodiversity and Species in Appendix E.2 and Appendix E.3 of this Scoping Report, respectively.

It is also understood that both the 2015 and 2019 FSPBP are not formally adopted by the DESTEA. Refer to Appendix G.3 of this Scoping Report for correspondence with the DESTEA.

Protected Areas

According to the South African National Protected Areas Database (SAPAD), Quarter 3 (2023), the study area does not include any formally Protected Areas (Figure 3.15 and Figure 3.16), as defined by the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act 57 of 2003) (NEM:PAA). The closest formally Protected Area is the Boschpoort Game Reserve, which is located approximately 16 km to the southeast of the study area. The Letsatsi Private Reserve is located approximately 25 km to the southwest of the study area and the Kanimu Game Reserve, which is adjacent to the Letsatsi Private Reserve, is located approximately 27 km south of the study area. The Wozani Game Reserve is situated more than 23 km to the northwest of the study area. The Tussen die Riviere Game Farm is situated more than 30 km away from the study area.

Conservation Areas

According to the South African Conservation Areas Database (SACAD), Quarter 3 (2023), the study area does not include any Conservation Areas.

National Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NPAES) Focus Areas

The NPAES focus areas for land-based protected area expansion are large, intact and unfragmented areas of high importance for biodiversity representation and ecological persistence, suitable for the creation or expansion of large, Protected Areas. Representative of opportunities for meeting the ecosystem-specific protected area targets set in the NPAES and were designed

with strong emphasis on climate change resilience and requirements for protecting freshwater ecosystems. There are no National Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NPAES) focus areas within the study area.

3.2.7.3 Terrestrial Animal Species (Excluding Avifauna)

3.2.7.3.1 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

The Screening Tool Report Animal Species Sensitivity Map is considered to be of high and medium sensitivity for the entire study area and footprints of the proposed project with the high sensitivity linked to the potential occurrence of Ludwig's Bustard (Globally and Regionally Endangered) which is discussed in the Avifauna SSV in Section 3.2.8 below; and the medium sensitivity linked to the potential occurrence of the mammal Spotted-necked otter (Figures 3.17 and 3.18).

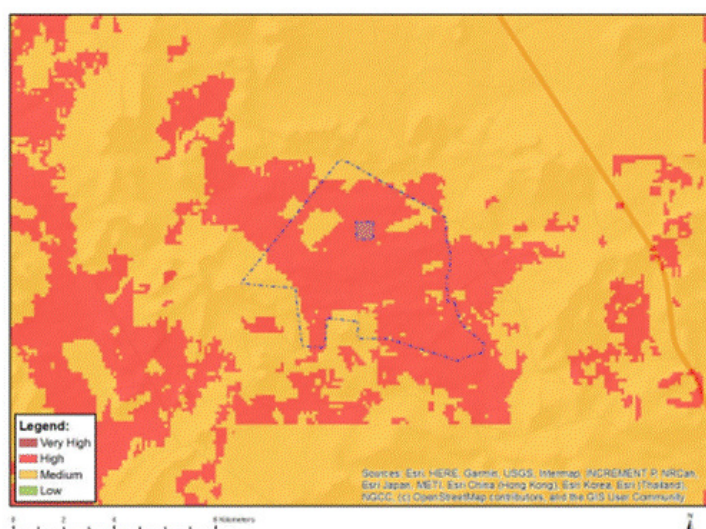


Figure 3.17: Animal Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

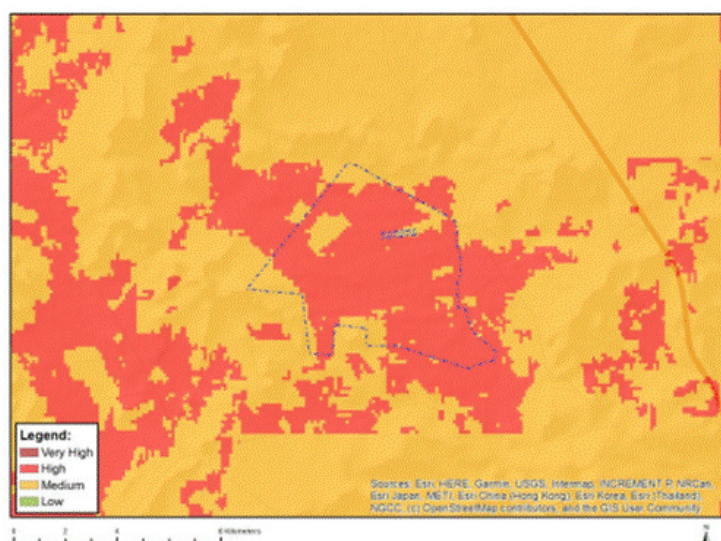


Figure 3.18: Animal Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

The terrestrial animal species recorded on site by the Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist during the site inspection along with an indication of their status is provided in Table 3.3 below, as also indicated in Appendix E.2 of this Scoping Report.

Table 3.3: Animal species recorded on site and their status (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).

Species	Status
<i>Hystrix africaeaustralis</i> (Cape Porcupine)	Least Concern
<i>Dasypeltis scabra</i> (Egg-eating Snake)	Least Concern
<i>Parabuthus planicauda</i> (Drab Thicktail Scorpion)	Least Concern
<i>Homopus femoralis</i> (Karoo Tortoise)	Least Concern
<i>Ictonyx striatus</i> (Zorilla / Striped Polecat)	Least Concern
<i>Otocyon megalotis ssp. Megalotis</i> (Southern Bat-eared Fox)	Least Concern
<i>Stigmochelys pardalis</i> (Leopard Tortoise)	Least Concern
<i>Proteles cristata</i> (Aardwolf)	Least Concern
<i>Antidorcas marsupialis</i> (Springbok)	Least Concern

Based on the SSV, the medium sensitivity rating as classified by the Screening Tool for terrestrial animal species (excluding birds) is confirmed, and the study area is confirmed as medium sensitivity due to suitable habitat for the Spotted-necked otter. This species is listed as Vulnerable and inhabits freshwater habitats where water is not silt-laden and rich in small fishes. Adequate riparian vegetation such as long grass, reeds, or bushes, is also essential to provide cover. The species was not recorded during the site visit, but suitable habitat does exist. Since the watercourse is excluded from development and well buffered, the habitat for the species is protected. However, since the access road will cross the watercourse, the necessary mitigation measures need to be in place to reduce any negative impacts on the feeding, breeding, and movement of the species.

Based on the above, the following is concluded for the **Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)** for Terrestrial Animal Species:

- The **medium sensitivity** for the **Animal Species** Theme on the DFFE Screening Tool is confirmed.

3.2.7.4 Terrestrial Plant Species

3.2.7.4.1 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

The Screening Tool Report Plant Species Sensitivity Map is considered to be of low sensitivity for the entire study area and footprints of the proposed project (Figures 3.19 and 3.20).

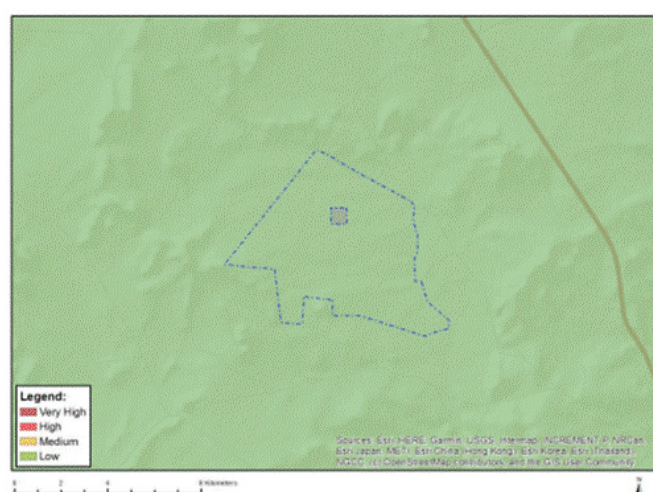


Figure 3.19: Plant Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

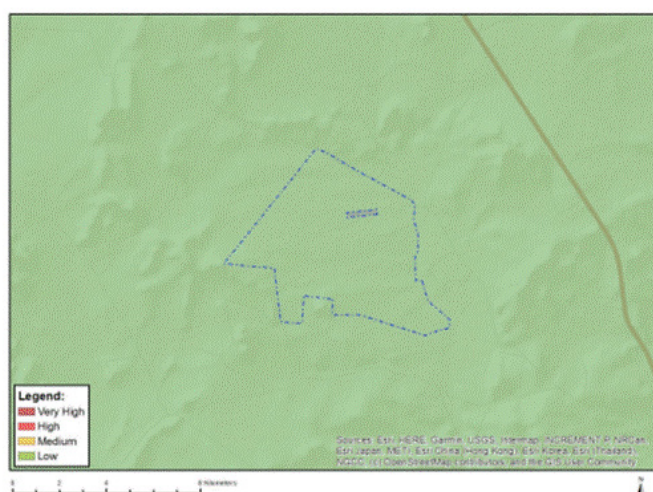


Figure 3.20: Plant Species Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

The study area was surveyed to find any sensitive plant species, focusing on areas of suitable habitat, location, and flowering period. No SCC were found on site; however, some provincially protected species were found (i.e. *Ammocharis coranica*; *Crinum bulbispermum*; *Helichrysum rugulosum*; *Gethyllis transkarooica*; *Jamesbrittenia aurantiaca*).

Based on the SSV and desktop work including iNaturalist, the Screening Tool low sensitivity rating for terrestrial plant species is agreed with as there is no suitable habitat for plant SCC. There are no areas that need to be avoided by the proposed development from a terrestrial plant species perspective.

Based on the above, the following is concluded for the **Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)** for Terrestrial Plant Species:

- The **low sensitivity** for the **Terrestrial Plant Species** Theme on the DFFE Screening Tool is agreed with for the entire study area and project footprints.

3.2.7.5 Terrestrial Biodiversity

3.2.7.5.1 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

The Screening Tool Terrestrial Biodiversity Sensitivity Map indicates very high sensitivity for the entire study area and footprints of the proposed project (Figures 3.21 and 3.22). The very high sensitivity for the study area is linked to the potential occurrence of a CBA 1, CBA 2, ESA 1, ESA 2, and FEPA sub-catchment. Specifically, the very high sensitivity for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) is linked to the potential occurrence of an ESA 1 and FEPA sub-catchment.

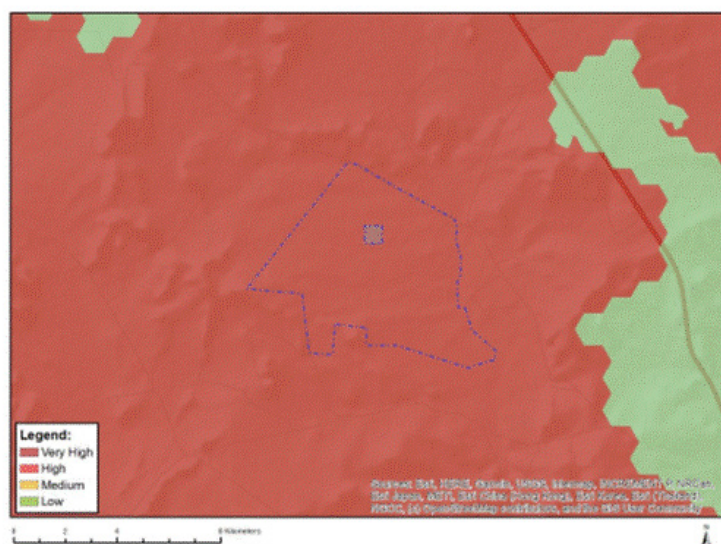


Figure 3.21: Terrestrial Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

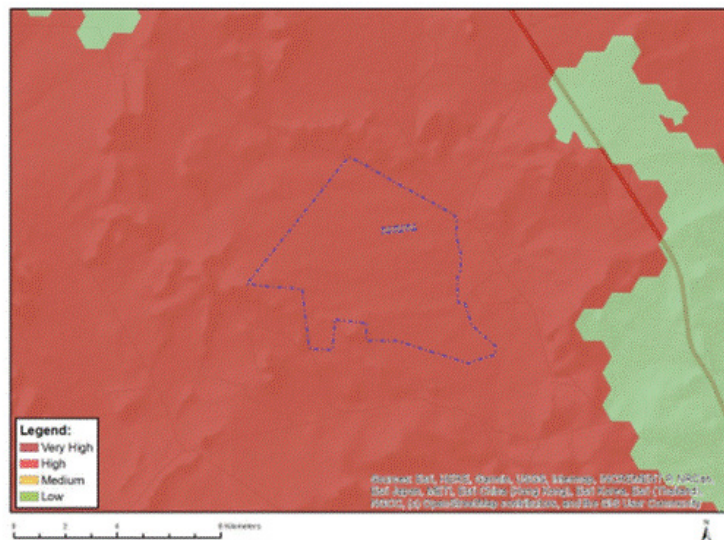


Figure 3.22: Terrestrial Biodiversity Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

Three main habitats (i.e. Grassland, Koppies, and Watercourse / Wetlands) were identified within the study area based on species composition and structure following the desktop review and field-based assessments done by the specialists. These are indicated in Figure 3.23 and described in Table 3.4.

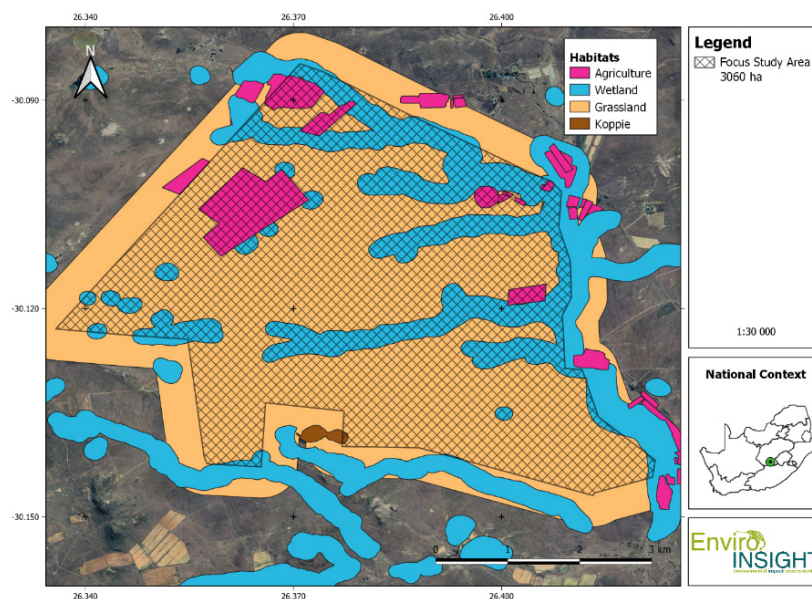





Figure 3.23: Habitat delineation for the study area (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024a).

Table 3.4: Description of the main habitats found within the Study Area (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).

Habitats	Description
<p>Grassland</p>	<p>The Grassland habitat is characteristic of open grassland with patches of dwarf karroid shrubs closer to the rock outcrops capped with dolerite. In areas closer to drainage lines and rivers, species composition and structure change as the soil becomes more saturated.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Typical Grassland habitat which are dominated by grasses.</p>
<p>Koppie</p>	<p>The Koppie is a single dolerite rock outcrop located to the south of the study area. The lower layer is dominated by dwarf small-leaved shrubs and, especially in precipitation-rich years, also by abundant grasses, while the upper layer is dominated by tall shrubs.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Koppie habitat located on the south-western section of the study area.</p>
<p>Watercourse / wetlands</p>	<p>The Watercourse habitat consists of drainage lines, some of which are smaller and drains into the main river. The vegetation layer is not well-defined and is made up of woody cover in some areas but is mostly dominated by graminoids and herbaceous species.</p> <p>The Watercourse habitat acts as a landscape corridor for the movement of many fauna species, including small mammals such as hares. It also performs important ecosystem functions such as regulating water runoff and creating suitable conditions important for the survival of many fauna species including foraging and breeding habitat.</p>

Habitats	Description
	 <p style="text-align: center;">Watercourse habitat throughout the study area.</p>

Following the site inspection and based on local site conditions, the specialists undertook more detailed sensitivity mapping (at the project scale) for the proposed project. The findings are provided in Table 3.5 below and indicated in Figure 3.24.

Table 3.5: Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivities (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024a).

Habitat	Sensitivity	Buffer
Grassland	Medium (after all sensitive areas have been avoided and no transformation takes place)	None
Watercourse / wetlands	Very High	As defined by the Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist
Koppies	Very High	20 m

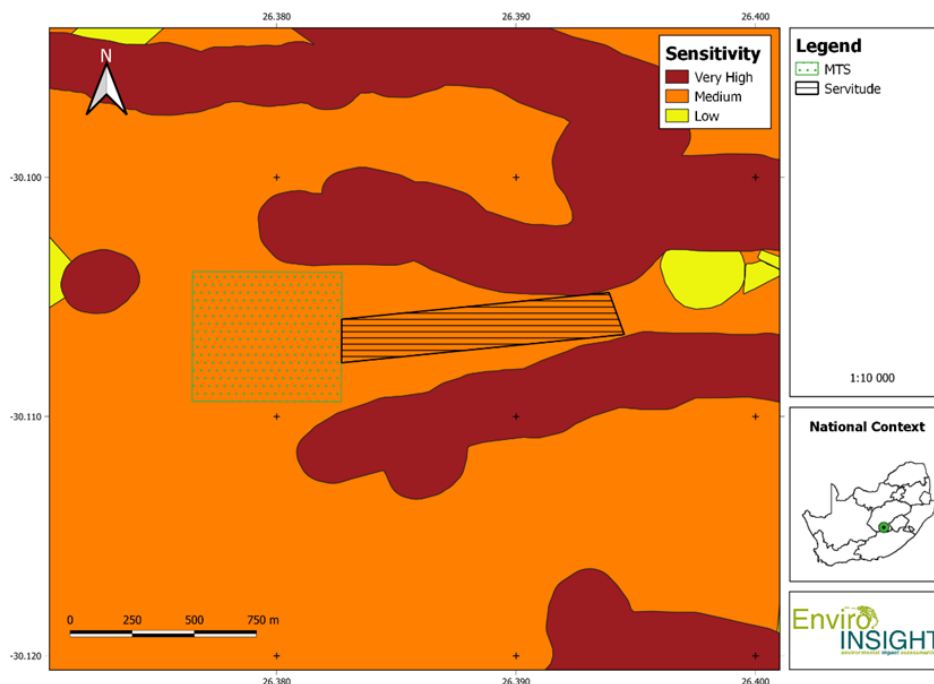


Figure 3.24: Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity and layout map for the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024a).

Based on the above, the following is concluded for the **Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)** for Terrestrial Biodiversity:

- The SSV did not confirm the very high sensitivity for Terrestrial Biodiversity as per the Screening Tool Report. The CBA and ESA classification is based on aquatic features. The aquatic specialist has refined the exact locations of the CBA, as well as provided suitable buffer classifications. In this regard, development on the terrestrial portions within the CBA hexagon would not be considered a fatal flaw for the proposed project.
- The ESA 1 and ESA 2 Very High sensitivity is disputed and is not considered Very High sensitivity from a Terrestrial Biodiversity perspective, but they do provide important ecosystem services which needs to be protected. The ESA 1 and ESA 2 can be regarded as high and medium sensitivity from a Terrestrial Biodiversity perspective.
- The Watercourse habitat is considered to be very high sensitivity from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective.
- The Koppie habitat is considered very high sensitivity from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective and must be buffered by at least 20 m.
- The Grassland habitat is considered medium sensitivity from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective after mitigation has been applied and no transformation of the grasslands take place.
- Evidence is provided by means of detailed feature and sensitivity mapping as illustrated in Figure 3.24.
- Based on the above, the study area is confirmed not to be Low sensitivity.

3.2.8 Avifauna

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Avifauna Specialist (Enviro-Insight, 2024b¹⁷), which is included in Appendix E.4 of this Scoping Report, as well as draft specialist input (Enviro-Insight, 2023b¹⁸).

3.2.8.1 General Context

The following were used to inform the Avifauna SSV:

- A Desktop analysis, using existing datasets and the latest Google Earth satellite imagery, to establish how the proposed project interacts with important terrestrial biodiversity and avifaunal specific receptors;
- A desktop survey to consider the best information available in order to provide a better evaluation of all conditions present within the study area; and
- An on-site inspection to identify site characteristics found within the study area such as habitats, important bird species and site sensitivities including sensitive habitats with their associated sensitive bird species and observation of nests of sensitive bird species.

The pre-construction avifaunal monitoring programme was undertaken as a Regime 2 assessment (Jenkins et al. 2017¹⁹), which consisted of three surveys (November 2022, February 2023, and April 2023).

The following existing impacts to avifauna were observed during the site visit within the study area:

- Burning regimes – Fires, controlled or otherwise, may influence the habitat ecology including bird nesting habitat (ground dwelling species).
- Livestock grazing – The overall survey area is primarily comprised of livestock grazing areas with some areas showing signs of overgrazing and trampling. Fenced habitats ultimately showed ecologically manipulated ecology which may be beneficial or detrimental to local avifaunal populations, species dependent.
- Existing pylons and powerlines – A large existing pylon servitude exists within the study area (i.e. Eskom 400 kV Beta – Delphi Line).
- Linear infrastructure - The study area is fragmented by a multitude of linear structures which present restrictive and hazard barriers to avifauna. These include fencing, sand roads and tar roads.

3.2.8.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

From an avifaunal perspective, the Screening Tool Report Animal Species Sensitivity Map is high sensitivity for the footprints of the proposed project linked to the potential occurrence of Ludwig's Bustard (Globally and Regionally Endangered) (Figures 3.17 and 3.18).

¹⁷ Enviro-Insight (2024b). Avifauna SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.4 of the Scoping Report.

¹⁸ Enviro-Insight (2023b). Draft Avifauna Assessment for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI (in review).

¹⁹ Jenkins, A.R., Ralston-Paton, S. and Smit-Robinson, H.A. (2017). Birds & Solar Energy. Best Practice Guidelines: Guidelines for assessing and monitoring the impact of solar power generating facilities on birds in southern Africa.

Figure 3.25 provides an overall habitat delineation for the study area from an avifaunal perspective following the SSV, which is also described in Table 3.6. These include agricultural fields, fallow fields, grassland, wetlands, and the koppie. Although Blue Korhaan frequented areas have been delineated in the map, the areas fall predominantly within the grassland habitat, and show where the species were observed most frequently. It is therefore not a separate habitat, but rather a visual illustration of where the Blue Korhaan fall into the habitats in the study area. For this reason, specific reference to Blue Korhaan frequented areas has not been made in the habitat descriptions below beyond the grassland description (Enviro-Insight, 2024b).

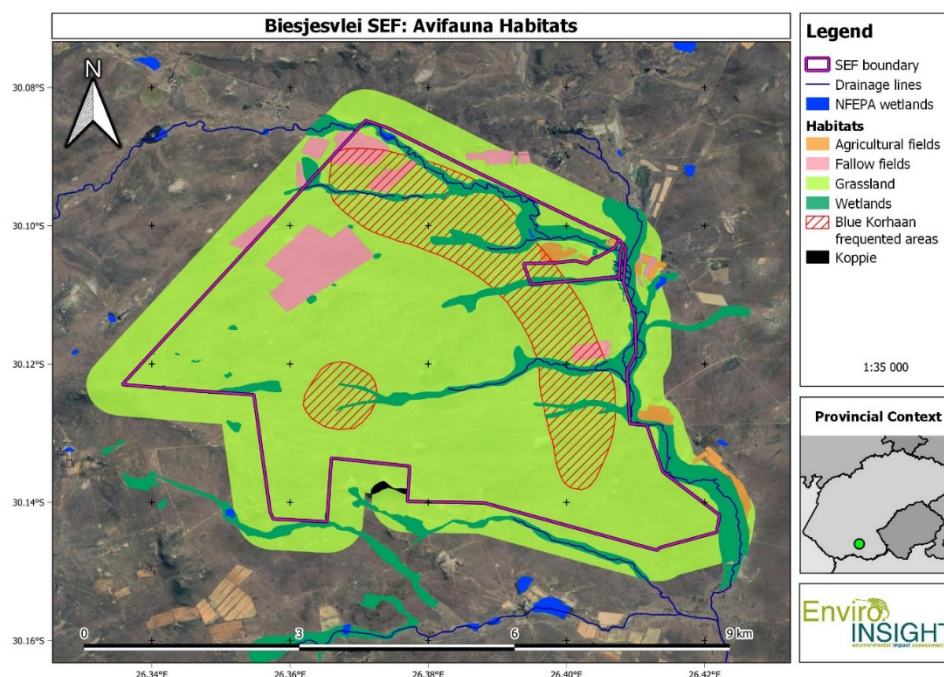





Figure 3.25: Avifauna Habitat Delineation for the Study Area (Source: Enviro Insight, 2024b).

Table 3.6: Delineated Habitats within the Study Area (extracted from Enviro Insight, 2024b).

Habitats	Description
Grassland (Natural and Semi-natural)	<p>The open grassland supports a mix of grassland, wetland and drought-tolerant grass species. An example photograph is shown below. This habitat supports many priority avifauna species expected within the study area such as large terrestrial bird species (Northern Black Korhaan and Blue Korhaan), raptor species such as Black-winged Kite, Cape Vultures (foraging) and Black-chested Snake Eagle, as well as Secretarybird.</p> <p>The natural grasslands act as foraging habitat for diurnal birds of prey. It also provides potential hunting habitat for all Secretarybirds which hunt prey common in these habitats.</p> <p>The Grassland (Natural and Semi-natural) vegetation provides potential nesting habitat for bird species such as small Raptors, Larks, Pipits, Cisticola's and Korhaan and possibly including hunting/foraging habitat for species such as Black Storks, Bustards, Korhaans, Lanner Falcon, Secretarybird and other larger raptors.</p>

Habitats	Description
	 <p style="text-align: center;">Open Grassland</p>
<p>Drainage Line and Wetland Infusions</p>	<p>The drainage lines throughout the Area of Influence (AOI) were primarily herbaceous and very wet (almost year-round) with structural differences to the surrounding open grasslands. As expected, these habitats provided significantly different survey results during the wet season, with greater potential for the presence of priority species. In some localised locations, standing water persisted within these habitats during the drier season. Example photographs are shown below.</p> <p>The drainage lines and accompanying grassland vegetation are linear dispersal corridors for terrestrial and wetland associated bird species.</p> <p>A significantly high species abundance (as well as a unique diversity) was observed in this habitat and therefore, these systems are assigned high avifaunal importance.</p> <p>The drainage lines act as important flight corridors for water associate, passerines and raptors between foraging and roosting sites.</p> <p>Blue Korhaan and Black Storks utilise the habitat on the upslopes of drainage lines for foraging.</p> <p>See the Grassland description above for potential nesting habitat and hunting/foraging habitat created by the drainage lines for specific bird species.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Wetland Infusions in Open Grassland</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Drainage Lines</p>

Habitats	Description
<p>Isolated Small Rocky Ridges “Koppies”</p>	<p>The small rocky ridges found in and around the study area differ in size and height, but do not form extensive ridge systems and often form near isolated small “koppies” as is typical of the habitat type (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006²⁰). A photographic example is shown below.</p> <p>Although, no nests were found within the “koppies”, these areas are of high sensitivity as they provide great habitat for different fauna and flora species found within the study area. The Koppies are vital in the landscape, primarily due to their corridor potential and associated breeding habitat. These areas also support scattered large thorn bushes which could be ideal nesting habitat for raptor species such as Secretarybird.</p> <p>Avifaunal species depend on an interconnected system of ridge features and based on seasonality and prevailing climatic conditions, it is anticipated that these systems experience a frequent turnover of species over time (seasonally and long term). They often provide essential breeding habitat, foraging habitat and forage and refuge resources for avifaunal species including large, bodied SCC such as Blue Korhaans, Ludwig’s Bustards and Secretarybirds. The koppies especially provide significant foraging habitat for Verreaux’s Eagle.</p> <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Rocky ridges "koppies".</p>
<p>Agricultural Fields and Fallow Lands</p>	<p>The Agricultural Fields and Fallow Lands are mostly disturbed grassland supporting a mix of Increaser Species. This habitat is the second most dominant type for the study area and is considered to be of low sensitivity, although some priority species forage extensively over these habitats. A photographic example is shown below.</p> <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Fallow/Agricultural Lands</p>

Following the site inspection and based on local site conditions, the specialists undertook more detailed sensitivity mapping (at the project scale) for the proposed project which included calculating the Site Ecological Importance (SEI) based on the Species Environmental Assessment

²⁰ Mucina, L. & Rutherford, M.C. (eds). (2006, as amended). *The Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland*. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.

Guideline (SANBI, 2020²¹). The habitats present in the study area are classified as Low, Medium, or High. Habitats classified as Medium and High SEI will require buffering, minimisation, and restoration mitigation.

Avifaunal importance relates to species diversity, endemism and the presence of topographical features or primary habitat units with the intrinsic ability to sustain avifaunal assemblages, their food supply as well as SCC. It is clear that throughout the study area, most of the habitats are variable in their ability to support a high diversity of general avifaunal species, Red-Listed species and SCC, such as Verreaux’s Eagle, Lanner Falcon, Blue Crane, Secretarybird, Ludwig’s Bustard, Black Stork, Cape Vulture, Blue Korhaan and Lesser Kestrel. There are some unique geographical or topographical features that are classified as a “No-Go” area with respect to avifauna. Due to the low diversity yet high density of the abovementioned, Red-Listed species recorded during the surveys (including regionally and globally listed Endangered and Vulnerable birds), the region as a whole is considered to be an area of Low, Medium or High avifaunal importance. Therefore, activities should be managed in a holistic manner at a policy level, prioritising avoidance, and minimisation, as well as monitoring of avifaunal SCC.

Based on the above, the following avifauna sensitivities have been identified within the study area (Table 3.7).

Table 3.7: Avifauna sensitivities (extracted from Enviro-Insight, 2024b).

Habitat	SEI	Sensitivity	Buffer
Grassland (Natural and Semi-natural)	Medium	Medium	Not applicable
Drainage Line and Wetland Infusions	High	High	100 m
Isolated Small Rocky Ridges “Koppies”	High	High	150 m
Agricultural Fields and Fallow Fields	Low	Low	Not applicable

Overall, the 3 060-ha study area is confirmed to be low to high sensitivity (Figure 3.26), and the findings of the Screening Tool are agreed with.

²¹ South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI). 2020. Species Environmental Assessment Guideline. Guidelines for the implementation of the Terrestrial Fauna and Terrestrial Flora Species Protocols for environmental impact assessments in South Africa. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria. Version 3.1. 2022.

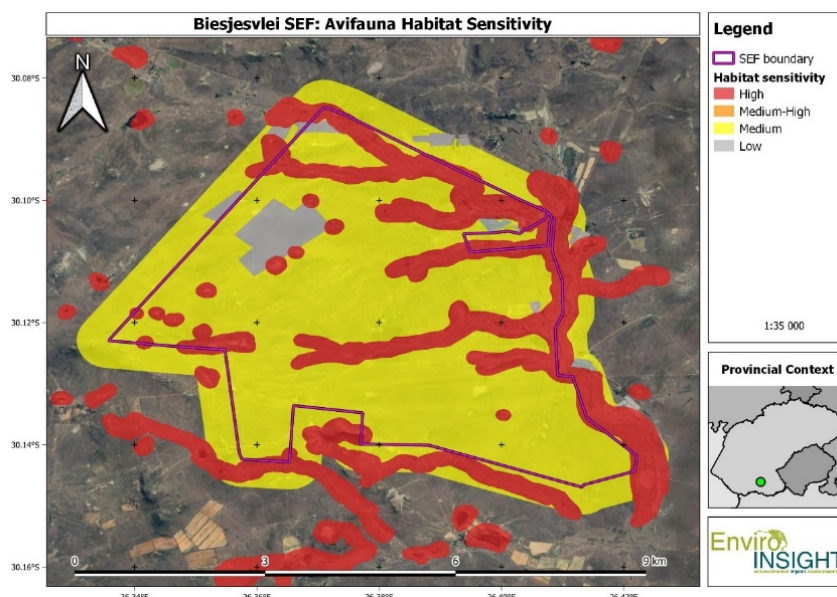


Figure 3.26: Avifauna sensitivity and layout map for the study area (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024b).

The avifauna sensitivity and layout map for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO is shown in Figure 3.27.

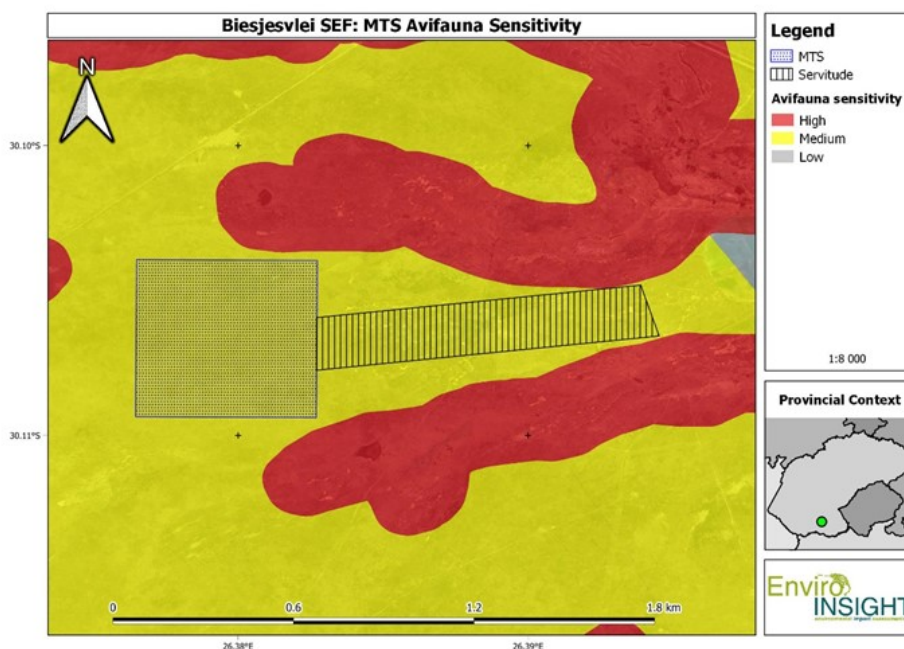


Figure 3.27: Avifauna sensitivity and layout map for Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10) (Source: Enviro-Insight, 2024b).

The following is concluded for the Avifauna SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO:

- Overall, the footprint of the **Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)** is confirmed to be Medium sensitivity due to Grassland habitat (Figure 3.27).

3.2.9 Visual Aspects and Sensitive Receptors

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Visual Specialist (Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024²²), which is included in Appendix E.5 of this Scoping Report, as well as draft specialist input (Oberholzer and Lawson, 2023²³).

3.2.9.1 General Context

The visual assessment provides information on landscape, terrain, and vegetation, as well as other aspects such as land use and sensitive receptors. The SSV was undertaken using the following means:

- Desktop analysis, using 1:50 000 topographic series maps and Google Earth satellite imagery;
- On-site inspection; and
- Reference to various databases, including the SAPAD.

The site inspection indicated that the study area has a pleasing rural farming character within a natural setting typical of the Free State with its broad horizons, plains and koppies. The trees characteristically include avenues of Lombardy poplars, valley cottonwoods, gums, pines, cypresses and weeping willow. An existing Eskom powerline (Beta - Delphi) traverses the eastern portion of the proposed study area, which can be seen as an existing visual distraction.

3.2.9.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

The Screening Tool Report indicated the following sensitivities for the Landscape Solar Theme for the entire study area:

- Very High sensitivity: Mountain tops and high ridges;
- Very High sensitivity: Slope more than 1:4;
- Very High sensitivity: Within 250 m of a river;
- High sensitivity: Slope between 1:4 and 1:10;
- High sensitivity: Within 500 m of a river; and
- Medium sensitivity: Within 1000 m of a wetland.

Note that the Screening Tool does not include a Landscape Theme Sensitivity map for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO project.

Following the site inspection and based on detailed viewshed mapping and local site conditions, the specialists undertook more detailed visual sensitivity mapping (at the project scale) for the proposed project (Figure 3.28).

According to Oberholzer and Lawson (2023), the viewshed, or zone of visual influence, potentially extends for some 5 km but is partly restricted by the koppies to the west, where parts of the surrounding area are in a view shadow.

²² Oberholzer, B. and Lawson, Q. (2024). Visual SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.5 of the Scoping Report.

²³ Oberholzer, B. and Lawson, Q. (2023). Draft Visual Impact Assessment for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI (in review).

Scenic resources and sensitive receptors within the study area have been categorised into no-go (very high), high, medium, and low visual sensitivity zones, for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10), as indicated in Table 3.9 below (based on the categories in Table 3.8). The buffers in Table 3.9 are based on those for landscape resources in the National Wind and Solar SEA (Lawson and Oberholzer, 2014²⁴). The visual sensitivity mapping categories are spatially indicated in Figure 3.28.

No significant landscape or scenic features would be affected by the currently proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10). The nearest farmstead, Salpetersvlei is owned/occupied by a landowner who is part of the project. Overall, the footprint of Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO is confirmed to be low sensitivity.

Table 3.8: Visual Sensitivity Categories (extracted from Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024²⁵).

No Go	Areas or features considered of such sensitivity or importance that any adverse effects upon them may be regarded as a fatal flaw.
High	Development to be limited and remain within acceptable limits of change determined by the specialist and comply with restrictions or mitigation measures identified by the specialist.
Medium	Areas considered to be developable, but to remain within acceptable limits of change as determined by the specialist and comply with restrictions or mitigation measures identified by the specialist.
Low	Low sensitivity areas that are considered to be developable. However, specialists may still wish to define acceptable limits of change where necessary.

²⁴ Lawson, Q. and Oberholzer, B. 2014. National Wind and Solar PV SEA Specialist Report: Landscape Assessment, with CSIR for Department of Environmental Affairs.

²⁵ Oberholzer, B. and Lawson, Q. (2023). Visual Site Sensitivity Verification for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI. Prepared for the Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) for the Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI. Appendix E.5 of the Scoping Report.

Table 3.9: Visual Sensitivity Mapping Categories for the Proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (extracted from Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024²⁵).

Scenic Resources	Very high sensitivity (No-go)	High visual sensitivity	Medium visual sensitivity	Low visual sensitivity
Topographic features	Feature	Within 100 m	-	-
Steep slopes	-	Slopes > 1:4	-	-
Drainage courses	Feature	Within 50m	-	-
Cultural landscapes	Refer to HIA	-	-	-
Protected Landscapes / Sensitive Receptors				
Farmsteads outside site	within 200 m	within 400 m	within 800 m	-
Farmsteads inside site	within 100 m	within 200 m	within 400 m	-
Main district roads	within 100 m	within 150 m	within 250 m	-
Minor district roads	within 50 m	within 100 m	within 150 km	-

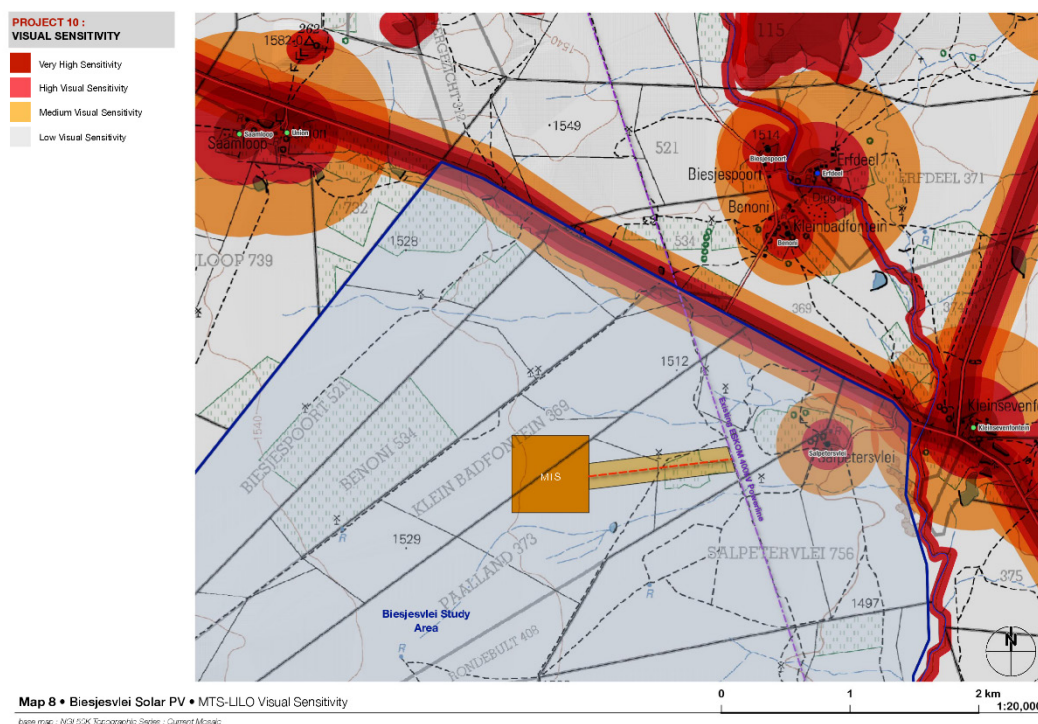


Figure 3.28: Map of sensitive receptors and their associated visual sensitivity buffers for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO and associated infrastructure following the SSV and detailed mapping (Source: Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024²⁵).

3.2.10 Heritage: Archaeology and Cultural Landscape

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Heritage Specialist (ASHA Consulting, 2024²⁶), which are included in Appendix E.6 of this Scoping Report. A detailed description of the archaeological features and cultural landscape within the study area will be provided in the Heritage Impact Assessment (Archaeology and Cultural Landscape), that will be included in the EIA Report.

3.2.10.1 General Context

Initial work was carried out using satellite aerial photography in combination with the specialist's accumulated knowledge of the local landscape. This was used to determine whether any obviously sensitive areas were present and that needed to be targeted during the survey. The subsequent fieldwork undertaken in November 2022 and October 2023 served to ground truth the site, including areas identified as potentially sensitive. Due to limitations during the original survey (large parts of the site were flooded), a return visit was made to check a few more areas and fill in gaps in the survey coverage. Desktop research using maps, historical aerial photography, published literature and commercial reports was also used to inform on the heritage context of the area.

A number of heritage resources were identified within the study area. Table 3.12 lists those heritage resources recorded by the specialist during the survey that have been allocated a **very high** and **high** sensitivity. Refer to the Heritage SSV in Appendix E.6 for a full version of this table, including all heritage resources identified with low and medium sensitivity.

Table 3.12: List of heritage resources recorded during the survey with a very high and high sensitivity (extracted from ASHA Consulting, 2024).

Waypoint	Location	Description	Significance Grade	Sensitivity	Avoided by Project Layout?
318	S30 08 02.6 E26 26 40.8	A tiny rock shelter occurs under the lower end of a boulder on a sandstone ridge. There are a few hornfels artefacts in and around the shelter but there are many more on the talus slope. Also one CCS flake. Two upper grindstone/hammerstones occur in the right side of the shelter (facing in) and a lightly used lower grindstone (face up) lies on the floor on the left side. Above the lower grindstone is a small red-painted, left-facing eland torso. There is some stone walling around the dripline of the shelter.	High IIIB	Very high	Avoided
319	S30 07 58.0 E26 26 47.7	Artefact scatter on the talus slope in front of a rock wall with a slight overhang. Nothing under the overhang but quite extensive low-moderate density scatter on the talus. Includes a side-endscraper, an endscraper and a sidescraper. There are a few weathered and patinated artefacts and also a dolerite hammerstone.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
320	S30 07 56.9 E26 26 49.1	Stone walling on the crest of the sandstone ridge has been used to make a small enclosure about 5 m across between boulders and also extending from it is another wall about 17 m long extending towards the northeast (historical). There is a dense artefact scatter (LSA) to the east of the enclosure.	High IIIB	Very high	Avoided
324	S30 07 37.0 E26 26 43.1	A 4 m diameter circular stone-walled structure occupies the entire summit of a small dolerite koppie. There is a narrow entrance in the southern side. The walling is about 0.5 m high at most. The site is almost certainly defensive and offers a good view across the plains to the north. It may well relate to the Anglo-Boer War. No	High IIIB	Very high	Avoided

²⁶ ASHA Consulting (2024). Heritage SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 3). Appendix E.6 of the Scoping Report.

Waypoint	Location	Description	Significance Grade	Sensitivity	Avoided by Project Layout?
		historical artefacts were seen in or around it but one weathered and patinated hornfels flake was inside the structure.			
325	S30 07 32.0 E26 24 48.4	Biesiesvlei Farmstead. The main house and surrounding outbuildings could not be accessed due to perimeter security and visibility was highly limited by large numbers of mature trees. Nevertheless, there were indications that historic structures are present. Outside the security fence was a barn that is largely of stone but there are multiple phases of building work. The oldest is a dressed stone wall made with mud mortar. This is along the base of part of the barn and also a wall that protrudes towards the north. Then there is a dressed stone wall with older, gritty grey cement. This also forms part of the lower section of walling. Above these is dressed stonework with modern cement. Above that is modern red brick and cement with a new metal roof. Some labourers' cottages to the east are modern. 1957 aerial photograph appears to show the main house and one outbuilding to its southeast.	High ---	Very high	Avoided
326	S30 06 17.1 E26 24 54.3	A stone kraal that looks to be in good condition and measures about 28 m by 20 m. Not visited, recorded from the road and aerial photography.	High IIIB	Very high	Avoided
327	S30 06 16.1 E26 24 49.2	In this area there are a number of ruins, and it is evident that this was quite a large farm complex that has been abandoned and fallen apart. The topographic map indicates its name as Kleinsevenfontein. Most buildings are of stone, but a brick house lies on the high ground. At least two stone kraals are present over and above that at waypoint 326. The grade is for precautionary reasons, since there may very well be graves in the area.	High IIIA	Very high	Avoided
328	S30 06 26.0 E26 24 56.3	A stone-walled ruin of indeterminate function. Not visited, recorded from the road and aerial photography.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
329	S30 09 02.0 E26 26 30.8	The De Put and Boomplaas farmsteads appear as one spatially, but with widely spaced buildings. Not visited, recorded from the road and aerial photography. There is a stone-walled graveyard close to the road and several 19 th century houses are visible further away. More than 2 km from the edge of the study area.	High ---	Very high	Avoided
334	S30 08 22.1 E26 23 17.5	Stone-walled kraal with four rooms. Some are not kraal enclosures but rather other farm-related rooms built onto the kraal. The whole structure measures 25 m north-south by 22 m west-east.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
342	S30 06 16.9 E26 24 06.5	An early 20 th century farmhouse, called Salpetersvlei, with most of its joinery and most internal walls removed. It has unique gables with red-painted plaster detailing that are similar to typical 1920s-1930s gables but the house also has bay windows characteristic of the Victorian period. The front door is still present and there is a toilet at the back. The rear bay window has been broken down and a vehicle entrance inserted. The house is now used as a shed. The walls show a course, brownish cement mix in between the bricks and a finer, greyer cement plaster on the outside indicating less cement used within the walls to reduce costs. The roof is corrugated iron.	Medium ---	High	Avoided
343	S30 06 11.7 E26 23 59.4	Two ruined houses and a small, rectangular cement reservoir that lies mostly above ground. The ruins are of stones, bricks and mud but some plaster has been used for repairs in a few places. Some walls are almost entirely gone while others are better preserved. There is a full height muurkas in one wall.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
345	S30 06 17.9 E26 24 03.7	A set of nine graves aligned east-west. They are all covered with stone slabs, but some are quite small stones. Most have small standing headstones but only one is a formal carved stone indicating dates of birth and death as 1824 and 1891 respectively on its west-facing side.	High IIIA	Very high	Avoided
348	S30 09 19.4 E26 23 38.1	The Montagu farm complex. It includes an early 20 th century house (owner said built 1918) and a stone barn built with mud mortar between the stones and some cement just inserted on the outside part of the joints.	High ---	Very high	Avoided

Waypoint	Location	Description	Significance Grade	Sensitivity	Avoided by Project Layout?
355	S30 08 16.1 E26 22 16.3	A dense scatter of LSA hornfels artefacts located in the saddle between a tiny rocky koppie and a large rocky hill. The scatter includes cores, flakes, bladelets and scrapers.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
356	S30 05 15.5 E26 22 41.6	A stone-walled kraal at the base of a hill. Not visited but recorded from the road.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
031	S30 07 56.1 E26 26 48.1	Rock shelter ±2m high and 5m wide. Two finger-painted rock art images in dark red pigment. The first is a horizontal line across a small rock step the other is circular. The circular one is faded on the bottom half. There were 3 partial flakes in the shelter.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
032	S30 08 24.2 E26 23 11.1	Low stone enclosure that is partially collapsed and measures about 4 m by 3 m. Southeast wall is mostly intact and there is an opening to the east. There was some old rusty barbed wire inside but no other associated artefacts.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1634	S30 07 27.4 E26 23 17.5	A stone-walled kraal measuring about 12 m north to south by 7 m west to east and with a 3 m by 4 m enclosure attached to the southern end of the eastern side.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1635	S30 07 26.0 E26 23 16.7	A small, overgrown stone feature that might be about 2 m or 3 m across. Its shape could not be determined due to the grass and bush cover.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1636	S30 07 26.1 E26 23 16.5	An overgrown stone feature of indeterminate function. The main part of it is L-shaped but there might be other walling as well.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1637	S30 07 25.7 E26 23 16.7	This seems as though it might have been a stone-walled house. It measures 6 m north to south and 4 m west to east. No further details could be gleaned from the remaining stones. There may be an ash and rubbish dump in the area, but nothing was visible in the long grass.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1638	S30 07 25.3 E26 23 16.5	A small, overgrown stone feature that might be about 2 m across. Its shape could not be determined due to the grass and bush cover.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
1643	S30 06 18.4 E26 23 56.4	A small cemetery with presumably three graves. One grave has a formal marble headstone with a date of death of 1925. The other two graves are just sandstone grave surrounds with hollows in the middle. It is unclear whether these are actually graves or else were prepared for children and never used, or even were used but then their fills collapsed.	Very high IIIA	Very high	Avoided
D1	S30 08 35.4 E26 21 16.5	Historical farm complex that appears to be derelict today. It was not visited. The image below dates from 1973.	Medium GPA	High	Avoided
D2	S30 07 51.9 E26 25 08.0	De Draai farmstead, still occupied. Not visited. Assumed to be of high cultural significance. House is probably early 20 th century. 1957 aerial photography seems to show the same features as today at the farmstead but the labourers' cottages to the southwest (D3) are not readily visible.	High ---	Very high	Avoided
D3	S30 07 57.5 E26 25 01.4	Three labourers' cottages but the southeastern one is obviously modern. Not visited and assumed to be of at least medium significance.	Medium ---	High	Avoided

3.2.10.2 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

Note that separate Screening Tool Reports were generated for the study area for the proposed project. However, the maps for the Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme in the separate Screening Tool Reports were identical in terms of sensitivity for the study area and footprints.

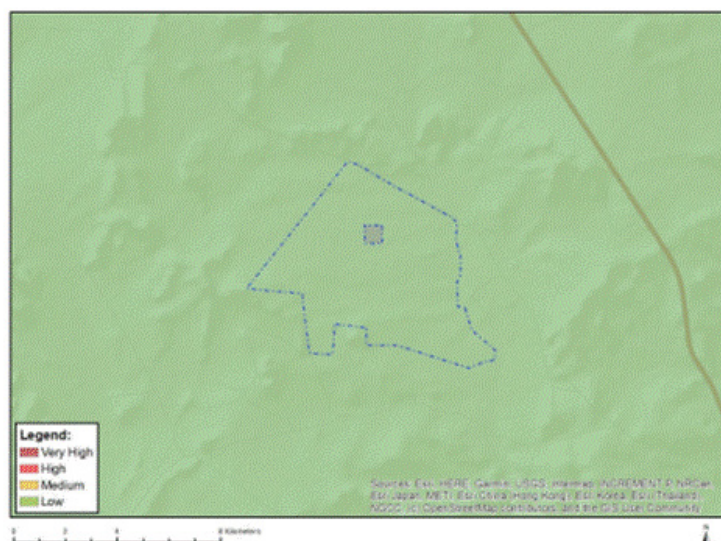


Figure 3.29: Archaeology and Cultural Heritage Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei MTS based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

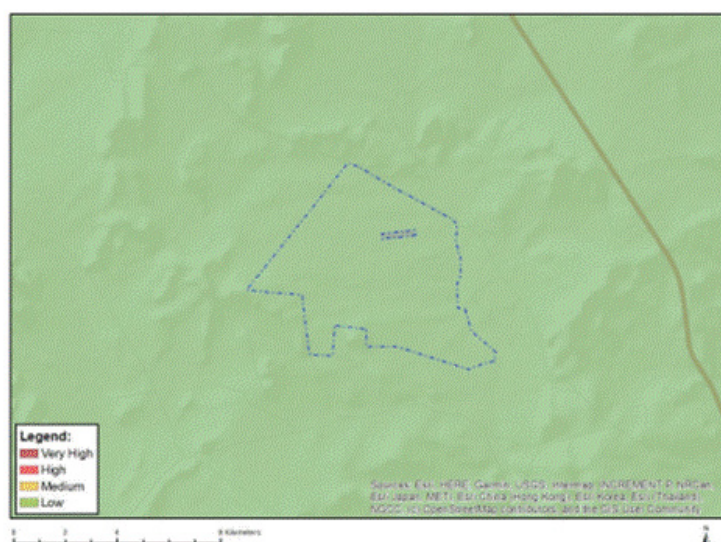


Figure 3.30: Archaeology and Cultural Heritage Sensitivity of the study area and project footprint for the Biesjesvlei LILO based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2024).

Based on the Screening Tool (Figures 3.29 and 3.30), the entire study area is low sensitivity for the Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme.

The site visit by the specialist showed that the majority of the wider site is indeed of low sensitivity, but several small pockets (where heritage resources were found) were considered to be of medium to very high sensitivity. The heritage specialist thus notes that although higher sensitivity areas are missing from the Screening Tool sensitivity map which is therefore disputed, the land included in the present project footprints is indeed of low sensitivity as reflected by the Screening Tool. Refer to Figure 3.31 below for a spatial distribution of these higher sensitivity areas for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO project.

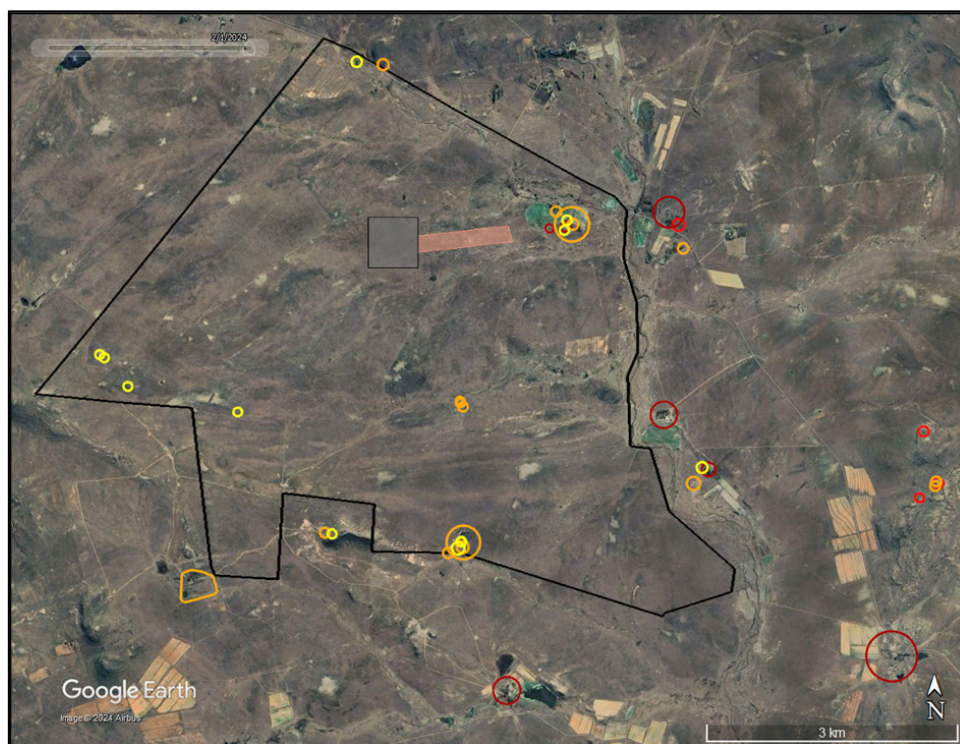


Figure 3.31: Map showing the locations of all heritage resources recorded in the study area and footprint for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO where Dark red = Grade IIIA/very high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity, Red = Grade IIIB/high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity, Orange = Grade GPA/medium cultural significance – High sensitivity, Yellow = Grade GPB/low cultural significance – Medium sensitivity. (Source: ASHA Consulting, 2024).

3.2.11 Palaeontology

The information described below is based on the SSV provided by the Palaeontologist (Almond, 2024²⁷), which is included in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report. One combined SSV has been compiled for Projects 1 to 10. Therefore, the information presented below, applies equally to all the projects forming part of the Biesjesvlei development.

The study area largely comprises undulating, grassy terrain with a few low ridges and koppies of sandstone and dolerite along or outside its margins, particularly towards the south. The area is underlain at depth by fluvial sediments of the Katberg Formation or equivalents (i.e., Tarkastad Subgroup / Upper Beaufort Group, Karoo Supergroup) which are characterised by fossil biotas of the *Lystrosaurus declivis* Assemblage Zone of Early Triassic age. However, within the study area, these Triassic bedrocks are very rarely seen and are locally baked by dolerite intrusions which may have compromised fossil preservation. Very limited Katberg sandstone exposures occur along the course of the Skulpspruit but no fossils have been recorded within them.

The great majority of the study area is mantled by alluvium, soils and thin surface gravels of Quaternary age which are largely or entirely unfossiliferous. A few occurrences of disarticulated, subfossil mammalian bones and teeth plus rarer freshwater crabs and mussel shells are recorded within alluvial sediments exposed along the banks of the Skulpspruit. These subfossils are of

²⁷ Almond, J. (2024). Palaeontology SSV for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV, Biesjesvlei BESS and Biesjesvlei EGI development (Report 4). Appendix E.7 of the Scoping Report.

limited scientific interest, of widespread occurrence and almost all lie outside the study area itself; they are all already protected by standard ecological buffer zones along drainage lines. No sensitive palaeontological sites are known within the study area. Refer to the Palaeontology SSV for a description of the fossils recorded.

3.2.11.1 Screening Tool Descriptions and Site Sensitivity Verification

According to the Screening Tool, the study area ranges from Medium to Very High palaeontological sensitivity (Figure 3.32).

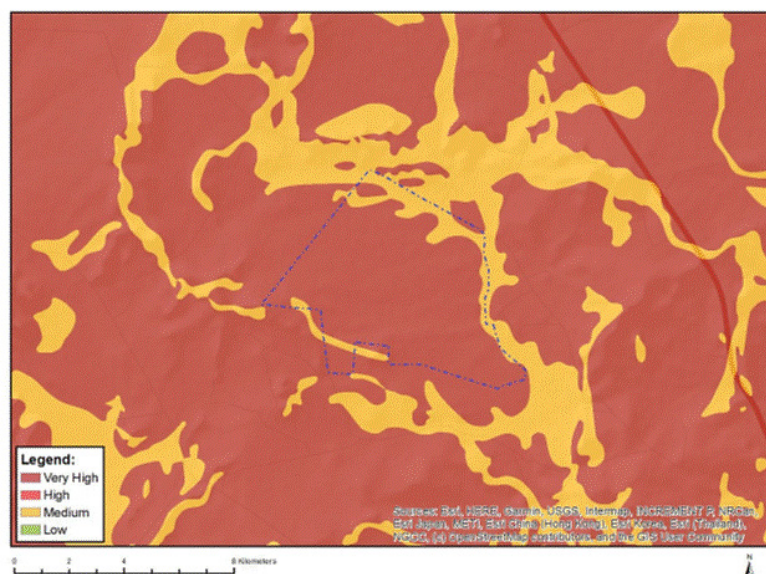


Figure 3.32: Palaeontology sensitivity of the study area based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2023).

Based on a two-day palaeontological site visit, the Screening Tool sensitivity allocations have been contested by the specialist. It is concluded that the study area is in fact of Low to Very Low palaeosensitivity overall, thus disputing the Medium to Very High sensitivity of the Screening Tool (Figure 3.32). However, the potential for rare, largely unpredictable fossil sites of High palaeosensitivity associated with older alluvial and pan deposits in the subsurface cannot be entirely discounted. However, such fossil sites would already be protected during construction by environmental buffer zones along drainage lines. If any fossiliferous deposits are exposed by surface clearance or excavations during the construction phase of the development, the Chance Fossils Finds Protocol (included in Appendix E.7 of the Scoping Report) should be fully implemented.

Therefore, the study area is of Low to Very Low palaeosensitivity.

3.3 Socio-Economic Environment²⁸

The available data used to compile the socio-economic baseline for the MLM, XDM, and Smithfield area, although not exhaustive, is interpreted in terms of professional opinion and is indicative of generally accepted trends within the Free State Province and the broader South Africa.

The information described below is based on draft inputs provided by the Socio-Economic Specialist (SLR Consulting, 2023²⁹), as well as a review of various planning documents such as IDPs and SDFs.

3.3.1 Regional Context – Xhariep District Municipality

The XDM is situated in the southern portion of the Free State and is the largest district in the province. The XDM covers an area of 34 250 km² and is made up of three local municipalities which include Letsemeng, Kopanong, and Mohokare.

3.3.1.1 Demographics and Economic Profile

According to the Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) Provincial Profile Free State Community Survey of 2016 (StatsSA, 2016³⁰), the XDM had a population of 121 945 in 2011 (Table 3.13), which subsequently increased to 125 884 in 2016 (StatsSA, 2016). Of the XDM's total population in 2016, the largest (63.8%) age category was the working age group (15-59 years), followed by the 0-14 age category (26.2%) with the smallest age category (9.7%) being 60 years and over (StatsSA, 2016). In terms of race groups, Black Africans made up 76.2% of the population in the XDM, followed by Coloureds (14%), Whites (9.7%), and Indians/Asians (0.1%) (StatsSA, 2016). The main languages spoken in 2016 was Sesotho (39.7%) followed by Afrikaans (38.4%), isiXhosa (16.4%), Setswana (3.6%) and English (1.2%) (StatsSA, 2016).

Table 3.13: Total population of the XDM, MLM, Free State, and National for the period 2011 – 2016 (Sources: StatsSA 2016).

Region →	XDM	MLM	Free State	National Total	MLM as a % of the DM	MLM as a % of the province	MLM as a % of national
Year ↓							
2011	121 945	34 146	2 745 590	51 770 561	28%	1.24%	0.066%
2016	125 884	35 840	2 834 714	55 653 653	28.47%	1.26%	0.064%

²⁸ Note that the Draft Socio-Economic Specialist Assessment only covers the proposed Biesjesvlei PV and Biesjesvlei BESS projects. However, since the proposed MTS and LILO project forms part of the larger Biesjesvlei Cluster of projects, the information has been adapted accordingly in this section. The need for the proposed MTS and LILO is directly linked to the need for the BESS and EGI projects, therefore the socio-economic benefits are linked.

²⁹ SLR Consulting (2023). Socio-Economic Draft Specialist Report for the proposed Biesjesvlei PV and Biesjesvlei BESS (in review).

³⁰ Statistics South Africa Community Survey (2016). Provincial Profile: Free State Community Survey 2016. Report 03-01-12. [online]. Available at: <https://cs2016.statssa.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/2018/07/FreeState.pdf>. Accessed: December 2023.

With a Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of R 7.86 billion in 2017 (up from R 3.68 billion in 2007), the XDM contributed 3.36% to the Free State Province GDP of R 234 billion in 2017 (XDM IDP, 2022³¹). The Community Services sector was the largest economic sector in 2017 within the XDM, at R 2.2 billion of the total Gross Value Added (GVA) (XDM IDP, 2022). The agricultural sector (primary) was the second largest economic sector in the XDM, accounting for 16% of the GVA in 2017, followed by the mining sector (primary) with 13.2% of the GVA in 2017 (XDM IDP, 2022).

3.3.1.2 Social Characteristics

Unemployment and inequality remain a challenge within the XDM (XDM IDP, 2022). The district had an unemployment rate of 35.3% in 2019 (XDM, 2019³²) which was higher than South Africa's national unemployment rate of 29.1% in Quarter 4 of 2019 (StatsSA, 2019³³). The district also experiences an average increase of 4.23% in the number of unemployed people annually and the working age population has been decreasing at an average annual rate of -0.56% since 2009 (StatsSA, 2019).

Based on the 2011 Census data, the majority of households in the XDM (26%) earned an average income of up to R19 600 per annum, whereas 11% of households in the XDM had no income and 5% of households earned an average income of up to R4 800 per annum (StatsSA, 2011a³⁴). The average annual income earned by households in the XDM was R 61 390 which is lower than the average annual income earned by household in the Free State (R75 315) (StatsSA, 2011a). The COVID-19 pandemic likely impacted income levels and increased the number of households in the XDM that live close to or below the poverty line.

According to the XDM (2019), in the XDM, 83.2% of households lived in formal dwellings in 2019, whereas 10.1% of these households lived in informal dwellings. Approximately 3.8% of the households lived in back yard dwellings, which is slightly lower than the average of 5.9% for the Free State and 1% of the households were living in a townhouse which is slightly higher than the average for the Free State and South Africa.

³¹ Xhariep District Municipality (2022). Xhariep District Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2022. Available at: <http://www.dspace.fs.gov.za/xmlui/bitstream/handle/123456789/182/Xhariep%20DM.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y>. [online]. Accessed: December 2023.

³² Xhariep District Municipality (2019). Xhariep District Municipality Profile and Analysis District Development Model. [online]. Available at: https://www.cogta.gov.za/cgta_2016/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/District_Profile_Xhariep.pdf. Accessed: December 2023.

³³ Statistics South Africa (2019). Quarterly Labour Force Survey Quarter 4:2019. Statistical release P0211. [online]. Available at: <https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P0211/P02114thQuarter2019.pdf>. Accessed: December 2023.

³⁴ Statistics South Africa (2011a). Statistics South Africa Provincial Profile: Free State Census 2011. Report No. 03-01-73. [online]. Available at: <https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/Report-03-01-73/Report-03-01-732011.pdf>. Accessed: December 2023.

3.3.2 Local Context – Mohokare Local Municipality

The MLM is the southernmost Local Municipality within the XDM making up 23.2% or 8 785 km² of its geographical area (MLM SDF, 2023³⁵). The MLM derives its name from Sesotho meaning “Caledon River”. The municipality is named after the Caledon River which runs through the municipality. The MLM comprises three towns, i.e., Rouxville, Smithfield, and Zastron with Zastron being the administrative seat of the MLM (MLM SDF, 2023³⁶). Table 3.14 provides an overview of various key statistics for the MLM.

Table 3.14: Key statistics for the MLM for 2016, 2011, and 2001 (StatsSA, 2011b³⁷; MLM IDP, 2023³⁸; StatsSA, 2024³⁹).

KEY STATISTICS	YEAR			
	2001	2011	2016	2022
Total population	36 321	34 146	35 840	36 968
Young (0-14)	31.7%	32.2%	29%	27.7%
Working Age (15-64)	61.4%	61.4%	63.9%	65.2%
Elderly (65+)	5.7%	6.4%	7.1%	7.1%
Dependency ratio	59.8%	62.9	No data	53.4
Gender ratio	104.8	91.5	No data	91.1
Growth rate	0.05%	-0.62%	1.06%	No data
Population density	No data	4 persons/km ²	No data	No data
Unemployment rate	35.9%	31.4%	No data	No data
Youth unemployment rate	47.5%	40%	No data	No data
No schooling aged 20+	25.2%	11%	6.2%*	10.1%
Higher education aged 20+	5.2%	6.1%	4.1%*	8.5%
Matric aged 20+	12.4%	17.9%	19%*	30.3%
Number of households	9 403	10 793	12 387	10 546
Number of Agricultural households	No data	2 423	No data	No data
Average household size	3.5	3.1	2.9	3.5
Female headed households	38.4%	41.9%	44.8%	No data
Formal dwellings	77.9%	86.6%	93.6%	92.3%
Housing owned/paying off	53%	44.3%	52.9%	No data
Flush toilet connected to sewerage	54.4%	70.5%	88.7%	86.6%
Weekly refuse removal	60.5%	63%	75.4%	65.4%

³⁵ Mohokare Local Municipality (2023). Mohokare Local Municipality Draft Spatial Development Framework 2023/2024. Available at: [https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/townplan/Mohokare%20%20SDF%202023%20-%202024\(1\).pdf](https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/townplan/Mohokare%20%20SDF%202023%20-%202024(1).pdf) [online]. Accessed: January 2024.

³⁶ Mohokare Local Municipality (2023). Mohokare Local Municipality Draft Spatial Development Framework 2023/2024. Available at: [https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/townplan/Mohokare%20%20SDF%202023%20-%202024\(1\).pdf](https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/townplan/Mohokare%20%20SDF%202023%20-%202024(1).pdf) [online]. Accessed: January 2024.

³⁷ StatsSA, 2011b, Mohokare. Available at: https://www.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=993&id=mohokare-municipality [online]. Accessed January 2024.

³⁸ Mohokare Local Municipality (2023). Mohokare Local Municipality Final Integrated Development Plan 2023/2024. Available at: [https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20\(2023\).pdf](https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/idp/FINAL%20IDP%20(2023).pdf) [online]. Accessed January 2024.

³⁹ StatsSA. 2024. Census 2022: Stats by Location: Mohokare. Available at: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/4/2> [online]. Accessed March 2024.

KEY STATISTICS	YEAR			
	2001	2011	2016	2022
Piped water inside dwelling	17%	37.2%	91.9%	32.2%
Electricity for lighting	72.9%	89.7%	92.4%	93%

* Distribution of population aged 5 years and older by level of education

3.3.2.1 Demographics and Economic Profile

The population of the MLM in 2016 was 35 840, thereby accounting for the smallest share (6%) in the district (StatsSA 2016). In 2022, the population of the MLM increased to 36 968, but still being ranked the smallest population size in the XDM (StatsSA, 2024). Approximately 29% of the population was under the age of 15, approximately 63.9% were between the ages of 15 and 64, and approximately 7.1% were 65 years and older in 2016 (MLM IDP, 2023) (Table 3.14). Based on the 2022 Census, the population distribution changed slightly per age group, with 27.7% being in the young age (0-14); 65.2% being in the working age (15-64); and 7.1% being in the elderly age (65+) (Figure 3.33) (StatsSA, 2024). The MLM therefore has a relatively large young population. This creates challenges in terms of creating employment opportunities.

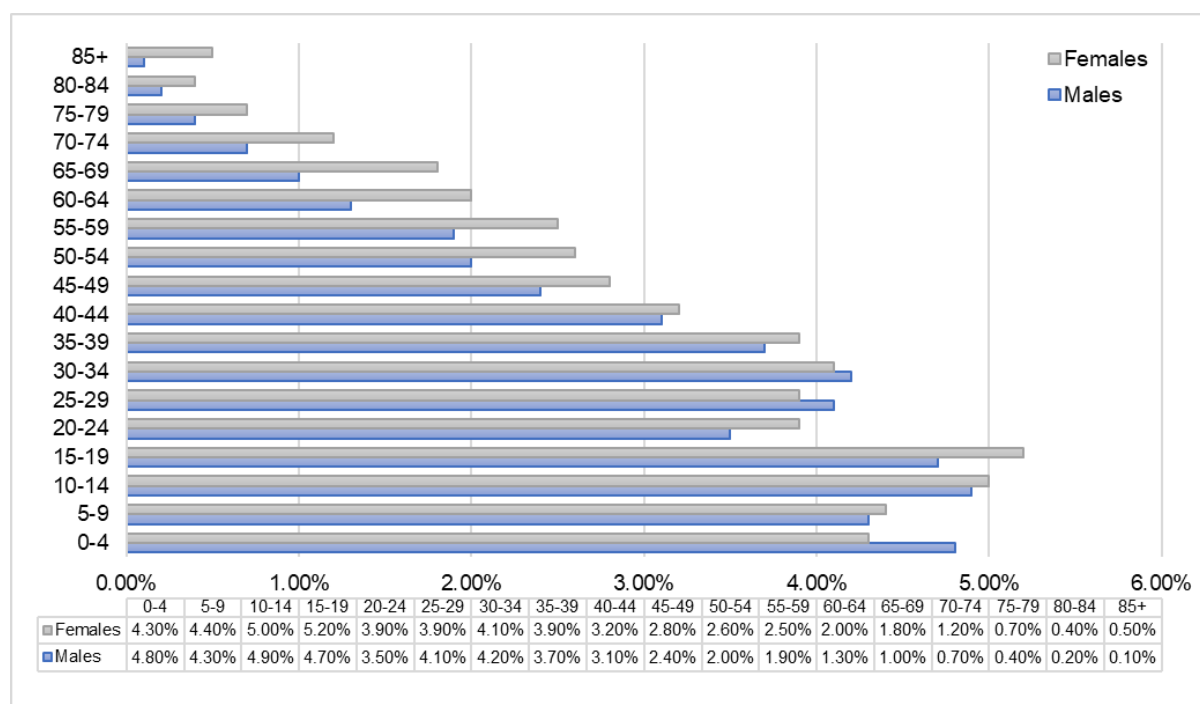


Figure 3.33: Gender and age distributions within the MLM (Redrawn based on StatsSA, 2024).

In terms of race groups, Black Africans made up about 90.8% of the population, followed by Whites (6.5%), Coloureds (2.3%) and Indians/Asians (0.3%) in 2011 (StatsSA, 2011b). In 2011, the main first language spoken in the MLM was Sesotho (63%), followed by IsiXhosa (23.1%) and Afrikaans (8.8%). In 2022, the distribution consisted of 89.7% (Black Africans); 1.9% (Coloureds); 0.3% (Indians/Asians); and 8.0% (Whites) (StatsSA, 2024).

The MLM contributed 28.25% to the XDM GDP in 2017 (XDM IDP, 2022). This is the lowest GDP contribution to the XDM when compared to the remaining two regions within the district. Additionally, the MLM had the highest average annual economic growth at 3.54% between 2007 and 2017 when compared to the remaining regions within the district (XDM IDP, 2022).

3.3.2.2 Education

In terms of the highest education level for all ages in 2011, approximately 4.3% had no schooling, 47.2% had some Primary education, 7.4% completed Primary School, 32.3% had some Secondary education, 6.7% completed Secondary education, and 0.6% had Higher education (StatsSA, 2011b). In terms of highest levels of education (20+ years age group) in 2022, 10.1% had no schooling; 13.0% had some primary education; 5.9% completed primary education; 31.5% had some secondary education; 30.3% completed Grade 12; and 8.5% had Higher education (StatsSA, 2024). The relatively poor education levels in the MLM pose a potential challenge for economic development.

3.3.2.3 Employment and Income

According to the 2011 Census, the MLM had an unemployment rate of 31.4% (StatsSA, 2011b). The figures of the 2011 Census indicate that the majority of the population are not economically active (approximately 8200 people) (Figure 3.34). The unemployment rate for the MLM was lower than the official unemployment rate for the Free State Province (33%) but higher than the unemployment rate for the XDM (27%) for 2011 (StatsSA, 2011c⁴⁰). This reflects the limited employment opportunities in the area, which in turn are reflected in the low income and high poverty levels. However, the COVID-19 pandemic is likely to have resulted in an increase in unemployment rates in the MLM. Recent figures released by StatsSA also indicate that South Africa's unemployment rate is in the region of 32%. The youth unemployment rates are closer to 50%.

⁴⁰ Statistics South Africa (2011c). Statistics South Africa Census 2011 Municipal Report: Free State. Report No. 03-01-52. [online]. Available at: https://www.statssa.gov.za/census/census_2011/census_products/FS_Municipal_Report.pdf. Accessed: January 2024.

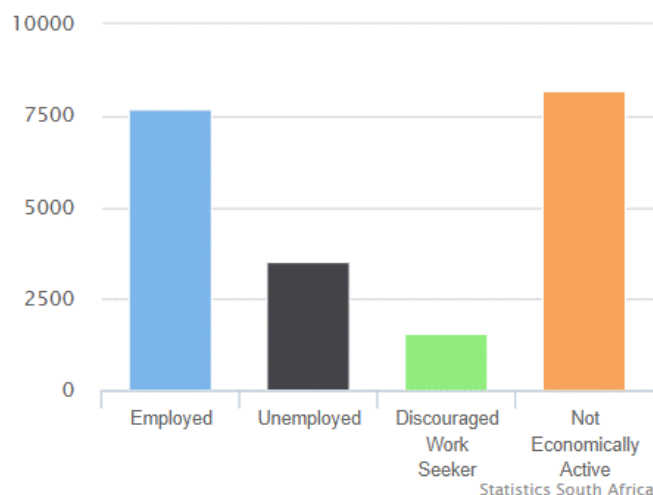


Figure 3.34: Employment status (ages 15 – 64) within the MLM (StatsSA, 2011b).

Based on the data from the 2011 Census, 11% of the population of the MLM had no formal income, 6.1% earned less than R4 800, 10.2% earned between R4 801 and R9 600 per annum, 26.8% earned between R9601 and R19 600 per annum, 21.9% earned between R19 601 and R38 200 per annum, 9.9% earned between R38 201 and R76 400 per annum, 7.2% earned between R76 401 and R153 800 per annum, 4.3% earned between R153 801 and R307 600 per annum, 1.8% earned between R307 601 and R614 400 per annum, 0.5% earned between R614 401 and R 1 228 800 per annum, and 0.2% earned between R 1 228 801 and R 2 457 600 per annum and R 2 457 601 + per annum, respectively (StatsSA, 2011b) (Figure 3.35). According to the Integrated Local Economic Development Plan 2007-2012 for the MLM (MLM, 2015)⁴¹, in 2004, Zastron had the highest percentage of people living in poverty (75.2%), followed by Smithfield (68.4%) and Rouxville (49.6%). These figures are considerably higher than the percentage of people living in poverty for the Free State (55%) (Integrated Local Economic Development Plan 2007-2012 for the MLM, 2015). The low-income levels reflect the limited employment opportunities in the area and dependence on the agricultural sector. This is also reflected in the high unemployment rates.

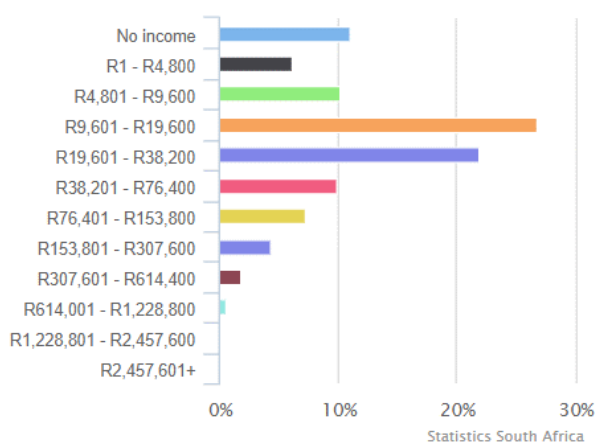


Figure 3.35: Average household income within the MLM (StatsSA, 2011b).

⁴¹ Mohokare Local Municipality (2015). Integrated Local Economic Development Plan 2007-2012: Mohokare Local Municipality. [online]. Available at: <https://www.mohokare.gov.za/documents/led/LED%20Plan%2015-11-06.pdf>. Accessed: January 2024.

Household income levels in the MLM are likely to have been impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic. The number of households in the MLM and XDM that live close to or below the poverty line is likely to have increased over the last three years. This, coupled with the high dependency ratio for the MLM, is a major cause of concern for the area. The low-income levels are a major concern given that an increasing number of individuals and households are likely to be dependent on social grants. The low-income levels also result in reduced spending in the local economy and less tax and rates revenue for the MLM. This in turn impacts on the ability of the MLM to maintain and provide services.

The dependency ratio is the ratio of non-economically active dependents (usually people younger than 15 or older than 64) to the working age population group (15 - 64). The dependency ratios for the MLM, XDM, Free State, and national in 2011 was 62.9%, 59%, 52.9%, and 52.7% (StatsSA, 2011b). In 2022, the dependency ratio was reported at 53.4%. The higher dependency ratio of the MLM reflects the limited employment opportunities in the area and represent a significant risk to the district and local municipality. The high dependency ratio also highlights the importance to maximising local employment opportunities and the key role played by training and skills development programmes.

3.3.2.4 Health and Community Services

The XDM is served by four District Hospitals situated in the towns of Jagersfontein (Diamond District Hospital), Zastron (Embekweni District Hospital), Smithfield (Stoffel Coetzee District Hospital) and Trompsburg (Albert Nzula District Hospital) as well as 17 primary healthcare facilities. Healthcare services within the XDM are primarily provided by clinics and mobile clinics with 23 fixed clinics and 18 weekly mobile clinics offered in three municipalities within the XDM (XDM, 2019). Two of the XDM's District Hospitals fall within the MLM, namely, the Embekweni District Hospital in Zastron and the Stoffel Coetzee District Hospital in Smithfield. The MLM also has three fixed clinics, one weekly mobile clinic and six ambulances; however, there are no community health centres within the MLM (MLM, 2023).

In terms of education the XDM has 70 public schools with no private or independent schools. In addition, the XDM was the only District in the province without a college of its own; however, the Motheo Technical Vocational Education and Training (TVET) College has a satellite campus located in the town of Zastron within the MLM (XDM, 2019). The MLM has a total of 12 existing public schools of which six are primary schools, four are secondary schools and two are combined schools, as well as six libraries (MLM, 2023).

3.3.2.5 Municipal Services

Access to basic services generally increased across the MLM from 2001 to 2016. In 2016, the majority of households had access to electricity for lighting (92.4%), piped municipal water supply inside dwelling/yard (91.9%), flush toilets connected to sewerage (88.7%), and refuse removal (75.4%) (Figure 3.36) (MLM IDP, 2023). The MLM had a significant improvement in the supply of piped water to households between 2011 and 2016, with an increase from 37.2% of households having access to piped water in 2011 to 91.9% of households having access to piped water in 2016 as depicted in Figure 3.36 below. In 2022, access to electricity for lighting increased to 93%, piped municipal water supply decreased significantly to 32.2% flush toilets connected to sewerage decreased slightly to 86.6%, and refuse removal decreased to 65.4% (StatsSA, 2024).

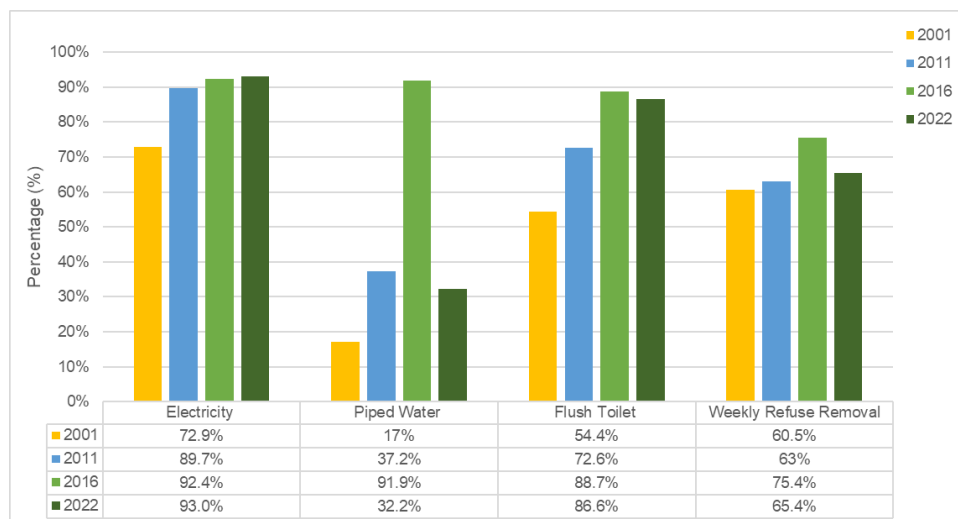


Figure 3.36: Percentage of households with access to basic services within the MLM (Redrawn based on StatsSA, 2011b; MLM IDP, 2023; and StatsSA, 2024).

3.3.3 Study Area Context

The proposed project is located approximately 15 km northwest of Smithfield within the MLM and XDM. Smithfield was founded in 1848 and is the third oldest town in the Free State Province. The N6 National Road between Smithfield and Reddersburg traverses the area and connects Smithfield to Rouxville. The main agricultural activity within the study area and surrounds is open-range merino sheep farming, along with cattle, horses and limited cropland.

The towns of Zastron and Rouxville are located approximately 71 km and 38 km to the east and southeast of Smithfield, respectively. The East London railway line (from Bethlehem to Aliwal North) runs through Zastron and Rouxville.

The study area is situated within the headwaters of the Orange River which runs along the southern boundary of the MLM and forms the border with the Eastern Cape. The Caledon Nature Reserve is located approximately 54 km to the northeast of Smithfield and the Tussen die Riviere Game Farm is located approximately 63 km to the southwest of Smithfield. Refer to Section 3.2.8 of this chapter which explains that there are no protected areas within the study area.

3.4 Eco-Tourism Activities

There are no known nature reserves, guest farms or tourist facilities in the immediate area of the study area (Oberholzer and Lawson, 2024). However, guest facilities in the surrounding areas includes those in Smithfield, located approximately 12 km to the south-east of the study area; at the Welgeval Farm Stay, located approximately 12 km north of the study area; and the Letsatsi Game Lodge, located approximately 25 km to the south of the study area (SLR Consulting, 2023). In addition, Smithfield is regarded as the tourism centre of the MLM with the tourism potential of Smithfield and surrounds being linked to the tourism activities associated with the Smithfield Dam and Golf Course as well as Smithfield's resource and heritage tourism potential (MLM, 2023).

3.5 Civil Aviation

The Screening Tool has indicated that the entire study area is of low sensitivity as it relates to Civil Aviation (Figure 3.37). The low sensitivity was verified during a site visit undertaken in December 2023, whereby no civil aviation features or installations were found within the study area and the development footprints of the proposed project. A Civil Aviation SSV is included in Appendix E.9 of this Scoping Report.

Figure 3.38 indicates the location of the civil aviation features, which informed the SSV. The Landfontein Aerodrome is located approximately 28 km south of the study area, on private land that was inaccessible during the site visit. The Landfontein Aerodrome will not be impacted on by the proposed project due to its distance from the study area, the height of the proposed project infrastructure, as well as other existing high voltage power lines (extending to 40 m high) in the study area.

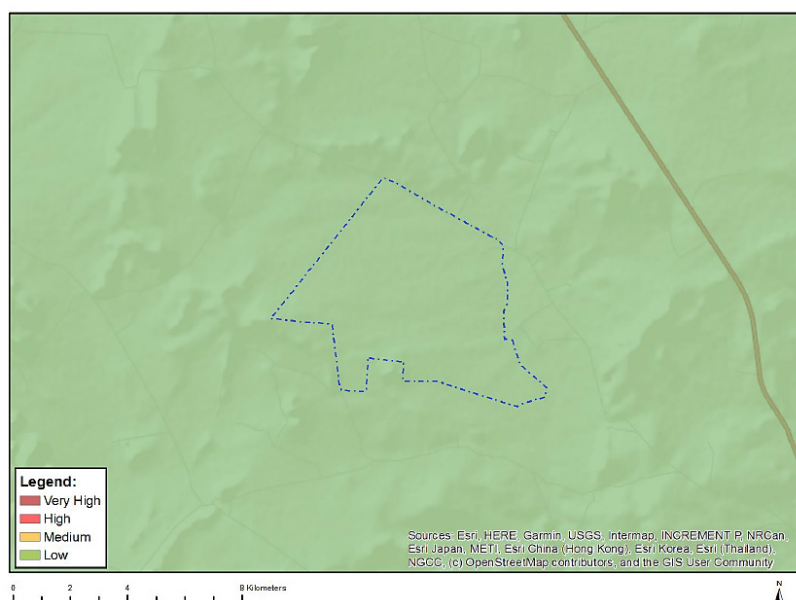


Figure 3.37: Civil Aviation (solar PV) sensitivity of the study area based on the Screening Tool (Source: Screening Tool, 2023).

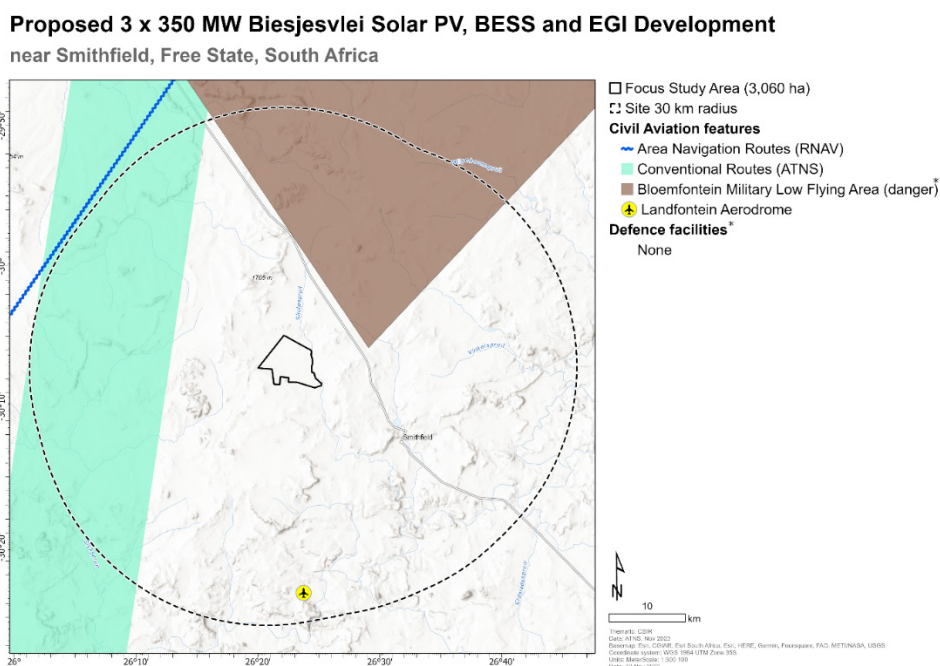


Figure 3.38: Civil Aviation and Defence features relative to the proposed project study area based on the site visit and existing databases.

3.6 Environmental Sensitivity Mapping

Based on the environmental sensitivities identified and verified by the relevant specialists on site during the Scoping Phase (included as Appendix E of this Scoping Report), an overall combined environmental features map (Figure 3.39) and overall combined environmental sensitivity map (Figure 3.40) has been compiled for the study area for the proposed project. This map is based on the worst-case buffers identified in Table 3.15.

The preliminary layouts for Projects 1 to 10 have been overlain onto the sensitivity map to show how they relate to the environmental sensitivities, and how they have been avoided (Figure 3.41). Project specific maps are included in Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report. Refer to Appendix D of this Scoping Report for additional maps relative to the proposed project.

The sensitivity map indicates that the inherent environmental sensitivity of the study area for the proposed project are generally low, medium, and high sensitivity, with some very high sensitivity areas. However, as indicated in Figure 3.41, all no-go areas have been avoided by the proposed project. The study area is suited for the proposed development based on the understanding that measures have been taken to firstly avoid the sensitive features as best as possible, and all aspects to manage or mitigate potential impacts will be taken into consideration and detailed during the EIA Phase.

Table 3.15 provides a summary of the environmental sensitivities identified by the relevant specialists.

Table 3.15: Key Environmental Features and Sensitivities identified by relevant Specialists at Scoping.

Specialist Theme	Sensitivity Description
Agriculture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The entire study area has been confirmed as less than high agricultural sensitivity with a land capability value of 5 to 7. ▪ There are no areas that need to be avoided from an agricultural perspective. ▪ The layout has no relevance to agricultural impact in this case. Croplands towards the north of the study area were purposely avoided by the layout.
Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species	<p>Very High Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The <u>Watercourse habitat</u> is considered as Very High sensitivity and development within these areas must be avoided, with the exception of the expansion of river crossings, where required. It is necessary for linear infrastructure, including power lines and roads (bridge crossings), to traverse watercourses. The impacts and avoidance measures will be addressed in the EIA Phase. These Very High sensitivity areas demarcated by the Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist are a no-go for PV panels and BESS placement. Note the PV and BESS developments are a subject of a separate report. ▪ The <u>Koppies habitat</u> is considered Very High sensitivity and must be avoided by development. A 20 m buffer is applicable. <p><u>Note:</u> The preliminary layout for the proposed project avoids the above sensitive areas.</p> <p>Medium Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The <u>Grassland habitat</u> is considered as medium sensitivity, after all sensitive areas above have been avoided and no transformation takes place. Additional information is provided below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Where aquatic buffers overlap grasslands, these need to be considered and excluded from development. ○ Transformation of the grassland is not supported, but based on the construction methodology which indicates no bulldozing and stripping of topsoil, the PV panels could be considered for development within these regions. Note the PV development is a subject of a separate report.
Aquatic Biodiversity	<p>Very High Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These include the delineated <u>Channelled Valley Bottom (CVB) wetlands</u> with a 19 m buffer zone applied. These areas must be excluded from development activities. Any direct impacts to these systems must be minimised. However, there will be direct unavoidable impacts to these sensitive habitats due to road crossing requirements. It is recommended that appropriate culvert options are investigated and implemented. It is recommended that a single access route over the main CVB wetlands is constructed. No more than one crossing is recommended. ▪ These include the delineated <u>Unchanneled Valley Bottom (UVB) wetlands</u> with a 19 m buffer zone. These systems must be avoided. Only existing crossings structures can be utilised in these areas. Where these are to be utilised, they must be upgraded with suitable culverts. <p>High Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These include the delineated <u>seep wetlands</u> with a 19 m buffer zone applied. These areas must be excluded from development activities. Although these systems are less sensitive it is recommended that crossing permanently wet areas is restricted. Where access routes are required to cross over seep wetlands, these must make use of multiple culverts. <p><u>Note:</u> The preliminary layout for the proposed project avoids the above sensitive areas.</p>
Avifauna	<p>High Sensitivity:</p>

Specialist Theme	Sensitivity Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Drainage line and wetland infusions habitat</u> are considered as High sensitivity. A 100 m buffer is applied. These areas must be excluded from development activities. ▪ <u>Isolated small rocky ridges “koppies” habitat</u> are considered as High sensitivity with respect to avifauna owing to their corridor potential, associated breeding habitat, foraging habitat and forage and refuge resources for avifaunal species. A 150 m buffer is applied. These areas must be excluded from development activities. <p>Medium Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Natural and semi-natural grasslands habitat</u> are considered as medium sensitivity with respect to avifauna owing to their potential to provide nesting habitat and possible hunting/foraging habitat. This is not a no-go area. No buffer is recommended. <p>Low Sensitivity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Agricultural fields and fallow fields habitat</u> are considered as low sensitivity with respect to avifauna. <p><u>Note:</u> The preliminary layout for the proposed project avoids the above sensitive areas.</p>
Visual	<p>The following features are assigned Very High sensitivity (i.e. no-go) and need to be avoided for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo project:</p> <p><u>Scenic Resources:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Topographic features: Feature. ▪ Drainage courses: Feature. ▪ Cultural landscapes: Refer to HIA. <p><u>Protected Landscapes / Sensitive Receptors:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Farmsteads outside site: Within 200 m. ▪ Farmsteads inside site: Within 100 m. ▪ Main District roads: Within 100 m. ▪ Minor District roads: Within 50 m. <p>The above no-go areas do not need to be applied for access roads.</p> <p><u>Note:</u> The preliminary layout for the proposed project avoids the above sensitive areas.</p>

Specialist Theme	Sensitivity Description
Heritage (Archaeology and Cultural Heritage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The following sensitivities were mapped within the study area with relevant buffers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Dark red = Grade IIIA/very high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity. ○ Red = Grade IIIB/high cultural significance – Very High sensitivity. ○ Orange = Grade GPA/medium cultural significance – High sensitivity. ○ Yellow = Grade GPB/low cultural significance – Medium sensitivity. ▪ The Very High and High sensitivity heritage finds are no-go areas and must be avoided from development. <p><u>Note:</u> The majority of the site is of low sensitivity but several small pockets (where heritage resources were found) were considered to be of medium to very high sensitivity. All of the sensitivities identified on site have been avoided by the proposed project.</p>
Palaeontology	<p><u>Note: The information presented below applies equivalently to Projects 1 to 10.</u></p> <p>There are no areas that need to be avoided from a palaeontological perspective. The site visit undertaken by the specialist concluded that the site is of low to very low palaeosensitivity. No fossils were recorded within the proposed project footprints. Fossil sites were recorded along or just outside the eastern edge of the study area. One fossil site lies >20m away from the project footprint and is projected within a riverine ecological buffer zone for key infrastructure placement. If the site lies within 20m of the finally approved project footprint, it should be sampled under a Fossil Collection Permit from the South African Heritage Resources Agency. This is not a fatal flaw for the development.</p>
Geotechnical	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ It must be noted that there are no areas within the study area that should be avoided from a geotechnical sensitivity perspective. However, areas of moderate to steep topography would likely render development financially unfeasible.
Civil Aviation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No sensitive civil aviation features have been identified within the study area.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

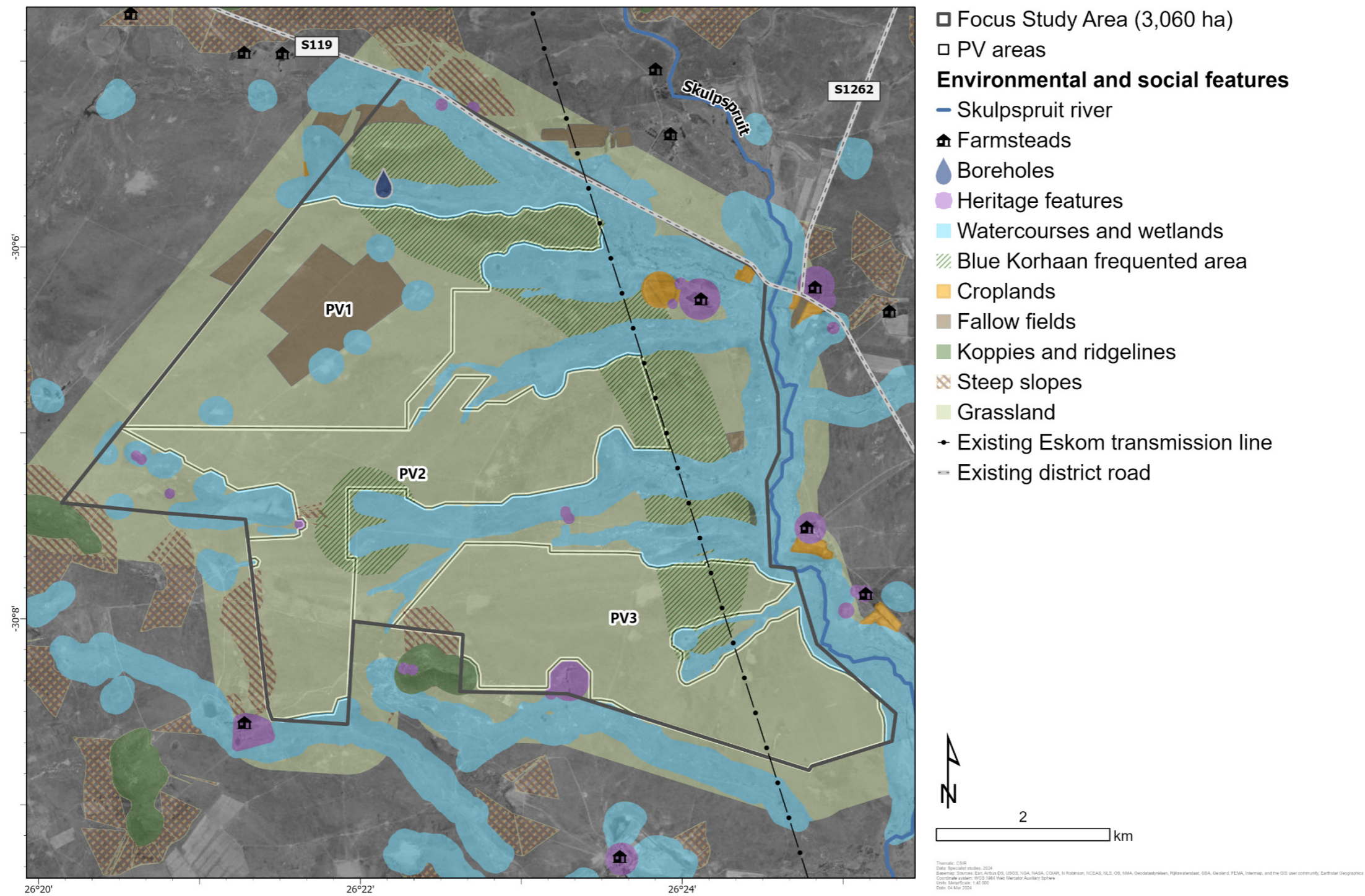


Figure 3.39: Combined environmental feature map for the study area.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

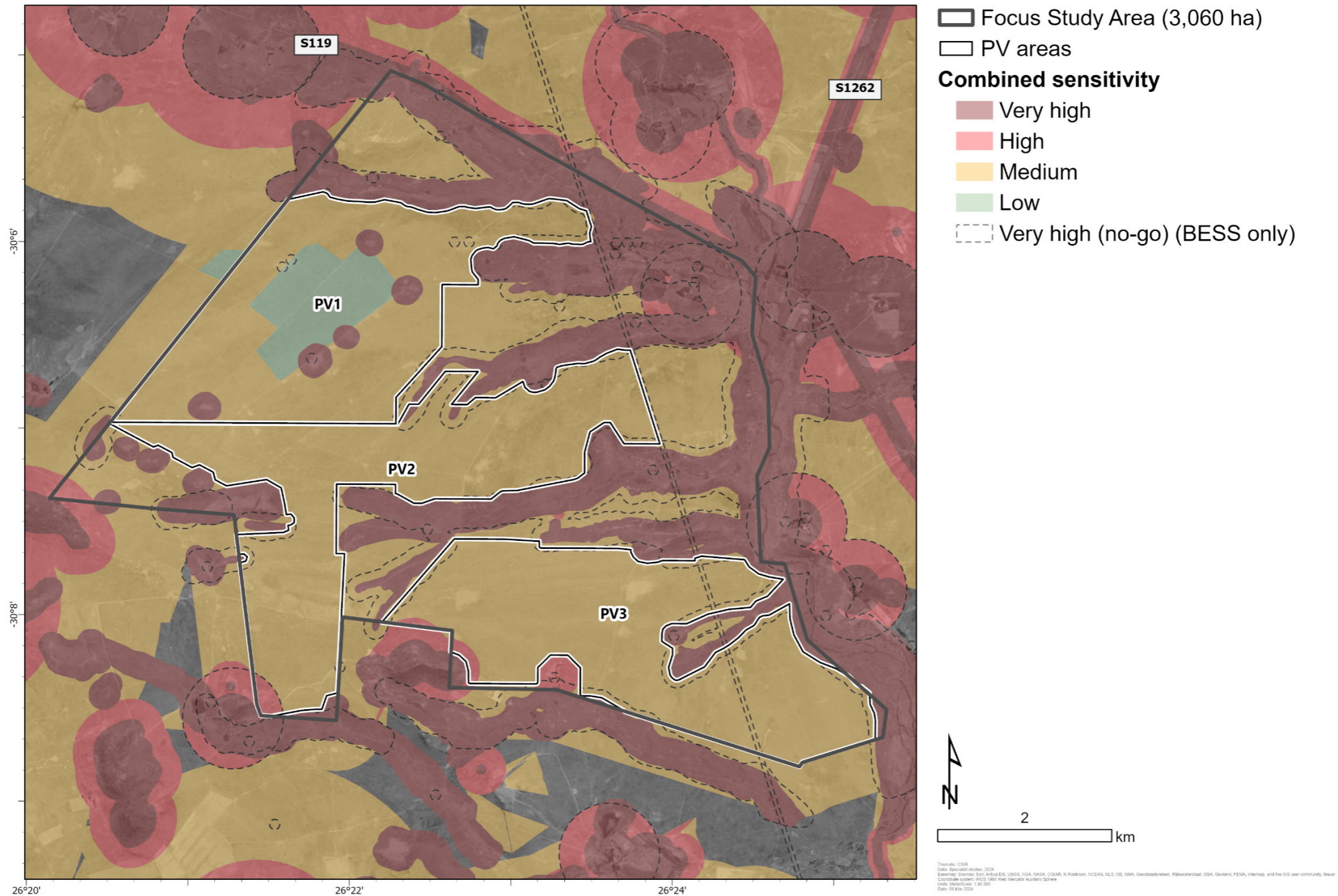


Figure 3.40: Combined environmental sensitivity map for the study area overlaid with PV areas.

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

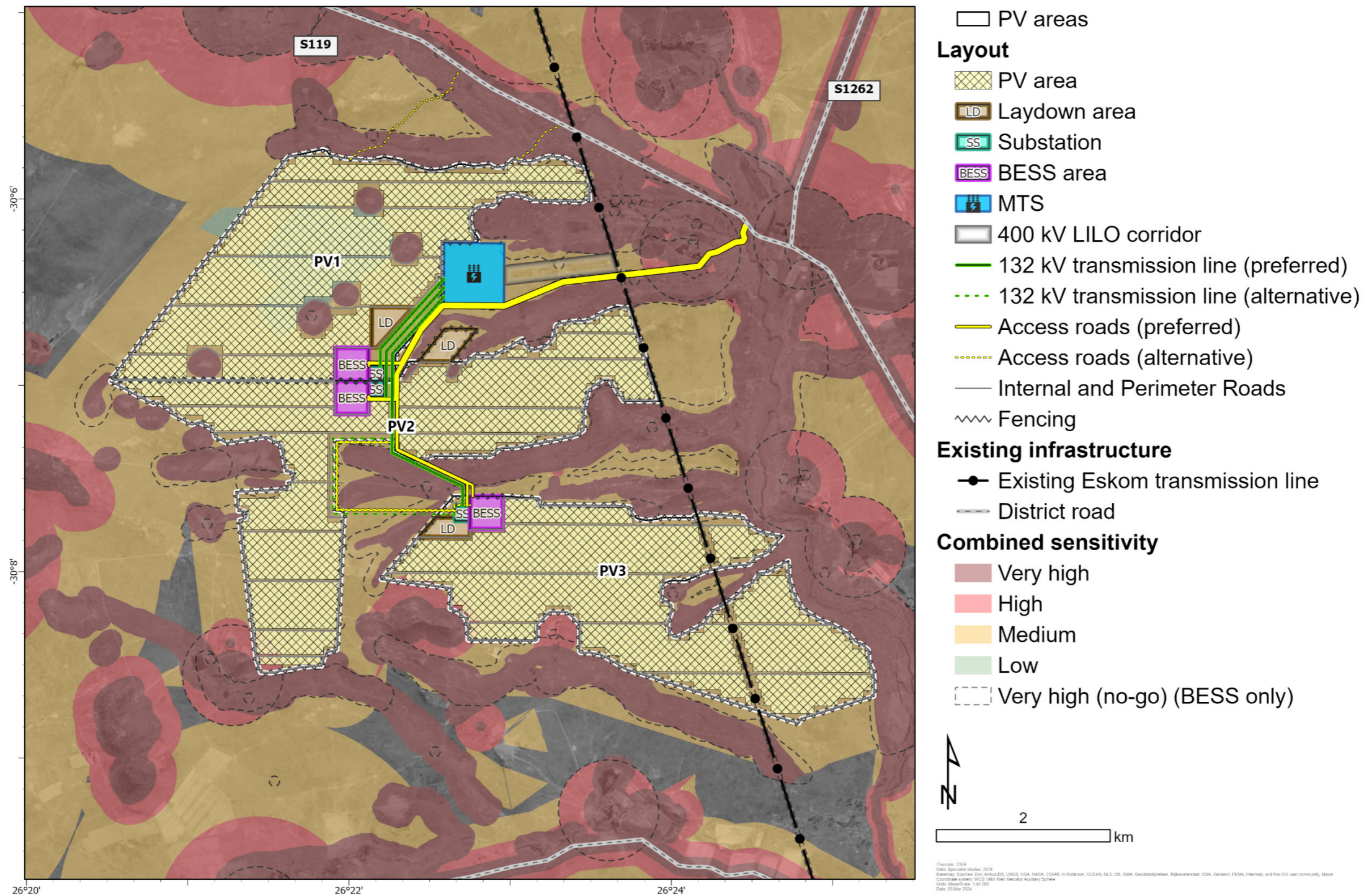


Figure 3.41: Combined environmental sensitivity map for the study area overlain with the layout for Projects 1 to 10.



CHAPTER 4: Approach to EIA Process and Public Participation

Contents

4.	<u>APPROACH TO THE EIA PROCESS AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</u>	4-4
4.1	Legislation, Policies and Guidelines Pertinent to this EIA	4-4
4.1.1	National Legislation	4-4
4.1.1.1	The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)	4-4
4.1.1.2	NEMA and EIA Regulations	4-5
4.1.1.3	GN 960 (published 5 July 2019)	4-6
4.1.1.4	GN 320 (published 20 March 2020)	4-6
4.1.1.5	GN 1150 (published on 30 October 2020)	4-6
4.1.1.6	Solar Exclusion Norm	4-7
4.1.1.7	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004)	4-7
4.1.1.8	The National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)	4-10
4.1.1.9	National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998)	4-12
4.1.1.10	Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983)	4-13
4.1.1.11	Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (Act 70 of 1970)	4-14
4.1.1.12	National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998)	4-14
4.1.1.13	Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997)	4-17
4.1.1.14	Hazardous Substances Act (Act 15 of 1973)	4-17
4.1.1.15	National Environmental Management: Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008, as amended) (NEMWA)	4-17
4.1.1.16	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004)	4-18
4.1.1.17	Astronomy Geographic Advantage (Act 21 of 2007)	4-18
4.1.1.18	Development Facilitation Act (Act 67 of 1995)	4-19
4.1.1.19	Other Applicable Legislation	4-20
4.1.2	Provincial Legislation	4-21
4.1.2.1	Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1969 (Act No. 8 of 1969)	4-21
4.1.2.2	Free State Nature Conservation Bill, 2007	4-21
4.1.3	District and Local Planning Legislation	4-22
4.1.3.1	Environmental Management Framework	4-22
4.1.3.2	Xhariep District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	4-22
4.1.3.3	Guidelines, Frameworks and Protocols	4-22
4.1.4	International Finance Corporation Performance Standards	4-23
4.2	Legal Context for this EIA	4-24
4.3	Screening Tool	4-32
4.3.1	Specialist Assessments Identified by the Screening Tool	4-32
4.3.2	Geotechnical Letter of Opinion	4-36
4.3.3	RFI Assessment	4-36
4.3.4	Summary of Specialist Assessments being undertaken	4-36

4.4	Principles for Scoping and Public Participation	4-38
4.4.1	Objectives of the Scoping Phase	4-38
4.4.2	Introduction to the PPP	4-39
4.4.3	Pre-Application Consultation with the DFFE	4-42
4.4.3.1	Pre-Application Meeting with the DFFE	4-42
4.4.3.2	Request for Report Combination and Multiple EAs	4-42
4.4.4	Landowner Written Consent	4-43
4.4.5	Determination of Appropriate Consultation Measures, and I&AP Identification, Registration and the Creation of an Electronic Database	4-43
4.4.6	Site Notices	4-44
4.4.7	Newspaper Advertisements	4-45
4.4.8	Technical Scoping with the Project Proponent and EIA Team	4-46
4.4.9	Scoping Report Phase	4-46
4.4.9.1	Review of the Scoping Report	4-46
4.4.10	Compilation of the FSR for Submission to the DFFE (Current Stage)	4-50
4.5	Schedule for the Scoping and EIA Processes	4-50

Tables

Table 4.1:	Listed Activities in GN R327, GN R325, and GN R324 that will be potentially triggered by the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure (Project 10)	4-25
Table 4.2:	List of Screening Tool Classifications	4-32
Table 4.3:	List of Specialist Assessments identified by the Screening Tool for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10)	4-33
Table 4.4:	Summary of Specialist Assessments being undertaken	4-37
Table 4.5:	Site Notice Board Placement for the Proposed Projects	4-45
Table 4.6:	Provisional Schedule for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development (Projects 1 to 10)	4-51

Figures

Figure 4.1:	Overview of the Scoping and EIA Process and PPP	4-41
-------------	---	------

4. APPROACH TO THE EIA PROCESS AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

This chapter gives particular attention to the legal context and guidelines that apply to this Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) for the proposed Biesjesvlei Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) project, as well as the steps in the Public Participation Process (PPP) of the Scoping Phase of the EIA¹, in accordance with Regulations 41, 42, 43 and 44 of Government Notice (GN) R326 of the 2014 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) EIA Regulations (as amended), and the schedule for the Scoping and EIA Process.

4.1 Legislation, Policies and Guidelines Pertinent to this EIA

The scope and content of this Scoping Report has been informed by the main legislation, policies, guidelines and information series documents described in this section.

4.1.1 National Legislation

4.1.1.1 *The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)*

The Constitution, which is the supreme law of the Republic of South Africa, provides the legal framework for legislation regulating environmental management in general, against the backdrop of the fundamental human rights. Section 24 of the Constitution states that:

- *“Everyone has the right:*
 - *to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and*
 - *to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures that –*
 - *prevent pollution and ecological degradation;*
 - *promote conservation; and*
 - *secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.”*

Section 24 of the Bill of Rights therefore guarantees the people of South Africa the right to an environment that is not detrimental to human health or well-being, and specifically imposes a duty on the State to promulgate legislation and take other steps that ensure that the right is upheld and that, among other things, ecological degradation and pollution are prevented.

In support of the above rights, the environmental management objectives of the proposed projects are to protect ecologically sensitive areas and support sustainable development and the use of natural resources, whilst promoting justifiable socio-economic development in the towns nearest to the study area².

¹ Note that an integrated PPP is being undertaken for all the Biesjesvlei Projects, hence in some cases this is referred to as “proposed projects”.

² The preferred site for the proposed projects (i.e. Projects 1 to 10) comprises a combined footprint of 3 060 ha, which serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the terms “site” and “study area” are used synonymously in the report. The Buildable Areas and “development footprint” fall within the preferred site (or study area).

4.1.1.2 NEMA and EIA Regulations

Chapter 1, Section 2 of the NEMA sets out several principles to give guidance to developers, private landowners, members of the public and authorities. The proclamation of the NEMA gives expression to an overarching environmental law. Various mechanisms, such as cooperative environmental governance, compliance and non-compliance, enforcement, and regulating government and business impacts on the environment, underpin NEMA. NEMA, as the primary environmental legislation, is complemented by many sectoral laws governing marine living resources, mining, forestry, biodiversity, protected areas, pollution, air quality, waste and integrated coastal management. Principle number 3 determines that a development must be socially, environmentally and economically sustainable. Principle Number 4(a) states that all relevant factors must be considered, *inter alia* i) that the disturbance of ecosystems and loss of biological diversity are avoided, or, where they cannot be altogether avoided, are minimised and remedied; ii) that pollution and degradation of the environment are avoided, or, where they cannot be altogether avoided, are minimised and remedied; vi) that the development, use and exploitation of renewable resources and the ecosystems of which they are part do not exceed the level beyond which their integrity is jeopardised; and viii) that negative impacts on the environment and on peoples' environmental rights be anticipated and prevented, and where they cannot be altogether prevented, are minimised and remedied.

Section 24 (1) of the NEMA, as amended states that *"In order to give effect to the general objectives of integrated environmental management laid down in this Chapter, the potential impact on the environment of listed activities must be considered, investigated, assessed and reported to the Competent Authority charged by this Act with granting the relevant EA"*. The reference to "listed activities" in Section 24 (1) of NEMA relates to the regulations promulgated in GN R982, R983, R984 and R985 in Government Gazette (GG) 38282, dated 4 December 2014, which came into effect on 8 December 2014. These were amended in GN R326, R327, R325 and R324 in GG 40772, dated 7 April 2017. GN R326 contains the regulations for the Environmental Assessment Process. GN R327 and GN R324 includes listed activities that trigger the need for a Basic Assessment (BA) Process, whereas GN R325 includes listed activities that trigger the need for a full Scoping and EIA Process.

The 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) were further amended as follows:

- GG 41766, GN 706 on 13 July 2018;
- GG 43358, GN 599 on 29 May 2020;
- GG 44701, GN 517 on 11 June 2021; and
- GG 45999, GN 1816 on 3 March 2022.

Based on the transitional arrangements, these amendments (where they have been commenced with) apply to the proposed projects as the Applications for Environmental Authorisation (EA) were not submitted before the above amendments took effect (where relevant). The relevant amendments have been taken into consideration in this Scoping and EIA Process.

In terms of the NEMA and the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), a Scoping and EIA Process is required for the proposed development of the Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure. Refer to Section 4.2 of this chapter for additional information on the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

4.1.1.3 GN 960 (published 5 July 2019)

GN 960 was published on 5 July 2019 and came into effect for compulsory use of the National Web Based Environmental Screening Tool (hereafter referred to as the Screening Tool) from 4 October 2019. The notice outlines the requirement to submit a report generated by the Screening Tool, in terms of Section 24(5)(h) of the NEMA and Regulation 16(1)(b)(v) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), when submitting an Application for EA in terms of Regulations 19 and 21 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). As such, the proposed projects were run through the Screening Tool, and the associated reports generated and attached to the Applications for EA, which were submitted to the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) with the Draft Scoping Reports on 8 March 2024. In addition, the findings of the Screening Tool Reports are discussed in the Site Sensitivity Verification (SSV) Reports, where relevant, included in Appendix E of this Scoping Report, as well as Chapters 3 and 4 of this Scoping Report. The Screening Tool Reports are also included in Appendix H of this report.

4.1.1.4 GN 320 (published 20 March 2020)

GN 320 prescribes the general requirements for undertaking SSVs and protocols for the assessment and minimum report content requirements for identified environmental impacts for environmental themes in terms of Sections 24(5)(a) and (h) and 44 of NEMA, when applying for EA. The protocols were enforced within a period of 50 days of publication of the notice i.e. on 9 May 2020.

The Specialist Assessments undertaken as part of this Scoping and EIA Process will comply with GN 320, where applicable, specifically Agriculture, Terrestrial Biodiversity, and Aquatic Biodiversity. Some of the remaining specialist assessments will comply with Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), and where relevant, Part A of GN 320 which contains SSV requirements where a Specialist Assessment is required but no specific assessment protocol has been prescribed. This specifically applies to the Visual; Heritage (Archaeology and Cultural Heritage); and Palaeontology. However, in some instances there are no themes on the Screening Tool that relate to some of these studies and as such sensitivities cannot be verified against the Screening Tool. More information in this regard is included in Appendix E of this Scoping Report. Some of the specialist assessments will comply with the Assessment Protocols published in GN R1150 on 30 October 2020, specifically Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species, Aquatic Biodiversity and Species, and Avifauna (as described below). In addition, a Geotechnical Letter of Opinion has been commissioned, and will also therefore not comply with the aforementioned legislation.

The SSV for Civil Aviation will also comply with GN 320. Additional detail on Civil Aviation is included in Appendix E.9 of this Scoping Report.

4.1.1.5 GN 1150 (published on 30 October 2020)

GN 1150 prescribes procedures and protocols in respect of specific environmental themes for the assessment of, as well as the minimum criteria for reporting on identified environmental themes in terms of sections 24(5)(a) and (h) and 44 of the NEMA, when applying for EA. GN 1150 includes a protocol for the specialist assessment and minimum report content requirements for environmental impacts on a) terrestrial animal species and b) terrestrial plant species. The requirements of these protocols apply from the date of publication (i.e. from 30 October 2020), except where the Project Applicant provides proof to the Competent Authority that the specialist assessment affected by these protocols had been commissioned prior to the date of publication of

these protocols in the GG, in which case Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) will apply to such applications.

The Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment that is being undertaken as part of this Scoping and EIA Process was commissioned following the publication date of the Species Protocols. Therefore, the Terrestrial Animal and Plant Species components will be undertaken in compliance with GN 1150. One combined report will be compiled for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Animal Species and Terrestrial Plant Species. The SSV for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species is included in Appendix E.2 of this Scoping Report. Similarly, the Avifauna Assessment will also comply with GN 1150, and a copy of the SSV is included in Appendix E.4.

GN 1150 was amended in July 2023, in GN 3717, to also remove reference to “terrestrial” species. The Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment considered the GN 3717 amendments, however no aquatic Species of Conservation Concern (SCC) were found during the SSV. The SSV for Aquatic Biodiversity and Species is included in Appendix E.3 of this Scoping Report. One combined report will be compiled for Aquatic Biodiversity and Species in the EIA Phase.

The Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment and the Avifauna Assessment were commissioned in November 2022, before GN 3717 was gazetted in July 2023.

4.1.1.6 Solar Exclusion Norm

The DFFE published the Solar Exclusion Norm for the exclusion of the development and expansion of Solar PV Facilities from the requirement to obtain an EA in GG 50388, GN 4558 on 27 March 2024. This was adopted after the Application Forms for EA for the proposed projects were submitted to the DFFE. As such, based on the transitional arrangements captured in Clause 11.1 of the Norm, the Applications for EA can continue based on the requirements of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). Therefore, the Solar Exclusion Norm does not apply to the proposed projects, unless the current Applications are withdrawn, should the provisions of the Norm be met.

4.1.1.7 National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004)

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004, as amended) (NEMBA) provides for “the management and conservation of South Africa’s biodiversity within the framework of the NEMA, the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection, and the use of indigenous biological resources in a sustainable manner, amongst other provisions”. The Act states that the state is the custodian of South Africa’s biological diversity and is committed to respect, protect, promote and fulfil the constitutional rights of its citizens.

Overall, the NEMBA focuses on the protection of national biodiversity through the regulation of activities that may affect biodiversity including habitat disturbance, culture of and trade in organisms, both exotic and indigenous. Lists of threatened ecosystems (Sections 52 (1) (a)), threatened and protected species (Sections 56 (1)), and alien invasive organisms (Section 97 (1)) have been published and maintained in terms of NEMBA.

Chapter 1 sets out the objectives of the Act, and they are aligned with the objectives of the Convention on Biological Diversity, which are the conservation of biodiversity, the sustainable use of its components, and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits of the use of genetic resources.

The Act also gives effect to CITES, the Ramsar Convention, and the Bonn Convention on Migratory Species of Wild Animals. The State is endowed with the trusteeship of biodiversity and has the responsibility to manage, conserve and sustain the biodiversity of South Africa.

This Act therefore serves to control the disturbance and land utilisation within certain habitats, as well as the planting and control of certain exotic species. Effective disturbance and removal of threatened or protected species encountered on or around the sites, will require specific permission from the applicable authorities.

Furthermore, NEMBA states that the loss of biodiversity through habitat loss, degradation or fragmentation must be avoided, minimised or remedied. The loss of biodiversity includes *inter alia* the loss of endangered, threatened or protected plant and animal species.

4.1.1.7.1 Threatened Ecosystems

GG 34809, GN 1002, published on 9 December 2011 in terms of Section 52 (1) (a) of the NEMBA, provides a list of threatened terrestrial ecosystems categorised as Critically Endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), Vulnerable (VU) and Protected.

However, a revised national list of ecosystems that are threatened and in need of protection was published in GG 47526, GN 2747 on 18 November 2022 in terms of Section 52 (1) (a) of NEMBA. The revised list includes threatened terrestrial ecosystem types that are classed as CR, EN and VU.

The list of threatened ecosystems includes threatened ecosystems based on vegetation types present within these ecosystems. Should a project fall within a listed vegetation type or ecosystem that is listed, actions in terms of NEMBA are triggered. In addition, Listing Notice 3 (GN R324) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) includes Listed Activity 12, for the clearance of an area of 300 m² or more of indigenous vegetation in the Free State, specifically within any CR or EN ecosystem listed in terms of Section 52 of the NEMBA or prior to the publication of such a list, within an area that has been identified as CR in the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment 2004.

Based on feedback from the Terrestrial Biodiversity Specialist, according to Mucina & Rutherford (2006, as amended³), the study area is located in the Aliwal North Dry Grassland (Gh2) vegetation type, which is listed as **Least Threatened** under the Revised List of Threatened Terrestrial Ecosystems (GG 47526, GN 2747, November 2022). Therefore, the above GN and Activity 12 (b) (i) of Listing Notice 3 do not apply to the proposed projects.

4.1.1.7.2 Threatened and Protected Species

The 2007 Threatened or Protected Species Regulations of the NEMBA declares species of high conservation value, national importance or that are considered threatened and in need of protection. Furthermore, the regulations provide for the prohibition of specific restricted activities involving specific listed threatened or protected species.

³ Mucina, L. and Rutherford, M.C. (Eds.) (2006). The vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. Strelizia 19. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.

The list of CR, EN, VU or Protected species was published in GG 29657, GN R151 on 23 February 2007 in terms of Section 56 (1) of the NEMBA. The list was further amended in GG 30568, GN R1187 on 14 December 2007, as well as in GG 43386, GN R627 of 3 June 2020. Should a project include threatened and protected species that are listed, actions in terms of NEMBA are triggered.

Based on the SSV undertaken by the Terrestrial Biodiversity Specialists, the following animal species were recorded on and surrounding the study area:

- Cape Porcupine (*Hystrix africaeaustralis*) - Least Concern;
- Egg-eating Snake (*Dasypeltis scabra*) - Least Concern;
- Drab Thickettail Scorpion (*Parabuthus planicauda*) - Least Concern;
- Karoo Tortoise (*Homopus femoralis*) - Least Concern;
- Zorilla / Striped Polecat (*Ictonyx striatus*) - Least Concern;
- Southern Bat-eared Fox (*Otocyon megalotis* ssp. *Megalotis*) - Least Concern;
- Leopard Tortoise (*Stigmochelys pardalis*) - Least Concern;
- Aardwolf (*Proteles cristata*) - Least Concern; and
- Springbok (*Antidorcas marsupialis*) - Least Concern.

This will be detailed as part of the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment to be undertaken during the EIA Phase.

4.1.1.7.3 Alien and Invasive Species

Chapter 5 of NEMBA (Sections 73 to 75) regulates activities involving invasive species, and lists duty of care as follows:

- the landowner/land user must take steps to control and eradicate the invasive species and prevent their spread, which includes targeting offspring, propagating material and regrowth, in order to prevent the production of offspring, formation of seed, regeneration or re-establishment;
- take all required steps to prevent or minimise harm to biodiversity; and
- ensure that actions taken to control/eradicate invasive species must be executed with caution and in a manner that may cause the least possible harm to biodiversity and damage to the environment.

The Alien and Invasive Species Regulations, published in 2014 and amended in 2020, in terms of the NEMBA provides for the protection of biodiversity through the control and eradication of listed alien and invasive species categorised as follows:

- Category 1a Listed Invasive Species – must be combatted or eradicated;
- Category 1b Listed Invasive Species – must be controlled or ‘contained’ in accordance with the requirements of an Invasive Species Management Programme;
- Category 2 Listed Invasive Species – require a permit to carry out a restricted activity e.g. cultivation within an area;
- Category 3 Listed Invasive Species – species that are less-transforming invasive species, but introduction, trade or transportation should be limited. Category 3 plant species are automatically Category 1b species where located within riparian and wetland areas;
- Exempted Alien Species – species that are not regulated; and

- Prohibited Alien Species – species for which a permit for restricted activities (e.g. inter alia hunting, gathering, breeding, cultivating, trading, transporting) may not be issued.

The Alien and Invasive Species List was published in terms of sections 66(1), 67(1), 70(1)(a), 71(3) and 71A of the NEMBA in GG 40166, GN 864 on 29 July 2016.

In terms of alien invasives, the Terrestrial Biodiversity specialist has noted the presence of alien *Eucalyptus sideroxylon* (Black Ironbark) trees and *Opuntia* species (prickly pear cactus) in the study area.

4.1.1.8 The National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)

The National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) (NHRA) introduces an integrated and interactive system for the management of national heritage, archaeological and palaeontological resources (which include landscapes and natural features of cultural significance).

Parts of sections 35(4), 36(3) (a) and 38(1) of the NHRA apply to the proposed project:

Archaeology, palaeontology and meteorites:

Section 35 (4) – No person may, without a permit issued by the responsible heritage resources authority:

- a) destroy, damage, excavate, alter, deface or otherwise disturb any archaeological or palaeontological site or any meteorite;
- b) destroy, damage, excavate, remove from its original position, collect or own any archaeological or palaeontological material or object or any meteorite;
- c) bring onto or use at an archaeological or palaeontological site any excavation equipment or any equipment which assist in the detection or recovery of metals or archaeological and palaeontological material or objects, or use such equipment for the recovery of meteorites.

Burial grounds and graves:

Section 36 (3) (a) - No person may, without a permit issued by South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) or a provincial heritage resources authority:

- a) destroy, damage, alter, exhume or remove from its original position or otherwise disturb the grave of a victim of conflict, or any burial ground or part thereof which contains such graves;
- b) destroy, damage, alter, exhume, remove from its original position or otherwise disturb any grave or burial ground older than 60 years which is situated outside a formal cemetery administered by a local authority; or
- c) bring onto or use at a burial ground or grave referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) any excavation equipment, or any equipment which assists in the detection or recovery of metals.

Heritage resources management:

38 (1) Subject to the provisions of subsections (7), (8) and (9), any person who intends to undertake a development categorized as:

- a) the construction of a road, wall, power line, pipeline, canal or other similar form of linear development or barrier exceeding 300 m in length;
- b) the construction of a bridge or similar structure exceeding 50 m in length;
- c) any development or other activity which will change the character of the site –
 - (i) exceeding 5 000 m² in extent, or
 - (ii) involving three or more erven or subdivisions thereof; or

- (iii) involving three or more erven or divisions thereof which have been consolidated within the past five years; or
- (iv) the costs of which will exceed a sum set in terms of regulations by SAHRA, or a provincial resources authority;
- d) the re-zoning of a site exceeding 10 000 m² in extent; or
- e) any other category of development provided for in regulations by SAHRA or a provincial heritage resources authority, must at the very earliest stages of initiating such a development, notify the responsible heritage resources authority and furnish it with details regarding the location, nature and extent of the proposed development.

While landscapes with cultural significance do not have a dedicated Section in the NHRA, they are protected under the definition of the National Estate (Section 3). Section 3(2)(c) and (d) list “historical settlements and townscapes” and “landscapes and natural features of cultural significance” as part of the National Estate. Furthermore, Section 3(3) describes the reasons a place or object may have cultural heritage value. Section 38 (2a) of the NHRA states that if there is reason to believe that heritage resources will be affected then an impact assessment report must be submitted.

A Heritage Impact Assessment (including Archaeology and Cultural Landscape) will be undertaken during the EIA Phase in accordance with GN 320 (Part A) and Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). This specialist study will be included in the EIA Report that will be released to Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) for review during the EIA Phase. The Heritage SSV is included in Appendix E.6 of this Scoping Report. Refer to Chapters 3 and 6 of this Scoping Report for additional information regarding heritage.

In terms of Palaeontology, a SSV Report (in terms of Part A of GN 320) was compiled during the Scoping Phase, as included in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report. Based on a site visit, it is concluded that the study area is of Low to Very Low palaeo-sensitivity. Provided that the recommended Chance Fossil Finds Protocol is incorporated into the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) and fully implemented during the construction phase, there are no objections on palaeontological heritage grounds to authorisation of the proposed projects. Pending the discovery of significant, previously unrecorded fossil sites in the construction phase (which can be handled using a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol), the specialist has confirmed that **no further specialist palaeontological studies, reporting, monitoring or mitigation are considered necessary for the proposed projects**. Refer to Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report for additional information.

The Free State Heritage Resources Authority and the SAHRA are required to provide comment on the proposed projects. To this end and to facilitate comment from the relevant heritage authorities, the Draft Scoping Reports were loaded onto the South African Heritage Resources Information System (SAHRIS) on 8 March 2024 at the commencement of the 30-day review period.

SAHRA provided an interim comment for each proposed project as separate EAs are being requested with combined reports for Projects 1 to 9 and a single report for Project 10. The following Case Numbers were assigned:

- Project 1 (Biesjesvlei PV1): 21906;
- Project 2 (Biesjesvlei PV2): 21907;

- Project 3 (Biesjesvlei PV3): 21908;
- Project 4 (Biesjesvlei BESS 1): 21909;
- Project 5 (Biesjesvlei BESS 2): 21910;
- Project 6 (Biesjesvlei BESS 3): 21911;
- Project 7 (Biesjesvlei EGI 1): 21913;
- Project 8 (Biesjesvlei EGI 2): 21915;
- Project 9 (Biesjesvlei EGI 3): 21916; and
- Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO): 21917.

Issues / comments raised by the SAHRA during the 30-day review of the Draft Scoping Reports are included in Appendix G.6 of this Final Scoping Report (FSR). Copies of the comments received from SAHRA during the 30-day review period are captured and responded to as part of the Issues and Responses Trail in Appendix G.7.

SAHRA confirmed that the approach followed for Palaeontology (described above) is acceptable. Therefore, the same Palaeontology SSV will be included in the EIA Phase. Refer to Appendix G.6 of this FSR for a copy of this comment.

Once a final comment has been issued by the heritage authority, the recommendations should be included in the conditions of the EA (should such authorisation be granted). This will essentially give 'permission' from the heritage authority to proceed.

The proposed project may require a permit in terms of the NHRA prior to any fossils or artefacts being removed by professional palaeontologists and archaeologists. If archaeological mitigation is needed, then the appointed archaeologist will need to contact SAHRA and/or the Free State Heritage Resources Authority in order to confirm requirements to conduct the work. The permit application must be carried out well in advance of construction to ensure that there is enough time for the authorities to approve the mitigation work before construction commences. Should professional palaeontological mitigation be necessary during the construction phase, the palaeontologist concerned will need to apply for a Fossil Collection Permit. Palaeontological collection should comply with international best practice. All fossil material collected must be deposited, together with key collection data, in an approved depository (museum / university). Palaeontological mitigation work including the ensuing Fossil Collection reports should comply with the minimum standards specified by SAHRA (2013).

4.1.1.9 National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998)

The National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998, as amended) (NFA) allows for the protection of certain tree species. The Minister has the power to declare a particular tree to be a protected tree. The most recent list of protected tree species was published in March 2024 in GN 4496. In terms of Section 15(1) of the NFA, no person may cut, disturb, damage or destroy any protected tree; or possess, collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any protected tree or any product derived from a protected tree, except under a licence or exemption granted by the Minister to an applicant and subject to such period and conditions as may be stipulated. The DFFE is authorised to issue licences for any removal, cutting, disturbance, damage to or destruction of any protected trees. Therefore, the removal of any protected tree species listed within the NFA will require a tree removal permit, which can be obtained from the DFFE.

Where the proposed projects impact on any of the protected species, a permit for the removal will be required during the pre-construction phase, should EA be granted. This will be detailed during the EIA Phase, if applicable.

In addition, protection of natural forests through gazetted lists of Natural Forests in terms of Sections 7 (2) of the NFA must also be highlighted. In terms of section 7(1) of the NFA, no person may cut, disturb, damage or destroy any indigenous tree in, or remove or receive any such tree from a natural forest except in terms of (a) a license issued under subsection (4) or section 23 of the NFA; or (b) an exemption from the provisions of subsection (4) of the NFA published by the Minister in the Gazette.

4.1.1.10 Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983)

The objectives of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983) (CARA) are to provide for the conservation of the natural agricultural resources of South Africa by the:

- maintenance of the production potential of land;
- combating and prevention of erosion and weakening or destruction of the water sources; and
- protection of the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants.

The CARA states that no land user shall utilise the vegetation of wetlands (a watercourse or pans) in a manner that will cause its deterioration or damage. This includes cultivation, overgrazing, diverting water run-off and other developments that damage the water resource. The CARA includes regulations on alien invasive plants. According to the amended regulations (GN R280 of March 2001), declared weeds and invader plants are divided into three categories:

- Category 1 may not be grown and must be eradicated and controlled,
- Category 2 may only be grown in an area demarcated for commercial cultivation purposes and for which a permit has been issued, and must be controlled, and
- Category 3 plants may no longer be planted, and existing plants may remain as long as their spread is prevented, except within the flood line of watercourses and wetlands. It is the legal duty of the land user or landowner to control invasive alien plants occurring on the land under their control.

Invasive alien species likely to occur on site will be discussed in the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment during the EIA Phase. Alien plant species will be managed in line with the EMP, to be compiled during the EIA Phase.

The Agriculture Specialist has indicated that rehabilitation after disturbance to agricultural land is managed by the CARA. A consent in terms of CARA is required for the cultivation of virgin land. Cultivation is defined in CARA as “any act by means of which the topsoil is disturbed mechanically”. The purpose of this consent for the cultivation of virgin land is to ensure that only land that is suitable as arable land is cultivated. Therefore, despite the above definition of cultivation, disturbance to the topsoil that results from the construction of infrastructure does not constitute cultivation as it is understood in CARA. This has been corroborated by the Directorate: Land and Soil Management of the National Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD). The construction and operation of the proposed projects will therefore not require consent from the DALRRD in terms of this provision of CARA.

4.1.1.11 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (Act 70 of 1970)

The Agriculture Specialist has indicated that two approvals from the DALRRD are required if a proposed development is located on agriculturally zoned land.

The first approval is a No Objection Letter for the change in land use. This letter is one of the requirements for receiving municipal rezoning. This application requires a motivation backed by good evidence that the proposed development is acceptable in terms of its impact on the agricultural production potential of the development site, and the Agricultural Compliance Statement will suffice in this regard. Such an application is being submitted for the proposed projects by the Applicant.

The second required approval is a consent for long-term lease in terms of the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (Act 70 of 1970) (SALA). If the DALRRD approval for the proposed projects has already been obtained in the form of the No Objection Letter, then SALA approval is likely to be readily forthcoming. Note that SALA approval is not required if the lease is over the entire farm portion. In the case of the proposed projects, the total property of the following farms will be leased (hence SALA approval is not required for these properties):

- Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34;
- Farm Ronde Bult 408;
- Farm Modderkuil 396;
- Remaining Extent of Farm Pompoenfontein 118; and
- Portion 1 of Farm Pompoenfontein 118.

However, portions of the following farm portions would also be leased for the proposed projects, in which case SALA approval would be required:

- Farm Benoni 534;
- Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521;
- Farm Biesjesvlei 372;
- Farm Klein Badfontein 369;
- Farm Paalland 373; and
- Farm Salpetervlei 756.

SALA approval can only be applied for once the Municipal Rezoning Certificate and EA have been obtained.

4.1.1.12 National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998)

One of the important objectives of the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998) (NWA) is to ensure the protection of the aquatic ecosystems of South Africa's water resources. Section 21 of this Act identifies certain land uses, infrastructural developments, water supply/demand and waste disposal as 'water uses' that require authorisation (licensing) by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS). Chapter 4 (Part 1) of the NWA sets out general principles for the regulation of water use. Water use is defined broadly in the NWA, and includes taking and storing water, activities which reduce stream flow, waste discharges and disposals, controlled activities (activities which impact detrimentally on a water resource), altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse, removing water found underground for certain purposes, and recreation. In general, a water use must be licensed unless it is listed in Schedule I, is an existing lawful use, is

permissible under a General Authorisation (GA), or if a responsible authority waives the need for a licence. The Minister may limit the amount of water which a responsible authority may allocate. In making regulations the Minister may differentiate between different water resources, classes of water resources and geographical areas.

All water users who are using water for agriculture: aquaculture, agriculture: irrigation, agriculture: watering livestock, industrial, mining, power generation, recreation, urban and water supply service must register their water use. This covers the use of surface- and groundwater.

Section 21 of the NWA lists the following water uses that need to be licensed:

- a) taking water from a water resource;
- b) storing water;
- c) impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;
- d) engaging in a stream flow reduction activity contemplated in section 36;
- e) engaging in a controlled activity identified as such in section 37(1) or declared under section 38(1);
- f) discharging waste or water containing waste into a water resource through a pipe, canal, sewer, sea outfall or other conduit;
- g) disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource;
- h) disposing in any manner of water which contains waste from, or which has been heated in, any industrial or power generation process;
- i) altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse;
- j) removing, discharging or disposing of water found underground if it is necessary for the efficient continuation of an activity or for the safety of people; and
- k) using water for recreational purposes.

Any activities that take place within the outer edge of the 1 in 100 year flood line and /or delineated riparian habitat, whichever is the greatest distance, measured from the middle of the watercourse of a river, spring, natural channel, lake or dam; within a watercourse; within 100 m of the edge of a watercourse; or within 500 m of a delineated wetland boundary, will require a water use authorisation in terms of Section 21 (c) and Section 21 (i) of the NWA.

The GA for Section 21 (c) and (i) water uses as defined under the NWA were revised in 2016 (GN R509) and further revised in December 2023 (GN R4167). Determining if a Water Use Authorisation is required for these water uses is associated with the risk of degrading the ecological status of a watercourse. A low risk of impact could be authorised in terms of a GA.

The Aquatic Specialist has noted that the proposed projects fall within the legislated 500 m regulated area of a watercourse as per the following definition: *Regulated area of a watercourse for Section 21 (c) or (i) of the Act water uses in terms of the Notice means: (c) A 500m radius around the delineated boundary (extent) of any wetland (including pans)*. Considering that the proposed projects will also include construction and formalisation of watercourse crossings, the requirement for a GA or Water Use License is likely triggered. Confirmation of the level of water use authorisation will be detailed in the EIA Phase in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment.

The NWA also provides for measures to prevent, control and remedy the pollution of surface and groundwater sources. The study area is located mainly within quaternary catchment D24H and forms part of the Upper Orange Water Management Area in the Free State. The groundwater GA for the catchment is 75 m³/ha/a (published on 2 September 2016, in GG 40243, GN 538 (i.e. Revision of GA for the taking and storing of water)). If groundwater will be used for the proposed projects, and if more than this is required for the proposed projects, or to source all the water from a single property, then an integrated Water Use Licence Application would be required. However, if the proposed projects are planned appropriately with regards to groundwater use, all the water can be obtained from groundwater, with the use being Generally Authorised. Registration of the usage in terms of the GA with the DWS would be required. This will be undertaken post EA. Additional information will be provided in the Geohydrology Assessment during the EIA Phase.

Should groundwater be used as a water source for the proposed projects, then water pipelines may need to be constructed to transfer groundwater from existing boreholes or they may be transported by trucks from the boreholes to the site. Such pipelines will fall below the relevant thresholds in terms of capacity and diameter as specified in the Listed Activities of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). In addition, groundwater may also need to be stored on site in suitable containers or reservoir tanks during the construction and operational phases. Such storage may trigger the need for a Water Use Authorisation. According to the Revision of GA for the taking of and storing of water published in terms of the NWA, a total of 2000 m³/a can be stored on each property in an open container under the regional GA as long as it is not in a water course. If this is exceeded, then a Water Use Licence would be needed. Therefore, for the proposed projects, it is proposed that a total of 2000 m³/a will be stored at the facility on the affected property in an open container.

In addition, the disposal of sewage from the developed site is likely to be stored in conservancy tanks for removal and treatment at the nearby wastewater treatment works of the local authority. This low volume would be within the GA for Section 21 (g) water use activities.

In terms of GAs or Water Use Licences needed for the proposed projects, these will be undertaken post EA (should such authorisation be granted), as there are various factors to consider, such as confirmation of the selected water source in terms of the various options available; and the fact that the proposed projects still need to be subjected to the competitive REIPPPP. Note that precedent has been set in the sense that EAs for renewable energy projects have been granted positively and are not contingent on the application for Water Use Licence or GA. Nevertheless, the relevant applications will be made by the Applicant, post EA once relevant investigations have been completed.

Follow up emails were sent to the DWS on various occasions, including personalised reminder emails, in order to seek comments during the 30-day comment period for the Draft Scoping Reports. Refer to Appendix G.4 of this FSR for the proof of follow up correspondence. Comments were received from the DWS, as captured in Appendix G.6 of this FSR and responded to in the Issues and Responses Trail in Appendix G.7 of this FSR. Attempts will be made to seek further comments from the DWS during the 30-day comment period in the EIA Phase.

4.1.1.13 Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997)

Water will be required during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the proposed projects. Potable water is only to be utilised for human consumption purposes, whereas greywater is to be used for earthworks, dust suppression, etc. Water will be sourced from the following potential sources: Existing boreholes on site or the Mohokare Local Municipality. Compliance with the Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997) will be undertaken during the relevant phase of the proposed projects, in consultation with the local and district municipalities.

4.1.1.14 Hazardous Substances Act (Act 15 of 1973)

During the proposed projects, fuel and diesel will be utilised to power vehicles, generators and equipment. In addition, potential spills of hazardous materials could occur during the relevant phases. Such management actions will be recommended in the EMPr during the EIA Phase, which will be included as an Appendix to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

4.1.1.15 National Environmental Management: Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008, as amended) (NEMWA)

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008, as amended) (NEM:WA) was published with one of the main objectives to reform the law regulating waste management in order to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development. Section 19 of the NEM:WA allows the Minister to publish a List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are likely to have, a detrimental effect on the environment published. Such a list specifies the waste management activities that will require a Waste Management Licence.

The List of Waste Management Activities was originally published in GN 921 on 29 November 2013, and thereafter amended in GN 332 on 2 May 2014; GN 633 on 24 July 2015; GN 1094 on 11 October 2017; and GN 1757 on 11 February 2022. The List of Waste Management Activities include Categories A, B and C. If any waste management activities listed in Category A are triggered by a development, a BA process must be undertaken in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), as part of the Waste Management Licence application. Waste management activities in Category B will, however, require a full Scoping and EIA Process in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), as part of the Waste Management Licence application. If any of the waste management activities in Category C are triggered, then the relevant Norms and Standards must be followed.

Based on a review of the project description, the proposed projects will **not** trigger the need for a Waste Management Licence. However, general and hazardous waste will be generated during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases, which will require proper management. Such management actions will be recommended in the EMPr during the EIA Phase, which will be included as an Appendix to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

4.1.1.16 National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004)

The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004, as amended) (NEM: AQA) was published in 2004 and came into full effect on 31 March 2010, when the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act (Act 45 of 1965) (APPA) was repealed. The NEM: AQA was published with the overall objective to:

- *“reform the law regulating air quality in order to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development;*
- *provide for national norms and standards regulating air quality monitoring, management and control by all spheres of government; for specific air quality measures; and for matters incidental thereto”.*

The list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage was published under GN 248, GG 33064 dated 31 March 2010 and thereafter amended in GN 893, GG 37054 dated 22 November 2013. The list of activities was further amended in GN 551, GG 38863 dated 12 June 2015; GN 1207, GG 42013 dated 31 October 2018; GN 687, GG 42472 dated 22 May 2019; and GN 421, GG 43174 dated 27 March 2020.

Section 22 of the NEM: AQA deals with the consequences of listing, and it states that “no person may without a provisional atmospheric emission licence, or an atmospheric emission licence conduct an activity (a) listed on the national list anywhere in the Republic; or (b) listed on the list applicable in a province anywhere in that province”. Therefore, a Provisional Atmospheric Emissions Licence (AEL) and/or AEL is required for any plant or proposed development that triggers a listed activity.

Based on a review of the project description, the proposed projects will **not** trigger the need for an AEL. However, the proposed stockpiling activities, including earthworks, may result in the unsettling of, and temporary exposure to, dust. Appropriate dust control methods will need to be applied. Such management actions will be recommended in the EMPr during the EIA Phase, which will be included as an Appendix to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

4.1.1.17 Astronomy Geographic Advantage (Act 21 of 2007)

The Astronomy Geographic Advantage (AGA) Act (Act 21 of 2007) aims to provide for the preservation and protection of areas within the Republic that are uniquely suited for optical and radio astronomy; to provide for intergovernmental co-operation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas; and to provide for matters connected therewith. The purpose of the AGA Act is to preserve the geographic advantage areas that attract investment in astronomy. The AGA Act also notes that declared astronomy advantage areas are to be protected and properly maintained in terms of Radio Frequency Interference (RFI). The AGA Act is administered by the Department of Higher Education, Science and Technology (previously the Department of Science and Technology).

According to the CSIR Wind and Solar Phase 2 SEA (Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF), 2019: Part 3, Page 2⁴), the majority of the mid-frequency dish array of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) will be constructed in the core which is located in the Northern Cape; with dish antennas being located in the spiral arms. The South African component of the SKA will consist of approximately 3 000 receptors comprising dish antennas, each with a diameter of 15 m, and radio receptors known as dense aperture-arrays. The outer stations in the spiral arms will extend beyond the borders of South Africa and at least 3 000 km from the core area. About 80% of the receptors, including a dense core and up to 5 spiral arms, will be located in the Karoo Central Astronomy Advantage Area (KCAAA) (DEFF, 2019²: Part 3, Page 2).

The KCAAA, which is located between Brandvlei, Van Wyksvlei, Carnarvon and Williston in the Northern Cape Province, was officially declared in 2014 by the Minister of Science and Technology in terms of the AGA Act for the purposes of protection RFI and Electromagnetic Interference (EMI). The declaration of the KCAAA ensures the long-term viability of the area to be used for astronomical installations (DEFF, 2019²: Part 3, Page 2).

PV installations are known to have unintentional radiated emissions from electrical and electronic equipment that have the potential to interfere with the SKA Radio Telescope project in the Northern Cape. This can result in interference to celestial observations and/or data loss. Such interference is typically referred to as RFI (DEFF, 2019²: Part 3, Page 2).

The proposed project study area is not located within the KCAAA, and therefore not expected to have any significant impacts on the SKA. Refer to the locality map provided in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report for additional information in this regard.

The South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) / SKA Office have been pre-identified as a key stakeholder and therefore included on the project database of I&APs (as shown in Appendix F of this Scoping Report). Veroniva has also communicated with the SARAO in order to request a letter confirming the risk of interference to the nearest SKA radio telescope by the proposed projects, and to determine if the SARAO has any objection to the proposed projects. The SARAO confirmed that the proposed projects are located outside of the Northern Cape Province and in particular outside of the declared Astronomy Advantage Areas. SARAO further confirmed that the relevant regulations promulgated in terms of the AGA Act would not apply and the proposed projects are low risk to the SKA telescope. Refer to Appendix H for a copy of this correspondence.

4.1.1.18 Development Facilitation Act (Act 67 of 1995)

The Development Facilitation Act (Act 67 of 1995) (DFA) sets out a number of key planning principles which have a bearing on assessing proposed developments in light of the national planning requirements. The planning principles most applicable to the study area include:

- Promoting the integration of the social, economic, institutional and physical aspects of land development;
- Promoting integrated land development in rural and urban areas in support of each other;

⁴ Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF), 2019. Phase 2 Strategic Environmental Assessment for wind and solar PV energy in South Africa. CSIR Report Number: CSIR/SPLA/SECO/ER/2019/0085 Stellenbosch, Western Cape.

- Promoting the availability of residential and employment opportunities in close proximity to or integrated with each other;
- Optimising the use of existing resources including such resources relating to agriculture, land, minerals, bulk infrastructure, roads, transportation and social facilities;
- Contributing to the correction of the historically distorted spatial patterns of settlement in the Republic and to the optimum use of existing infrastructure in excess of current needs;
- Promoting the establishment of viable communities; and
- Promoting sustained protection of the environment.

4.1.1.19 Other Applicable Legislation

Other applicable national legislation that may apply to the proposed project include:

- Advertising on Roads and Ribbons Act (Act 21 of 1940);
- Electricity Act (Act 41 of 1987), as amended;
- Electricity Regulations Amendments (August 2009);
- Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (Act 2 of 2000);
- Civil Aviation Act (Act 13 of 2009) and Civil Aviation Regulations (CAR) of 1997;
- Civil Aviation Authority Act (Act 40 of 1998);
- White Paper on Renewable Energy (2003);
- Integrated Resource Plan for South Africa (2019);
- Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993), as amended by Occupational Health and Safety Amendment (Act 181 of 1993)⁵;
- Road Safety Act (Act 93 of 1996);
- Fencing Act (Act 31 of 1963);
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (NEM:PA) (Act 57 of 2003); and
- National Road Traffic Act (Act 93 of 1996).

⁵ The proposed Battery Energy Storage System (BESS) must be designed, operated, maintained and decommissioned according to the requirements of Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993).

4.1.2 Provincial Legislation

4.1.2.1 Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1969 (Act No. 8 of 1969)

This Act aims at improving sustainability in terms of balancing natural resource usage and protection or conservation thereof. It includes eight schedules, respectively:

- Schedule 1 – Protected Game;
- Schedule 2 – Ordinary Game;
- Schedule 3 – Specified Wild Animals;
- Schedule 4 – Exotic Animals to which the Provisions of Section 19 (1) (b) apply;
- Schedule 5 – Aquatic Plants;
- Schedule 6 – Protected Plants;
- Schedule 7 – Ordinances Repealed; and
- Schedule 8 – Hunting at Night.

With regards to protected plants, the ordinance includes a list of protected flora. Relocation permits will be required from the Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEА) under the Ordinance, should the final development footprint of the proposed projects necessitate the removal or relocation of protected plant species. Additional information will be provided in the EIA Phase in the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment.

The Free State DESTEА, serving as the provincial authority for issuing of the relevant permits, has been pre-identified as a key stakeholder and is included on the project database (as shown in Appendix F of this Scoping Report). Efforts have been made to seek comments from the DESTEА on the Draft Scoping Reports. Comments received from DESTEА are included in Appendix G.6 of this FSR and responded to in Appendix G.7 (Issues and Responses Trail).

4.1.2.2 Free State Nature Conservation Bill, 2007

This bill provides for the conservation of fauna and flora and the hunting of animals causing damage and for matters incidental thereto. This includes lists of protected fauna and protected flora. Refer to the section above on the Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance for an overview of permit requirements.

4.1.3 District and Local Planning Legislation

4.1.3.1 Environmental Management Framework

Research indicates that there is no Environmental Management Framework (EMF) for the Xhariep District Municipality. The Screening Tool also notes that no intersections with EMF areas have been found.

4.1.3.2 Xhariep District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)

The Xhariep District Municipality (XDM) Integrated Development Plan (IDP) 2023 – 2024 notes the following strategic goals for the municipality (XDM, 2023⁶, Page 90):

- *“Provision of sustainable and accessible basis services to all;*
- *Provide a safe, healthy environment;*
- *Promote economic growth and job creation;*
- *Promote good governance, organisational development and financial sustainability”.*

The proposed projects are in line with the XDM IDP because it will enable the XDM to achieve environmental sustainability. Furthermore, the proposed projects are aligned with one of the objectives of the IDP in that it will encourage local economic growth through increased investment and employment opportunities. The proposed projects will create job opportunities and economic spin offs during the construction and operational phases (if EA is granted by the DFFE).

4.1.3.3 Guidelines, Frameworks and Protocols

The following guidelines, frameworks and protocols are applicable to the proposed projects:

- Guidelines published in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations, in particular:
 - Guideline on Alternatives (DEA, 2014);
 - Guideline on Transitional Arrangements (Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEA&DP), 2013);
 - Guideline on Alternatives (DEA&DP, 2013);
 - Guideline on Public Participation (DEA, 2012; DEA&DP, 2013; DEA, 2017);
 - National Noise Control Regulations (GN R154 of 1992) and SANS 10103:2008;
 - Guideline on Need and Desirability (DEA&DP, 2013; DEA, 2017);
- Information Document on Generic Terms of Reference for Environmental Assessment Practitioners (EAPs) and Project Schedules (March 2013);
- Integrated Environmental Management Information Series (Booklets 0 to 23) (Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEAT), 2002 – 2005);
- Guidelines for Involving Specialists in the EIA Processes Series (DEA&DP; CSIR and Tony Barbour, 2005 – 2007);
- BirdLife South Africa (BLSA) 2017 Guidelines for assessing and monitoring the impact of solar power generating facilities on birds in southern Africa;
- Species Environmental Assessment 2020 Guideline: Guidelines for the implementation of the Terrestrial Fauna and Terrestrial Flora Species Protocols for EIAs in South Africa. South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI);
- United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (1997); and
- Kyoto Protocol (which South Africa acceded to in 2002).

⁶ Xhariep District Final Integrated Development Plan (IDP) 2023 – 2024. 2023. Available: <http://www.xhariep.fs.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/2023/07/FINAL-IDP-2023-24.pdf>. [online] Accessed: November 2023.

4.1.4 International Finance Corporation Performance Standards

In order to promote responsible environmental stewardship and socially responsible development, the proposed projects will as far as practical, incorporate the environmental and social policies of the International Finance Corporation (IFC). These policies provide a frame of reference for lending institutions to review environmental and social risks of projects, particularly those undertaken in developing countries.

Through the Equator Principles, the IFC's standards are now recognised as international best practice in project finance. The IFC screening process categorises projects into A, B or C in order to indicate relative degrees of environmental and social risk. The categories are:

- *Category A* - Projects expected to have significant adverse social and/or environmental impacts that are diverse, irreversible, or unprecedented;
- *Category B* - Projects expected to have limited adverse social and/or environmental impacts that can be readily addressed through mitigation measures; and
- *Category C* - Projects expected to have minimal or no adverse impacts, including certain financial intermediary projects.

Accordingly, projects such as the proposed Biesjesvlei developments are categorised as Category B projects. The EIA Process for Category B projects examines the project's potential negative and positive environmental impacts. As required for Category B projects, a Scoping and EIA Process is being undertaken.

Other Acts, standards and/or guidelines which may also be applicable will be reviewed in more detail as part of the specialist studies to be conducted for the EIA Process.

4.2 Legal Context for this EIA

In terms of the NEMA and the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), a full Scoping and EIA Process is required for the proposed projects.

Note that the proposed projects are not located within any of the 11 Renewable Energy Development Zones (REDZs) gazetted in GN 114 on 16 February 2018 and GN 144 on 26 February 2021. In addition, the proposed projects are not located within any of the Strategic Transmission Corridors that were gazetted in GN 113 on 16 February 2018 and GN 1637 on 24 December 2021. Therefore, a full Scoping and EIA Process is being undertaken for the proposed projects.

All the listed activities forming part of this proposed development and therefore requiring EA have been included in the Application Form for EA, which has been prepared and submitted to the DFFE with this Scoping Report. The listed activities triggered by Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO project are indicated in Table 4.1.

The following must be considered in terms of listed activities:

- The Free State DESTEA has confirmed, in writing, that the 2015 and 2019 Free State Province Biodiversity Plans (FSPBP) have not been formally adopted by the FS DESTEA and will therefore not trigger activities listed under Listing Notice 3. Furthermore, the Free State DESTEA has confirmed that no bioregional plans exist for the province. A copy of this correspondence is included in Appendix G.3 of this FSR. Therefore, it is understood that the following listed activities are not applicable to the proposed projects in relation to Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) or Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) identified in systematic biodiversity plans adopted by the competent authority or in bioregional plans:
 - Activity 4 (b) (i) (ee);
 - Activity 12 (b) (ii);
 - Activity 14 (ii) (a) and (c); (b), (i) (ff);
 - Activity 18 (b) (i) (ee); and
 - Activity 23 (ii) (a) (c) (b) (i) (ee).

The DFFE Biodiversity and Conservation Branch: Directorate: Biodiversity Mainstreaming and EIA provided comments during the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Report and confirmed that they do not have any objections to the Draft Scoping Report and Plan of Study for EIA. The DESTEA Environmental Management Department also provided comments on the Draft Scoping Report and confirmed that in general the Draft Scoping Report is accepted by the Department. Refer to Appendix G.6 of this FSR for copies of this correspondence from DFFE and DESTEA. Furthermore, these comments have been included in the Issues and Responses Trail in Appendix G.7 of this FSR. Refer to the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species SSV (Appendix E.2) and the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species SSV (Appendix E.3) for additional information regarding CBAs and ESAs.

Table 4.1: Listed Activities in GN R327, GN R325, and GN R324 that will be potentially triggered by the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS, LILO and associated infrastructure (Project 10)

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
Listing Notice 1, GN R327		
<p>Activity 9 (i) and (ii)</p>	<p>The development of infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water or storm water:</p> <p>(i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or more; or (ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more;</p> <p>excluding where:</p> <p>(a) such infrastructure is for bulk transportation of water or storm water or storm water drainage inside a road reserve or railway line reserve; or (b) where such development will occur within an urban area.</p>	<p>The proposed project will include the development of stormwater infrastructure that will exceed 1 km in length with an internal diameter of more than 0.36 m and a throughput of more than 120 litres/second.</p> <p>The proposed project will take place outside of an urban area. It will be constructed on various affected farm portions, north-west of the town of Smithfield, in the Mohokare Local Municipality and Xhariep District Municipality, in the Free State Province.</p>
<p>Activity 12 (ii) [(a) and (c)]</p>	<p>The development of:</p> <p>(ii) infrastructure or structures with a physical footprint of 100 square metres or more;</p> <p>where such development occurs:</p> <p>(a) within a watercourse; (c) if no development setback exists, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse;</p> <p>excluding:</p> <p>(aa) the development of infrastructure or structures within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour; (bb) where such development activities are related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies;</p>	<p>The proposed project will entail the construction of various infrastructure and structures (such as, but not limited to, independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS), building infrastructure (Operational and Maintenance (O&M) building and offices), fencing, internal roads, 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO), service road for the LILO, access roads, storm water channels, and laydown area etc.).</p> <p>Where existing or new access roads cross drainage features, new culverts, bridges or structures may be required. Additional detail regarding this will be provided in the EIA Phase.</p> <p>The footprint of the MTS covers approximately 36 ha. These infrastructure and structures will exceed a footprint of 100 m² and some may occur within small drainage features, watercourses, and wetlands, and within 32 m of these aquatic features, which have been delineated by the aquatic specialist.</p> <p>The proposed project will take place outside of an urban area. It will be constructed on various affected farm portions, north-west of the town of</p>

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
	<p>(cc) activities listed in activity 14 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 or activity 14 in Listing Notice 3 of 2014, in which case that activity applies;</p> <p>(dd) where such development occurs within an urban area;</p> <p>(ee) where such development occurs within existing roads, road reserves or railway line reserves; or</p> <p>(ff) the development of temporary infrastructure or structures where such infrastructure or structures will be removed within 6 weeks of commencement of the development and where indigenous vegetation will not be cleared.</p>	<p>Smithfield, in the Mohokare Local Municipality and Xhariep District Municipality, in the Free State Province.</p>
Activity 19	<p>The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from a watercourse; but excluding where such infilling, depositing, dredging, excavation, removal or moving-</p> <p>a) will occur behind a development setback;</p> <p>b) is for maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan;</p> <p>c) falls within the ambit of activity 21 in this Notice, in which case that activity applies;</p> <p>d) occurs within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour; or</p> <p>e) where such development is related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies.</p>	<p>The proposed project may entail the excavation, removal and moving of more than 10 m³ of soil, sand, pebbles or rock from nearby small drainage features, watercourses, and wetlands. The proposed project may also entail the infilling of more than 10 m³ of material into the nearby aquatic features. The aquatic features have been delineated by the aquatic specialist. This will occur as a result of development of the proposed MTS, LILo and associated infrastructure, including the development of access roads, service roads and drainage line crossings.</p>
Activity 28 (ii)	<p>Residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional developments where such land was used for agriculture, game farming, equestrian purposes or afforestation on or after 01 April 1998 and where such development:</p> <p>(ii) will occur outside an urban area, where the total land to be developed is bigger than 1 hectare;</p> <p>excluding where such land has already been developed for residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional purposes.</p>	<p>The proposed project will take place outside of an urban area. It will be constructed on various affected farm portions, north-west of the town of Smithfield, in the Mohokare Local Municipality and Xhariep District Municipality, in the Free State Province.</p> <p>The land within the study area is currently being used for livestock grazing and agriculture.</p> <p>The proposed MTS, which is considered a commercial/industrial development, will have a footprint in excess of 1 ha (approximately 36 ha). The service road</p>

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
		for the 400 kV LILO and access road will also have a footprint in excess of 1 ha. This will constitute infrastructure with a physical footprint of more than 1 ha.
<p>Activity 48 (i) [(a) and (c)]</p>	<p>The expansion of:</p> <p>(i) infrastructure or structures where the physical footprint is expanded by 100 square metres or more;</p> <p>where such expansion occurs -</p> <p>(a) within a watercourse;</p> <p>(c) if no development setback exists, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse;</p> <p>excluding-</p> <p>(aa) the expansion of infrastructure or structures within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour;</p> <p>(bb) where such expansion activities are related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies;</p> <p>(cc) activities listed in activity 14 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 or activity 23 in Listing Notice 3 of 2014, in which case that activity applies;</p> <p>(dd) where such expansion occurs within an urban area; or</p> <p>(ee) where such expansion occurs within existing roads, road reserves or railway line reserves.</p>	<p>The proposed project study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads. Specifically, three access route options are being considered: Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which is routed along the N6; S1262; and S119. Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Existing roads will be used as far as practically achievable.</p> <p>The Traffic Specialist has noted that, based on preliminary investigations, the N6, S1262, and S119 roads leading to the study area are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening may be required at localised positions as required (i.e. intersections). Such widening is discussed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Intersection S1262 and S119:</u> Road widening by approximately 9 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A:</u> Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B:</u> Road widening by approximately 7 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C:</u> Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. <p>The intersection widening is regarded as expansion of infrastructure by more than 100 m².</p> <p>The intersection widening may occur within small drainage features, watercourses, and wetlands, and within 32 m of these aquatic features, which have been delineated by the aquatic specialist. Additional detail will be provided during the EIA Phase.</p>

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
<p>Activity 56 (i)</p>	<p>The widening of a road by more than 6 metres, or the lengthening of a road by more than 1 kilometre -</p> <p>(i) where the existing reserve is wider than 13,5 meters;</p> <p>excluding where widening or lengthening occur inside urban areas.</p>	<p>The proposed project study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads. Specifically, three access route options are being considered: Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which is routed along the N6; S1262; and S119. Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Existing roads will be used as far as practically achievable.</p> <p>The Traffic Specialist has noted that, based on preliminary investigations, the N6, S1262, and S119 roads leading to the study area are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening may be required at localised positions as required (i.e. intersections). Such widening is discussed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Intersection S1262 and S119:</u> Road widening by approximately 9 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 6 m in this regard. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A:</u> Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 6 m in this regard. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B:</u> Road widening by approximately 7 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 6 m in this regard. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C:</u> Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 6 m in this regard. <p>No road will need to be lengthened by more than 1 km at these access routes.</p>

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
Listing Notice 2, GN R325		
Activity 9	<p>The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity with a capacity of 275 kilovolts or more, outside an urban area or industrial complex excluding the development of bypass infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity where such bypass infrastructure is –</p> <p>(a) temporarily required to allow for maintenance of existing infrastructure;</p> <p>(b) 2 kilometres or shorter in length;</p> <p>(c) within an existing transmission line servitude; and</p> <p>(d) will be removed within 18 months of the commencement of development.</p>	<p>The proposed project will include the development of an independent 400/132 kV MTS. The MTS will include associated infrastructure, such as 132 kV busbars, feeder bays, 500 MVA 400/132 kV transformers, and transformer bays.</p> <p>A dedicated overhead 400 kV power line LILO will be constructed from the existing Eskom Beta-Delphi 400 kV overhead power line to the proposed MTS.</p> <p>The above constitutes facilities for the distribution and transmission of electricity.</p> <p>The proposed project will take place outside of an urban area. It will be constructed on various affected farm portions, north-west of the town of Smithfield, in the Mohokare Local Municipality and Xhariep District Municipality, in the Free State Province.</p>
Activity 15	<p>The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more of indigenous vegetation, excluding where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for:</p> <p>(i) the undertaking of a linear activity; or</p> <p>(ii) maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan.</p>	<p>The proposed project will include the development of an independent 400/132 kV MTS. The MTS will cover a footprint of approximately 36 ha. As a result, more than 20 ha of indigenous vegetation will be removed for the construction of the proposed MTS. According to Mucina & Rutherford (2006, as amended), the study area and proposed project falls within Aliwal North Dry Grassland (Gh2) vegetation type.</p>
Listing Notice 3, GN R324		
Activity 12 (b) (iv)	<p>The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation except where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan.</p> <p>b. Free State</p> <p>iv. Areas within a watercourse or wetland; or within 100 metres from the edge of a watercourse or wetland.</p>	<p>The proposed project will entail the construction of various EGI (such as, but not limited to, independent MTS, building infrastructure (Operational and Maintenance (O&M) building and offices), fencing, internal roads, 400 kV LILO, service road for the LILO, access roads, storm water channels, and laydown area etc.) and will take place in the Free State. The proposed MTS will have an estimated footprint of approximately 36 ha.</p>

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
		<p>These infrastructure and structures may occur within small drainage features, watercourses, and wetlands, and within 100 m of these aquatic features, which have been delineated by the aquatic specialist.</p> <p>As a result, more than 300 m² of indigenous vegetation could be removed from these areas for the construction of the proposed EGI.</p>
<p>Activity 18 (b) (i) (hh)</p>	<p>The widening of a road by more than four meters, or the lengthening of a road by more than one kilometre:</p> <p>b. Free State</p> <p>i. Outside urban areas:</p> <p>(hh) Areas within a watercourse or wetland; or within 100 metres from the edge of a watercourse or wetland;</p>	<p>The proposed project will take place on various affected farm portions, outside of an urban area, north-west of the town of Smithfield, in the Mohokare Local Municipality and Xhariep District Municipality, in the Free State Province.</p> <p>The proposed project study area can be accessed via various existing main roads and gravel roads. Specifically, three access route options are being considered: Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which is routed along the N6; S1262; and S119. Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Existing roads will be used as far as practically achievable.</p> <p>The Traffic Specialist has noted that, based on preliminary investigations, the N6, S1262, and S119 roads leading to the study area are of a sufficient width to accommodate truck movement, however widening may be required at localised positions as required (i.e. intersections). Such widening is discussed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intersection S1262 and S119: Road widening by approximately 9 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 4 m in this regard. ▪ Intersection S119 and Access Route Option A: Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 4 m in this regard.

Listed Activity Number	Listed Activity Description	Description of the portion of the proposed project to which the applicable listed activity relates
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option B:</u> Road widening by approximately 7 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 4 m in this regard. ▪ <u>Intersection S119 and Access Route Option C:</u> Road widening by approximately 14 m (at the widest point) will be required at this intersection. The road widening will exceed 4 m in this regard. <p>No road will need to be lengthened by more than 1 km at these access routes.</p> <p>The intersection widening may occur within small drainage features, watercourses, and wetlands, and within 100 m of these aquatic features, which have been delineated by the aquatic specialist. Additional detail will be provided during the EIA Phase.</p>

4.3 Screening Tool

This section provides a description of the Screening Tool requirements in terms of recommended specialist assessments and assigned sensitivity ratings.

4.3.1 Specialist Assessments Identified by the Screening Tool

Based on the selected classification, the Screening Tool provides a list of specialist assessments that should be undertaken as part of the Scoping and EIA Process, as well as identifies the sensitivities on site that need to be verified by either the EAP or the specialists, where relevant, as noted in the Assessment Protocols of 20 March 2020 (GN 320) and 30 October 2020 (GN 1150). The classifications that apply to the proposed project is listed below in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2: List of Screening Tool Classifications

Project	Classification on Screening Tool
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ PROJECT 10: The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Utilities Infrastructure; Electricity; Distribution and Transmission; Substation ▪ Utilities Infrastructure; Electricity; Distribution and Transmission; Power Line

Table 4.3 provides the list of Specialist Assessments identified by the Screening Tool for inclusion in the Scoping and EIA Process for the proposed project.

The Screening Tool Report notes that it is the responsibility of the EAP to confirm this list and to motivate in the Scoping Report, the reason for not including any of the identified specialist assessments, where relevant.

As discussed at the Pre-Application Meeting held on 6 October 2023, the EAP is recommending that certain studies are not required. Refer to the discussion below.

Table 4.3: List of Specialist Assessments identified by the Screening Tool for the proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo (Project 10)

Specialist Assessment Required by the Screening Tool	Applicable to Power Line and/or Substation based on the Screening Tool List?	Study to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process?	Sensitivity allocated on the Screening Tool [Study Area]	Verified Sensitivity by the Specialist/EAP [Study Area] ⁷	Type of Assessment to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process or Motivation/Feedback for not undertaking the recommended study	Appendix of Scoping Report for SSV
1 Agricultural Impact Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	Very High, High, and mainly Medium and Low	Medium and Low	Protocol GN 320: Part B: Agriculture (Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Agricultural Resources by Onshore Wind and/or Solar PV Energy Generation Facilities where the Electricity Output is 20 MW or more): Compliance Statement	Appendix E.1
2 Landscape/Visual Impact Assessment	Power Line only	Yes	Not allocated. No theme for this methodology.	Mainly Low and Medium	Protocol GN 320: Part A: Site Sensitivity Verification; and Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended): Impact Assessment	Appendix E.5
3 Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	Low	Low (with small pockets of Medium to Very High)	Protocol GN 320: Part A: Site Sensitivity Verification; and Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended): Impact Assessment	Appendix E.6
4 Palaeontology Impact Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes (Site Sensitivity Verification only)	Medium and Very High	Low and Very Low	Protocol GN 320: Part A: Site Sensitivity Verification; and Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended): Motivation for no further study requirements and no Impact Assessment	Appendix E.7
5 Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	Very High	Low, Medium, and Very High	Protocol GN 320: Part B: Biodiversity (Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Terrestrial Biodiversity): Impact Assessment Note that the reporting for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species are combined in one report.	Appendix E.2

⁷ The sensitivity is described for the study area. However, the footprints avoid all no-go areas. Refer to Appendix E for additional information.

Specialist Assessment Required by the Screening Tool	Applicable to Power Line and/or Substation based on the Screening Tool List?	Study to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process?	Sensitivity allocated on the Screening Tool [Study Area]	Verified Sensitivity by the Specialist/EAP [Study Area] ⁷	Type of Assessment to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process or Motivation/Feedback for not undertaking the recommended study	Appendix of Scoping Report for SSV
6	Aquatic Biodiversity Impact Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	Very High	Very High and High Protocol GN 320: Part B: Biodiversity (Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Aquatic Biodiversity): Impact Assessment Note that the reporting for Aquatic Biodiversity and Species are combined in one report.	Appendix E.3
7	Avian Impact Assessment	Power Line only	Yes	Not allocated. No theme for this methodology.	High, High-Medium, Medium and Low Protocol GN 1150: Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental Impacts on Animal Species: Impact Assessment	Appendix E.4
8	Civil Aviation Assessment	Power Line only	Yes (Site Sensitivity Verification only)	Low	Low Protocol GN 320: Part B: Civil Aviation (Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental Impacts on Civil Aviation Installations): Site Sensitivity Verification	Appendix E.9
9	Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) Assessment	Power Line only	No	Not allocated. No theme for this methodology.	Low The proposed project is located outside of the KCAA and thus not expected to impact significantly on the SKA. Therefore, it is proposed not to undertake an RFI Assessment during the EIA Phase. Refer to additional information in Section 4.3.3 below.	Not applicable
10	Geotechnical Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes (Letter of Professional Opinion)	Not Applicable	Not Applicable Letter of Professional Opinion Refer to additional information in Section 4.3.2 below. There are no themes on the Screening Tool that currently relate to Geotechnical features that could be verified on site. Hence Part A of GN 320 (Site Sensitivity Verification) is not applicable in this regard.	Appendix E.8
11	Plant Species Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	Low	Low Protocol GN 1150: Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental	Appendix E.2

Specialist Assessment Required by the Screening Tool	Applicable to Power Line and/or Substation based on the Screening Tool List?	Study to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process?	Sensitivity allocated on the Screening Tool [Study Area]	Verified Sensitivity by the Specialist/EAP [Study Area] ⁷	Type of Assessment to be undertaken in Scoping and EIA Process or Motivation/Feedback for not undertaking the recommended study	Appendix of Scoping Report for SSV
					<p>Impacts on Plant Species. This applies to Terrestrial species in this regard: Compliance Statement</p> <p>Note that the reporting for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species are combined in one report.</p>	
12	Animal Species Assessment	Power Line and Substation	Yes	High (Birds) and Medium (Mammals)	<p>Medium for Mammals (Birds are assessed separately as discussed above)</p> <p>Protocol GN 1150: Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental Impacts on Animal Species. This applies to Terrestrial species in this regard: Compliance Statement</p> <p>Note that the reporting for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species are combined in one report.</p>	Appendix E.2

4.3.2 Geotechnical Letter of Opinion

It was agreed with the DFFE at the Pre-Application Meeting held on 6 October 2023 that a full Geotechnical Assessment in compliance with Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) does not need to be undertaken for the proposed projects. Instead, it was agreed with the DFFE, that a letter of opinion from a relevant geotechnical specialist would suffice. The letter of opinion is aimed at confirming the specialist opinion towards the development being authorised, as well as confirming that there are no fatal flaws from a geotechnical perspective. Refer to Appendix C.4 of this Scoping Report for a copy of the Pre-Application Meeting Notes. Refer to Appendix E.8 of this Scoping Report for a copy of the Geotechnical Letter of Opinion.

4.3.3 RFI Assessment

The Screening Tool identified the need for an RFI Assessment for the power line component of the project (i.e. LILO). However, an RFI Assessment is not being undertaken as part of the Scoping and EIA Process because the proposed projects do not fall within the KCAAA and SKA regions, nor is it located within the Northern Cape, and thus it is not expected to have a significant impact on the SKA. Refer to the locality map provided in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report for additional information. Furthermore, the Screening Tool identifies that the study area is low sensitivity for the RFI theme (specifically in relation to the Solar PV projects). Based on this, the EAP is of the opinion that an RFI Assessment is not warranted.

This motivation for exclusion was acknowledged and agreed to by the DFFE during the Pre-Application Meeting on 6 October 2023. Refer to Appendix C.4 of this Scoping Report for a copy of the Pre-Application Meeting Notes.

The SARAO has also been contacted during the Pre-Application Phase to confirm the risk of interference of the proposed projects to the nearest SKA radio telescope; and to determine if SARAO has any objection to the proposed development. SARAO confirmed that the proposed projects are low risk the SKA. This supports the motivation for not undertaking an RFI Assessment. The SARAO correspondence is included in Appendix H of this Scoping Report. Refer to Section 4.1.1.17 of this chapter for additional information.

4.3.4 Summary of Specialist Assessments being undertaken

Table 4.4 provides an overall summary of all the specialist assessments and inputs that are being undertaken for the proposed projects, including feedback on the level of assessment based on the SSVs undertaken by the specialists or EAP, where relevant.

Table 4.4: Summary of Specialist Assessments being undertaken

Specialist Assessment to be undertaken		Required by Screening Tool or Additional?	Level of Assessment during the EIA Phase	Appendix of Scoping Report for SSV
1	Agriculture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line and Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compliance Statement 	Appendix E.1
2	Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line and Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Terrestrial Biodiversity: Impact Assessment ▪ Terrestrial Plant Species: Compliance Statement ▪ Terrestrial Animal Species: Compliance Statement <p>Note that the reporting for Terrestrial Biodiversity, Terrestrial Plant Species and Terrestrial Animal Species are combined in one report.</p>	Appendix E.2
3	Aquatic Biodiversity and Species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line and Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Aquatic Biodiversity and Species: Impact Assessment 	Appendix E.3
4	Avifauna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line ▪ Additional for Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Impact Assessment 	Appendix E.4
5	Visual	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line ▪ Additional for Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Impact Assessment 	Appendix E.5
6	Heritage (Archaeology and Cultural Heritage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Impact Assessment 	Appendix E.6
7	Palaeontology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Site Sensitivity Verification and motivation for no further Palaeontology Impact Assessment 	Appendix E.7
8	Geotechnical Letter of Opinion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line and Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Letter of Opinion 	Appendix E.8
9	Civil Aviation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Screening Tool for Power Line ▪ Additional for Substations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Site Sensitivity Verification 	Appendix E.9

4.4 Principles for Scoping and Public Participation

4.4.1 Objectives of the Scoping Phase

This Scoping Process was planned and conducted in a manner that is intended to identify and provide sufficient information to enable the authorities to reach a decision regarding the scope of issues to be addressed in this EIA Process, and in particular to convey the range of specialist assessments that will be included as part of the EIA Phase, as well as the approach to these specialist assessments.

As highlighted in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report, within this context, the objectives of this Scoping Process, as per the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), are to:

- Identify the relevant policies and legislation relevant to the proposed activity;
- Motivate the need and desirability of the proposed activity, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;
- Clarify the project scope to be covered;
- Identify and confirm the preferred activity and technology alternative through an identification of impacts and risks and ranking process of such impacts and risks;
- Identify and confirm the preferred site, through a detailed site selection process, which includes an identification of impacts and risks inclusive of identification of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, and cultural aspects of the environment;
- Clarify the alternatives being considered and ensure due consideration of alternative options regarding the proposed development, including the “No-go” option;
- Conduct an open, participatory and transparent approach and facilitate the inclusion of stakeholder issues in the decision-making process;
- Identify and inform a broad range of stakeholders about the proposed development;
- Confirm the process to be followed and opportunities for stakeholder engagement;
- Identify and document the key issues to be addressed in the impact assessment phase (through a process of broad-based consultation with stakeholders) and the approach to be followed in addressing these issues;
- Confirm the level of assessment to be undertaken during the impact assessment, including the methodology to be applied, the expertise required as well as the extent of further consultation to be undertaken to determine the impacts and risks the activity will impose on the preferred site through the life of the activity, including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts to inform the location of the development footprint within the preferred site; and
- Identify suitable measures to avoid, manage or mitigate identified impacts and to determine the extent of the residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.

4.4.2 Introduction to the PPP

This section provides an overview of the tasks that were undertaken in the Scoping Phase, with a particular emphasis on providing a clear record of the PPP that has been followed. An integrated PPP is being undertaken for all the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, Electricity Grid Infrastructure (EGI), MTS and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) projects (Projects 1 to 10), as confirmed with the DFFE during the Pre-Application Meeting on 6 October 2023. The information presented in Section 4.4 of this chapter applies to all 10 projects.

The integrated PPP for the proposed projects ensures that all public participation documents (such as newspaper advertisements, site notices, notification letters, emails etc.) will serve to notify I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State of the joint availability of reports for the abovementioned projects and will provide I&APs with an opportunity to comment on the reports. This approach is being undertaken due to the proximity of the sites (i.e. the proposed projects will take place within the same geographical area) and that proposed projects entail the same type of activity (i.e. generation of energy using a renewable source (i.e. Solar PV); storing and dispatching of electricity (BESS); and transmission and distribution of electricity via power lines and the MTS).

The PPP is being driven by a stakeholder engagement process that will include inputs from authorities, I&APs, technical specialists and the Project Developer. Guideline 4 on “*Public Participation in support of the EIA Regulations*” published by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEAT) in May 2006, states that public participation is one of the most important aspects of the Environmental Assessment Process. This stems from the requirement that people have a right to be informed about potential decisions that may affect them and that they must be afforded an opportunity to influence those decisions. Effective public participation also improves the ability of the Competent Authority to make informed decisions and results in improved decision-making as the view of all parties are considered.

An effective PPP could therefore result in stakeholders working together to produce better decisions than if they had worked independently. The DEAT guideline states the following in terms of PPP:

- *“Provides an opportunity for I&APs, EAPs and the Competent Authority to obtain clear, accurate and understandable information about the environmental impacts of the proposed activity or implications of a decision;*
 - *Provides I&APs with an opportunity to voice their support, concern and question regarding the project, application or decision;*
 - *Enables an applicant to incorporate the needs, preferences and values of affected parties into its application;*
 - *Provides opportunities for clearing up misunderstanding about technical issues, resolving disputes and reconciling conflicting interests;*
 - *Is an important aspect of securing transparency and accountability in decision-making; and*
 - *Contributes toward maintaining a health, vibrant democracy.”*

To the above, one can add the following universally recognised principles for public participation:

- Inclusive consultation that enables all sectors of society to participate in the consultation and assessment processes;
- Provision of accurate and easily accessible information in a language that is clear and sufficiently non-technical for I&APs to understand, and that is sufficient to enable meaningful participation;
- Active empowerment of grassroots people to understand concepts and information with a view to active and meaningful participation;
- Use of a variety of methods for information dissemination in order to improve accessibility, for example, by way of discussion, documents, meetings, workshops, focus group discussions, and the printed and broadcast media;
- Affording I&APs sufficient time to study material, to exchange information, and to make contributions at various stages during the assessment process;
- Provision of opportunities for I&APs to provide their inputs via a range of methods, for example, via briefing sessions, public meetings, written submissions or direct contact with members of the EIA team; and
- Public participation is a process and vehicle to provide sufficient and accessible information to I&APs in an objective manner to assist I&APs to identify issues of concern, to identify alternatives, to suggest opportunities to reduce potentially negative or enhance potentially positive impacts, and to verify that issues and/or inputs have been captured and addressed during the assessment process.

At the outset it is important to highlight two key aspects of public participation:

- There are practical and financial limitations to the involvement of all individuals within a PPP. Hence, the PPP aims to generate issues that are representative of societal sectors, not each individual and will be designed to be inclusive of a broad range of sectors relevant to the proposed project; and
- The PPP will aim to raise a diversity of perspectives and will not be designed to force consensus amongst I&APs. Indeed, diversity of opinion rather than consensus building is likely to enrich ultimate decision-making. Therefore, where possible, the PPP will aim to obtain an indication of trade-offs that all stakeholders (i.e. I&APs, technical specialists, the authorities and the development proponent) are willing to accept with regard to the ecological sustainability, social equity and economic growth associated with the project.

The Department of Environmental Affairs (2017), Public Participation guideline in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations is also being considered throughout this Scoping and EIA Process.

The key steps in the PPP for this Scoping and EIA Process are described below and also illustrated in Figure 4.1. This approach is structured in line with the requirements of Chapter 6 (PPP) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended, i.e. GN R326), as described below. Various mechanisms will be undertaken to provide notice to all potential and registered I&APs of the proposed projects, as described below.

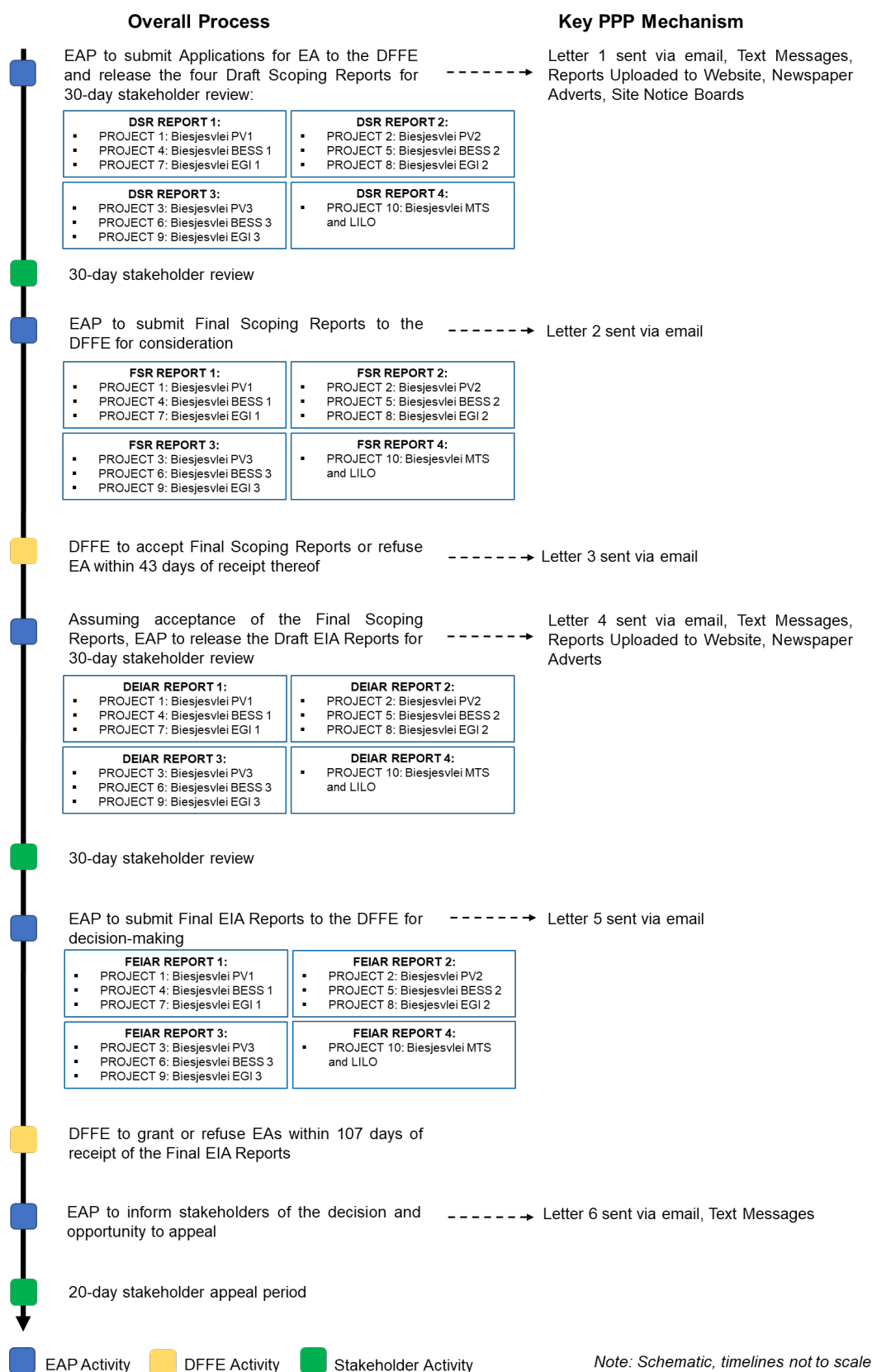


Figure 4.1: Overview of the Scoping and EIA Process and PPP

4.4.3 Pre-Application Consultation with the DFFE

4.4.3.1 Pre-Application Meeting with the DFFE

A request for a Pre-Application Meeting was submitted to the DFFE on 12 September 2023 after which the EAP received a response from the DFFE on 18 September 2023 (Reference Number: 2023-09-0012). The Pre-Application Meeting was scheduled for and took place on 6 October 2023. The Pre-Application Meeting was undertaken in order to discuss and agree on various aspects prior to release of the Scoping Report for a 30-day review period. The following points were discussed with the DFFE:

- Description of the proposed projects;
- Discussion on the specialist assessments to be undertaken; and those that will be motivated against being undertaken;
- Discussion on the approach towards the Environmental Assessment and Specialist Assessment reporting, including a request for combination of the projects, in terms of Regulation 11 of the 2014 NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations (as amended), and the issuing of multiple (i.e.,10) EAs (should they be granted) in terms of Regulations 25 (1) and (2) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended);
- Discussion of the proposed Public Participation Process that will be undertaken for all 10 projects; and
- Discussion of the proposed schedule and overall process for the EIA Processes.

Refer to Appendix C.1 of this Scoping Report for the proof of submission of the Pre-Application Meeting Request Form to the DFFE; Appendix C.2 for DFFE's acknowledgement of the Pre-Application Meeting Request Form; Appendix C.3 for a copy of the presentation delivered at the Pre-Application Meeting; Appendix C.4 for a copy of the Pre-Application Meeting Notes; Appendix C.5 for the submission of the Pre-Application Meeting Notes to the DFFE; and Appendix C.6 for a copy of correspondence from the DFFE with approval of the Pre-Application Meeting Notes. The Pre-Application Meeting Notes were submitted to the DFFE via email on 11 October 2023 and approved by the DFFE on 24 October 2023.

4.4.3.2 Request for Report Combination and Multiple EAs

As noted above and in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report, a request for report combination and multiple EA approach was also discussed with the DFFE during the Pre-Application Meeting, which was formally submitted to the DFFE in a letter dated 11 October 2023. On 6 November 2023, the DFFE accepted the approach for combination of the Scoping, EIA and Specialist Reports for **Projects 1 to 9 (i.e. Reports 1 to 3)**, and the issuance of multiple EAs for the proposed projects (should they be granted). A copy of this acceptance letter from the DFFE is included in Appendix C.7 of this Scoping Report.

Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo) is being treated as a single report (i.e. this report) and an agreement in terms of Section 24 C (3) (b) of NEMA was obtained by the DFFE to agree with the DESTEA that the DFFE can serve as the Competent Authority for this specific project (i.e. Project 10). Refer to Appendix C.8 of this Scoping Report for a copy of this agreement.

4.4.4 Landowner Written Consent

Regulation 39 (1) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) states that *“if the proponent is not the owner or person in control of the land on which the activity is to be undertaken, the proponent must, before applying for an environmental authorisation in respect of such activity, obtain the written consent of the landowner or person in control of the land to undertake such activity on that land”*.

Regulation 39 (2) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) further states that *“sub-regulation (1) does not apply in respect of: (a) linear activities; (b) activities constituting, or activities directly related to prospecting or exploration of a mineral and petroleum resource or extraction and primary processing of a mineral or petroleum resource; and (c) strategic integrated projects as contemplated in the Infrastructure Development Act, 2014”*.

The proposed projects include several non-linear activities for which landowner consent is required for the affected properties listed in Chapter 2 of this report.

Written consent has been obtained from the respective landowners of the affected farm portions on which the non-linear infrastructure is proposed to be located. The written consent has been included as an appendix to the Application for EA, which were submitted to the DFFE, together with the Draft Scoping Report for comment on 8 March 2024.

4.4.5 Determination of Appropriate Consultation Measures, and I&AP Identification, Registration and the Creation of an Electronic Database

In order to accommodate the varying needs of I&APs and develop their capacity to participate in the process, information sharing forms an integral and ongoing component of the EIA Process to ensure effective public participation.

In line with Regulation 42 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) and prior to the commencement of the Scoping and EIA Processes, an initial database of I&APs (including key stakeholders and Organs of State) was developed. This was undertaken based on research. Appendix F of this Scoping Report includes a copy of the latest I&AP Database, which has been updated based on requests for registration and de-registration received during the 30-day comment period on the Draft Scoping Report, as well as based on stakeholders providing comments, stakeholders communicated with, and additional research to obtain valid email addresses, where possible.

In line with Regulation 41 (2) (b) of 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), the database includes the details of the following:

- Landowners of the affected and adjacent farm portions for the study area;
- Occupiers of the affected and adjacent farm portions, where relevant. Most of the landowners have confirmed that there are no other occupiers on the properties;
- The municipal councillor of the ward in which the proposed projects will be undertaken;
- The municipality which has jurisdiction in the area (i.e. Mohokare Local Municipality and XDM);
- Relevant Organs of State that have jurisdiction in respect of any aspect of the activity (e.g. DESTEA, DWS, DALRRD, Eskom etc.); and

- Any other party as required by the Competent Authority.

In addition, the I&AP database includes the Competent Authority (i.e. DFFE); and potential and registered I&APs.

While I&APs have been encouraged to register their interest in the project from the start of the process, following the public announcements, the identification and registration of I&APs is ongoing for the duration of the study. Stakeholders from a variety of sectors, geographical locations and/or interest groups are expected to show an interest in the proposed project, for example:

- Provincial and Local Government Departments;
- Local interest groups, for example, Councillors and Rate Payers associations;
- Surrounding landowners;
- Farmer Organisations;
- Environmental Groups and NGOs; and
- Grassroots communities and structures.

As per Regulation 42 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), in terms of the electronic database, I&AP details will be captured and automatically updated as and when information is distributed to or received from I&APs. This ongoing record of communication is an important component of the PPP. It must be noted that while not required by the regulations, those I&APs proactively identified at the outset of the Scoping and EIA Process will remain on the project database throughout the process and will be kept informed of all opportunities to comment and will only be removed from the database by request.

In accordance with the Protection of Personal Information Act (Act 4 of 2013), the CSIR will conduct itself responsibly when collecting, processing, storing and sharing any personal information collected for the purposes of PPP in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) and the 2014 National Appeal Regulations (as amended). By registering as an I&AP and/or submitting information and comments, the stakeholder essentially consents to the collection, collation, processing, and storing of such information and the use and disclosure of such information for the aforementioned purpose, including for purposes of potential appeal processes whereby such information may be made available to an appellant in the case of an appeal to satisfy the requirements of Regulation 4 of the 2014 National Appeal Regulations (as amended)⁸.

The above will be maintained on all correspondence sent throughout the EIA Process. The stakeholders will also be given an opportunity to send an email to the EAP if they wish to opt out of communications on the proposed projects.

4.4.6 Site Notices

One specific mechanism of informing I&APs of the proposed projects includes the placement of site notice boards. Regulation 41 (2) (a) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) requires that a notice board providing information on the project and Scoping and EIA Process is fixed at a place that is conspicuous to and accessible by the public at the boundary, on the fence or along the corridor of the site where the application will be undertaken or any alternative site.

⁸ CSIR Privacy Notice. Website: <https://www.csir.co.za/csir-privacy-notice>

Notice boards in the English, Afrikaans, isiXhosa and Sesotho languages were placed at the key affected farm portions on which the proposed projects will be constructed, as well as at other strategic locations, such as well-known retail, public and/or government facilities in the wider region, as indicated in Table 4.5.

Table 4.5: Site Notice Board Placement for the Proposed Projects

Number	Locality / Description	Co-ordinates	
		Latitude	Longitude
1	Intersection of the N6 national road and S1262 gravel provincial road	30° 03' 28.63" S	026° 26' 24.66" E
2	Intersection of the S1262 gravel provincial road and gravel road leading to the study area	30° 03' 43.68" S	026° 25' 54.93" E
3	Along the S119 gravel provincial road on the Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521, west of Access Route Option C for the proposed projects	30° 05' 05.33" S	026° 22' 15.63" E
4	Intersection of the S119 gravel provincial road and Access Route Option C for the proposed projects	30° 05' 18.17" S	026° 22' 41.84" E
5	Fence line between Farm Benoni 534 and Remaining Extent of Farm Schoemanskraal 34 just south and west of the area proposed for Biesjesvlei PV2 (Project 2)	30° 07' 24.95" S	026° 20' 32.37" E
6	Along a gravel road running through Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34 in the area proposed for Biesjesvlei PV2 (Project 2)	30° 08' 14.41" S	026° 21' 56.41" E
7	At the south-western border of Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34 and the proposed Biesjesvlei PV2 (Project 2)	30° 08' 32.63" S	026° 21' 27.46" E
8	Dr De Wet Library, Smithfield	30° 12' 51.55" S	026° 31' 53.75" E
9	Smithfield Magistrate Court	30° 12' 50.12" S	026° 31' 52.83" E
10	Smithfield Post Office	30° 12' 48.58" S	026° 31' 50.89" E
11	Orange Vrystaat Koöperasie (OVK) - Smithfield	30° 12' 46.31" S	026° 31' 55.46" E
12	SASSA (South African Social Security Agency), Smithfield Local Office	30° 12' 54.42" S	026° 32' 12.60" E
13	USave, Smithfield	30° 12' 49.44" S	026° 31' 57.07" E
14	Intersection of the S119 gravel provincial road and Access Route Option A for the proposed projects, in the vicinity of cropland on Farm Salpetervlei 756	30° 06' 08.10" S	026° 24' 27.54" E
15	Intersection of the S119 gravel provincial road and Access Route Option B for the proposed projects on Farm Benoni 534	30° 05' 36.34" S	026° 23' 19.13" E

Refer to Appendix G.1 of this Scoping Report for a copy of the content and proof of placement of the site notice boards. The site notice boards include the following, in compliance with Regulation 41 (3) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended):

- The details of the proposed projects that are subjected to public participation;
- Explanation that a Scoping and EIA procedure is applicable to the proposed projects;
- The nature and location of the proposed projects;
- Details on where further information on the proposed projects can be obtained; and
- The manner in which and the person to whom representations in respect of the proposed projects can be made.

4.4.7 Newspaper Advertisements

Regulation 41 (2) (c) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) requires the placement of a newspaper advertisement in one local newspaper or any official Gazette that is published specifically for the purpose of providing public notice of applications or other submissions made in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations.

In line with this, in order to notify and inform the public of the proposed projects, to invite I&APs to register on the project database, as well as to inform I&APs of the release of the Scoping Reports for comment, the Scoping and EIA Processes was advertised in two local newspapers at the commencement of the 30-day comment period for the Scoping Report. Specifically, advertisements were placed in the Bloemnuus on 7 March 2024 in the English and Afrikaans languages; and placed in the Express on 6 March 2024 in the isiXhosa and Sesotho languages. The content of the newspaper advertisement complies with Regulation 41 (3) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) and also included the details of the project website, where information available on the proposed projects could be downloaded from. Refer to Appendix G.2 of this FSR for a copy of the content of and proof of placement of the newspaper advertisements (i.e. tear sheets from the newspaper).

At this stage, there are no official Gazettes published specifically for the purpose of providing public notice of applications or other submissions made in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

4.4.8 Technical Scoping with the Project Proponent and EIA Team

The Scoping Process was designed to incorporate two complementary components: a stakeholder engagement process that includes the relevant authorities and wider I&APs; and a technical process involving the EIA team and the project proponent.

The purpose of the technical scoping process is to draw on the past experience of the EIA team and the project proponent to identify environmental issues and concerns related to the proposed projects and confirm that the necessary specialist assessments have been identified. Most of the specialists have worked with the CSIR on several other projects, as well as having experience from EIAs for other renewable energy projects in the Free State. The specialists were therefore able to identify issues (as shown in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report) to be addressed in the EIA Phase based on their experience and knowledge of the area and type of activity. Their inputs have informed the scope and Terms of Reference for the specialist assessments (as included in Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report). The findings of the scoping process with input from the stakeholders and the authorities will inform the specialist assessments.

4.4.9 Scoping Report Phase

In terms of Regulation 41 (6) of GN R326, the section below outlines the PPP for the Scoping Phase of this assessment in order to provide potential I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State access to information on the project and the opportunity to comment at the various stages of the assessment process.

4.4.9.1 Review of the Scoping Report

The Scoping Reports for the proposed projects were released to I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State for a 30-day comment period, which extended from 8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024 (excluding public holidays). The section below summarises the PPP for the review of the Scoping Reports.

- **Database Development and Maintenance:** In line with Regulation 41 (2) (b) of GN R326, an initial database of potential I&APs was developed for the Scoping and EIA Processes and will be updated throughout the process. Refer to Appendix D of this FSR for a copy of the latest I&AP database that includes all I&APs that have registered, de-registered, commented on the Draft Scoping Reports and have been communicated with during the 30-day review period, as well as based on research to obtain valid email addresses, where possible.
- **Site Notice Boards:** As noted in Section 4.4.6 above, notice boards have been placed for the proposed projects. A copy of the content and proof of placement of the notice boards is included in Appendix G.1 of this Scoping Report.
- **Advertisements to Register Interest:** As noted in Section 4.4.7 above, an advertisement was placed in the English, Afrikaans, isiXhosa and Sesotho languages in two local newspapers (i.e. Bloemnuus and Express) at the commencement of the 30-day comment period for the Draft Scoping Reports. A copy of the content of and proof of placement of the newspaper advertisements is included in Appendix G.2 of this FSR.
- **Submission of the Applications for EA and Scoping Reports to the DFFE, and DFFE Acknowledgement of Receipt:** The Application Forms for EA and Draft Scoping Reports were submitted to the DFFE via the DFFE Novell S-Filer System on 8 March 2024 and proof of upload was emailed to the DFFE. Proof of submission of the Draft Scoping Report and Application Form for EA to the DFFE and proof of upload to the DFFE Novell S-Filer System is included in Appendix G.5 of the FSR. The DFFE acknowledged receipt of the Applications for EA and Draft Scoping Reports for comment on 12 March 2024 (as included in Appendix G.6 of this FSR), and assigned the following reference numbers to the projects:
 - Biesjesvlei PV1 (Project 1): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2526;
 - Biesjesvlei BESS 1 (Project 4): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2527;
 - Biesjesvlei EGI 1 (Project 7): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2528;
 - Biesjesvlei PV2 (Project 2): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2531;
 - Biesjesvlei BESS 2 (Project 5): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2529;
 - Biesjesvlei EGI 2 (Project 8): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2530;
 - Biesjesvlei PV3 (Project 3): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2533;
 - Biesjesvlei BESS 3 (Project 6): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2532;
 - Biesjesvlei EGI 3 (Project 9): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2534; and
 - Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO (Project 10): 14/12/16/3/3/2/2535.
- **Letter 1 to I&APs (Release of the four Draft Scoping Reports for the Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development (Projects 1 to 10)):** Written notification of the availability of the four Draft Scoping Reports (i.e. Letter 1) was sent to all I&APs, stakeholders and Organs of State included on the project database via email, where email addresses are available. This letter was sent at the commencement of the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Reports (i.e. on 8 March 2024) and included information on the proposed projects and a notification of the release and availability of the reports. Letter 1 was written in English. Proof of email and copies of the Letter 1 sent are included in Appendix G.4 of the FSR that is being submitted to the DFFE for consideration.
- **Text Messaging:** SMS texts were sent to all I&APs on the database, where cell phone numbers are available, to inform them of the proposed projects and how to access the Draft Scoping Reports. These text messages were sent on 8 March 2024 for the release, and 22 March 2024 as a reminder of the comment period closure. Refer to Appendix G.4 of this FSR for proof of text message consultation.

- **30-day Comment Period:** As noted above, potential I&APs, including authorities and Organs of State, were notified via Letter 1, of the 30-day comment and registration period within which to submit comments on the Draft Scoping Reports and/or to register on the I&AP database.
- **Broader Networks:** Attempts were made to contact the ward councillors to request that they send notifications of the projects as well as report availability and executive summaries via their local networks (such as WhatsApp groups, Neighbourhood Watch groups, other social media mechanisms, etc.). However, no feedback was received. Refer to Appendix G.4 for proof of follow up email correspondence.
- **Availability of Information:** The Draft Scoping Reports were made available for a 30-day comment period, and were distributed electronically to ensure access to information on the projects and to communicate the Plan of Study for the EIA Phase. The Draft Scoping Reports were uploaded to the project website (i.e. <https://www.csir.co.za/environmental-impact-assessment>) for I&APs to access it. As a supplementary mechanism, the Draft Scoping Reports were also uploaded to another alternative web-platform (i.e. Google Drive: https://bit.ly/Biesjesvlei_PV_BESS_EGI_Projects). As noted in the Draft Scoping Reports, if an I&AP could not access the reports via the project website, or Google Drive, and if additional information was required (other than what was provided in the Executive Summaries), then the I&AP could contact the EAP, to then make an electronic copy available (*where feasibly possible*). However, no such requests were received during the 30-day comment period on the Draft Scoping Reports.
- **Reminder / Follow Up Emails of the Comment Period Closure:** A number of reminder / follow up emails informing stakeholders of the comment period closure and to seek comments were sent to I&APs, stakeholders and Organs of State included on the project database, where email addresses are available. Refer to Appendix G.4 of this FSR for proof of such correspondence. The following reminder emails were sent:
 - Reminder email sent on 22 March 2024 to all stakeholders (where email addresses are available);
 - Personalised reminder emails sent on 27 March 2024 to the following specific stakeholders (where email addresses are available, and focusing on those that still needed to comment or acknowledge receipt):
 - DFFE Forestry Management;
 - DFFE Protected Areas Planning and Management Effectiveness;
 - DFFE Chemicals and Waste Management;
 - DALRRD;
 - Department of Defence (DoD);
 - Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS);
 - Transnet SOC Limited;
 - South African Air Force (SAAF);
 - South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA);
 - South African National Road Agency (SANRAL);
 - SAHRA;
 - Provincial Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (DARD);
 - Provincial DESTEA;
 - Provincial Department of Police, Roads and Transport;
 - Provincial DWS;
 - Agri Free State;
 - Free State Provincial Heritage Resources Authority (FSPHRA);
 - XDM;

- Mohokare Local Municipality;
- BirdLife South Africa; and
- Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT).
- Reminder email sent on 08 April 2024 to all stakeholders (where email addresses are available); and
- Reminder email sent on 10 April 2024 to all stakeholders (where email addresses are available).
- **Comments Received:** A key component of the Scoping and EIA Process is documenting and responding to the comments received from I&APs and the authorities. Copies of all comments received during the 30-day review of the Draft Scoping Reports are included in Appendix G.6 of the FSR and in the Issues and Response Trail in Appendix G.7. Comments were received from the following stakeholders during the 30-day review of the Draft Scoping Reports:
 - DFFE Chief Directorate: Integrated Environmental Authorisations (Competent Authority);
 - DFFE Directorate: Biodiversity Mainstreaming and EIA - Biodiversity and Conservation Branch;
 - DFFE: Protected Areas Planning and Management Effectiveness Directorate;
 - DALRRD;
 - Free State Agriculture (Vrystaat Landbou);
 - SACAA;
 - SAHRA;
 - DWS;
 - Eskom;
 - Openserve;
 - DESTEA;
 - XDM;
 - VulPro; and
 - Various private individuals / I&APs.
- **Issues and Responses Trail:** The comments received from I&APs, via email, have been captured in an Issues and Responses Trail that is included in Appendix G.7 of the FSR. The Issues and Responses Trail includes comments received from I&APs, stakeholders, and affected authorities in response to the Draft Scoping Reports. The Issues and Responses Trail also includes responses from the EIA team (and, in some cases, the project proponent) to the issues raised. In general, the responses indicate how the issues will be addressed in the EIA Phase. In some cases, immediate responses and clarification have been provided. Where issues are raised that the EIA team considers beyond the scope and purpose of this EIA Process, clear reasoning for this view has been provided.

4.4.10 Compilation of the FSR for Submission to the DFFE (Current Stage)

Following the 30-day commenting period on the Draft Scoping Reports and incorporation of the comments received into the reports, the FSRs will be submitted to the DFFE in line with Regulation 21 (1) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). The reports will be submitted electronically to the DFFE via the Novell S-Filer system.

In line with best practice, I&APs on the project database will be notified via Letter 2 via email (where email addresses are available) of the submission of the FSRs to the DFFE for consideration. To ensure ongoing access to information, copies of the FSRs that are submitted for consideration, will be placed on the project website (i.e. <https://www.csir.co.za/environmental-impact-assessment>). As a supplementary mechanism, the FSRs will also be uploaded to another alternative web-platform such as Google Drive (i.e. https://bit.ly/Biesjesvlei_PV_BESS_EGI_Projects).

The FSRs that are being submitted for consideration to the DFFE includes proof of the PPP that was undertaken to inform Organs of State, Stakeholders and I&APs of the availability of the Draft Scoping Reports for the 30-day review (as explained above).

The DFFE will have 43 days (from receipt of the FSRs) to either a) accept the scoping reports, with or without conditions, and advise the applicant to proceed with the tasks contemplated in the plan of study for EIA; or b) refuse EA (respectively in line with Regulation 22 (a) and (b) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended). In line with best practice, I&APs on the project database will be notified via Letter 3 via email (where email addresses are available) of the outcome of the DFFE consideration of the FSRs and commencement of the EIA Phase.

This step marks the end of the PPP for the Scoping Phase. The PPP for the subsequent EIA Phase is presented in the Plan of Study for the EIA i.e. Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report.

4.5 Schedule for the Scoping and EIA Processes

The proposed schedule for the Scoping and EIA Processes based on the legislated EIA timeframes, is presented in Table 4.6. It should be noted that this schedule could be revised during the EIA Processes, depending on factors such as the time required for decisions from authorities.

Table 4.6: Provisional Schedule for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS, EGI, MTS and LILO Development (Projects 1 to 10)

Key Milestones	Proposed Timeframe
Appointment of CSIR	July - August 2023
Appointment of Specialists	Phase 1 (Screening): November 2022 Phase 2 (EIA): August – November 2023
Specialist Site Visits	November 2022 – October 2023
Project Initiation and Pre-Application Consultation with the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE)	October 2023
Approval of Notes of the Pre-Application Meeting	24 October 2023
Submission of Combination Request	11 October 2023
DFFE Decision on the Combination Request	6 November 2023
Specialist Inputs for Scoping for Projects 1 to 10	August 2023 – February 2024
Prepare 4 x Draft Scoping Reports (DSRs) and Plan of Study for EIA for Projects 1 to 10: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Report 1: Project 1 (Biesjesvlei PV1); Project 4 (Biesjesvlei BESS 1); and Project 7 (Biesjesvlei EGI 1). ▪ Report 2: Project 2 (Biesjesvlei PV2); Project 5 (Biesjesvlei BESS 2); and Project 8 (Biesjesvlei EGI 2). ▪ Report 3: Project 3 (Biesjesvlei PV3); Project 6 (Biesjesvlei BESS 3); and Project 9 (Biesjesvlei EGI 3). ▪ Report 4: Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO). 	August 2023 – February 2024
Release the 4 x DSRs for Projects 1 to 10 for 30-day comment period	8 March 2024 to 10 April 2024 (excluding public holidays)
Submit the 4 x Final Scoping Reports (FSRs) for Projects 1 to 10 to the DFFE for Consideration	Late April 2024
DFFE to Accept FSRs for Projects 1 to 10 or Refuse EAs	June 2024
Prepare 4 x Draft EIA Reports for Projects 1 to 10	May 2024 – July 2024
Release 4 x Draft EIA Reports for Projects 1 to 10 for 30-day comment period	August 2024
Submit 4 x Final EIA Reports for Projects 1 to 10 to DFFE for Decision-Making	September 2024
DFFE Decision-Making on the Final EIA Reports and issue of Decisions (i.e. grant or refuse EA): 107 days [or reduced to 57 days]	November 2024 or January 2025
EAP to Notify I&APs of Decisions (14 days)	14 days after EA is issued



CHAPTER 5: Project Alternatives

Contents

5. APPROACH TO THE ASSESSMENT OF ALTERNATIVES	5-2
5.1 Assessment of Alternatives	5-3
5.1.1 No-go Alternative	5-3
5.1.2 Land-Use Alternatives	5-4
5.1.3 Type of Activity Alternatives	5-5
5.1.4 Renewable Energy Alternatives	5-5
5.1.5 Site Alternatives	5-7
5.1.5.1 Site Specific Considerations	5-8
5.1.6 Location Alternatives – Development Footprint within the Preferred Site	5-9
5.1.7 Technology Alternatives	5-12
5.2 Concluding Statement of Preferred Alternatives	5-12
5.3 Summary of Legislative Requirements for the Assessment of Alternatives	5-13

Tables

Table 5.1: Site selection factors and suitability of the preferred site for the development of the proposed projects	5-8
Table 5.2: Requirements for the consideration of Alternatives based on the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	5-14

Figures

Figure 5.1: Solar Resource Availability / Global Horizontal Irradiation (kWh/m ²); Annual Mean Wind Power Density (W/m ²); Hydropower Potential (kWh/year); and Biomass Potential in terms of Annual Forestry Residue (t/a) for South Africa. The proposed project location is indicated by the black square.	5-6
Figure 5.2: Process flow for the identification of the Preferred Site and Development Footprint	5-11

5. APPROACH TO THE ASSESSMENT OF ALTERNATIVES

This chapter discusses the alternatives that have been considered as part of the Scoping Phase, as well as the selection process of the preferred alternatives that will be considered and assessed as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Phase for the proposed Biesjesvlei Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILo) (Project 10), which will support the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Facilities (Biesjesvlei PV1 to PV3) [Projects 1 to 3]; Biesjesvlei Battery Energy Storage System (BESS) Facilities [Projects 4 to 6]; and Biesjesvlei 132 kV power lines [Projects 7 to 9].

Sections 24(4) (b) (i) and 24(4A) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) require an Environmental Assessment to include investigation and assessment of impacts associated with alternatives to the proposed project. In addition, Section 24O (1)(b)(iv) also requires that the Competent Authority, when considering an application for EA, takes into account “*where appropriate, any feasible and reasonable alternatives to the activity which is the subject of the application and any feasible and reasonable modifications or changes to the activity that may minimise harm to the environment*”.

The 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) define “alternatives”, in relation to a proposed activity, “*as different means of meeting the general purpose and requirements of the activity, which may include alternatives to the:*

- *property on which or location where the activity is proposed to be undertaken;*
- *type of activity to be undertaken;*
- *design or layout of the activity;*
- *technology to be used in the activity;*
- *operational aspects of the activity; and*
- *includes the option of not implementing the activity”.*

Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) provides the following objectives, *inter alia*, of the Scoping Process in relation to alternatives:

- To identify and confirm the preferred activity and technology alternative through an identification of impacts and risks and ranking process of such impacts and risks; and
- To identify and confirm the preferred site, through a detailed site selection process, which includes an identification of impacts and risks inclusive of identification of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, and cultural aspects of the environment.

The Scoping Report is therefore required to provide a full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred activity, technology, site and location of the development footprint within the site, including details of all the alternatives considered and the outcome of the site selection matrix.

5.1 Assessment of Alternatives

The description of alternatives for the Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO project is given in the context of the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI projects. The MTS and LILO are essential components of the Biesjesvlei cluster development as it will enable its connection to the national grid. As a result, some alternatives are not relevant to the MTS and LILO project as it is governed by the PV, BESS and EGI projects. Hence, the terms project and projects are used synonymously in this chapter.

5.1.1 No-go Alternative

The no-go alternative assumes that the proposed project will not go ahead i.e. it is the option of not developing the proposed project and associated infrastructure. This alternative would result in no environmental impacts on the site or surrounding local area as a result of the proposed project. It provides the baseline against which other alternatives are compared. The following implications will occur if the “no-go” alternative is implemented (i.e. the proposed projects do not proceed):

- No benefits will be derived from the implementation of an additional land-use;
- No additional power will be generated or supplied through means of renewable energy resources by the proposed Biesjesvlei PV projects at this location as there would be no grid connection;
- The “no-go” alternative will not contribute to and assist the government in achieving its renewable energy target of 26 630 MW total installed capacity by 2030 (for Wind, Solar PV and Concentrated Solar Power (CSP)) (Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), 2019) because it would not have grid connection;
- Electricity generation will remain constant due to a lack of grid connection (i.e. no renewable energy generation will occur on the site) and as a result, the local economy in terms of surrounding communities and towns within the local municipality will not be diversified, while existing electricity generation sources and the transmission network nationally will age and degrade over time, with maintenance requirements potentially leading to outages;
- There will be lost opportunity for skills transfer and education/training of local communities;
- The positive socio-economic impacts likely to result from all the Biesjesvlei proposed projects, such as increased local spending and the creation of local employment opportunities, will not be realised;
- There will be no opportunity for additional employment in an area, where job creation is identified as a key priority;
- The local economic benefits associated with the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP) will not be realised, and socio-economic contribution payments into the local community trust will not be realised;
- The development of solar PV facilities instead of coal fired power stations can directly contribute to South Africa’s response to climate mitigation; and
- Wind and solar energy are the cheapest source of electricity in South Africa. The development of the proposed projects can contribute to the competitive nature of the REIPPPP to drive prices down even further to ensure that South Africans have access to affordable yet clean electricity. However, the proposed projects need a viable grid connection in order for this to materialize.

Converse to the above, the following benefits could occur if the “no-go” alternative is implemented:

- Only the agricultural land use (livestock farming/grazing) will remain;
- No vegetation or protected species (flora) will be removed or disturbed during the development of the proposed project;
- No aquatic resources will be impacted upon during the construction and operation of the proposed project;
- No destruction of habitat will occur;
- No change to the current landscape will occur (i.e. the visual character of the area will remain unchanged);
- No heritage features will be impacted on;
- No noise impacts associated with construction activities will occur;
- No avifaunal impacts will occur due to the establishment of the proposed project;
- No additional traffic will be generated; and
- No additional water use will be required.

The no-go alternative will be considered by the specialists during the EIA Phase. The no-go alternative means no addition of transmission infrastructure (to enable the proposed renewable energy and energy storage), which means further reliance on fossil fuels that will continue to have a negative environmental impact. While the no-go alternative i.e. not developing the proposed project will not result in any negative environmental impacts in the area, it will also not have any positive community development or socio-economic benefits. In addition, it will not assist government in addressing climate change, reaching its set targets for renewable energy, nor will it assist in supplying the increasing electricity demand within the country. **Hence, the no-go alternative is not the preferred alternative, nor is it a reasonable and feasible alternative to be considered in this Scoping and EIA Process.**

5.1.2 Land-Use Alternatives

According to the Agricultural Specialist, the cropping potential of the study area is limited by the combination of climate and soil constraints. The climate is classified as arid; and soils are limited by shallow depth and limited drainage. Moisture availability is insufficient for viable rain-fed cropping. Although such cropping may have been done in the study area in the past, such production is no longer economically viable, and the agricultural potential of the study area is limited to being suitable for grazing only.

The current land-use within the study area is limited to grazing. The footprints of the proposed projects have deliberately avoided all areas of viable cropland towards the north-east (high agricultural sensitivity). The buildable areas are confirmed as low to medium agricultural sensitivity. Therefore cultivation (i.e. agricultural land-use) is not deemed feasible as a land-use alternative for assessment during the EIA Phase. The proposed project will also have wider societal benefits of generating additional income and employment in the local economy. The development of the proposed project at the preferred site is more favourable than the agricultural land-use alternative.

Hence, the agricultural land use is not a preferred alternative, and is not deemed as feasible for consideration in the EIA Phase, based on the motivation provided above.

5.1.3 Type of Activity Alternatives

In terms of the alternatives for the type of activity for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO), this is entirely dependent on the activity associated with the proposed solar PV facilities (Biesjesvlei PV1, Biesjesvlei PV2, and Biesjesvlei PV3). Essentially, the proposed solar PV facilities govern the type of activity associated with the proposed project. The activity to be undertaken for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) is therefore the transmission of electricity that will be generated by the proposed solar PV facilities. The only feasible method of transmitting the electricity that is generated by the proposed solar PV facilities to the national grid is via the MTS and overhead power lines i.e. LILO. Underground cabling is not deemed technically feasible as the voltage is considered to be too high. **Therefore, no other activity types were considered or deemed appropriate.**

5.1.4 Renewable Energy Alternatives

The information in this section is provided for contextual purposes.

The development of Solar PV is the preferred and only renewable energy technology to be developed on site because the site has a very good solar resource availability (i.e. Global Horizontal Irradiation of 2 000 to 2 200 kWh/m² in terms of the long-term yearly total) and the local conditions are favourable (Figure 5.1). No other renewable energy technologies are deemed to be feasible for the study area, as described below.

The study area does not contain any large inland water bodies, which excludes the possibility of renewable energy from small- or large-scale hydro energy generation. In terms of macroscale hydropower potential (Figure 5.1), the study area falls within an area classified as “Not Suitable” (i.e. less than 1 000 kWh/year).

The study area does have wind resources (i.e. 301 – 500 W/m²) (Figure 5.1), however other sites might have better wind resources.

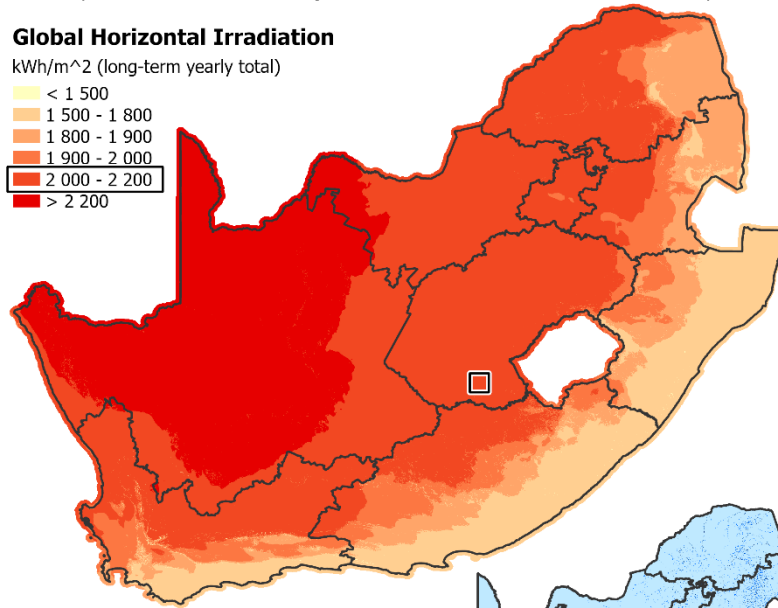
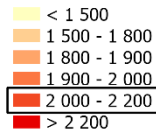
The study area does not contain an abundant or sustainable supply of biomass. As indicated in Figure 5.1, the study area has less than 5 000 t/a annual forestry residue, which is the lowest for this category. Therefore, the study area does not have any biomass energy potential.

Renewable energy resource potentials

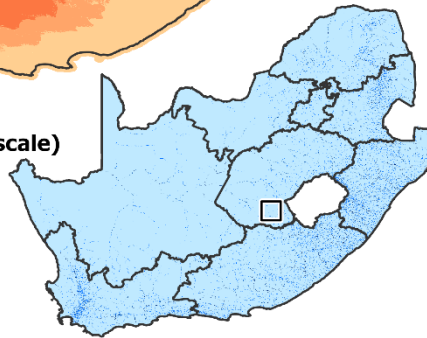
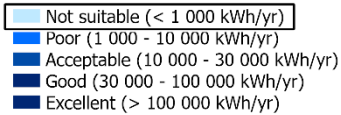
□ Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development

Global Horizontal Irradiation

kWh/m² (long-term yearly total)

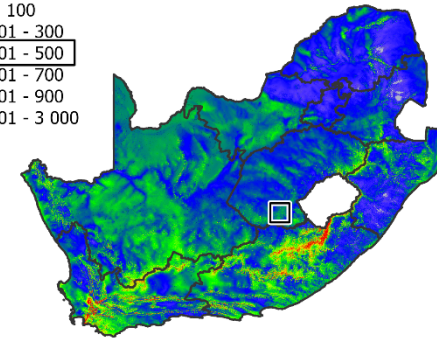
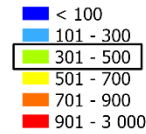


Hydro power suitability (macro-scale)



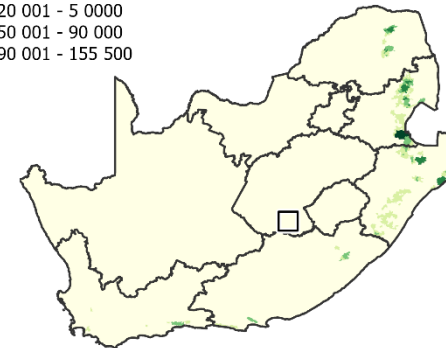
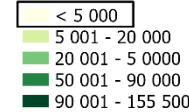
Mean Wind Power Density

W/m²



Annual forestry residue biomass

(t/a)



Thematic: CSIR | Data: SolarGIS, 2019; CSIR & DTU, 2019; CSIR, 1999; SAEON, 2013 | Date: 28 Nov 2023

Figure 5.1: Solar Resource Availability / Global Horizontal Irradiation (kWh/m²); Annual Mean Wind Power Density (W/m²); Hydropower Potential (kWh/year); and Biomass Potential in terms of Annual Forestry Residue (t/a) for South Africa. The proposed project location is indicated by the black square.

5.1.5 Site Alternatives

As per the requirements listed within Appendix 2 – [(1) (d)] and [(2) (1) (g) (ix)] of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), a site selection matrix should be provided to show how the preferred site was determined through a site selection process. Within this context, the “site” is the farms or land portions earmarked for the development of the proposed projects. This is essentially the study area, which consists of 11 farm portions, as indicated in Chapter 2. The total study area for Projects 1 to 10 is approximately 3 060 ha.

The preferred site (i.e. study area) was strategically selected by the Project Developer based on various factors and detailed research, as noted below:

- It was determined that one solar PV project (in the order of 350 MW) would not be able to justify the significant costs associated with developing a LILo to connect to the existing Eskom power line. Therefore, it was decided that three solar PV facilities would be required in order to justify the said costs. Therefore, the Project Developer targeted a site that was large enough to accommodate three solar PV facilities, BESS, and EGI, as well as associated infrastructure.
- As an initial step, the Project Developer undertook internal research, exploration work, and a desktop feasibility analysis (based on the grid connection options, solar resource and land availability) in order to identify the preferred site. When selecting the preferred site, the developer also considered the following:
 - Proximity to the national grid: The Eskom 400 kV Beta – Delphi power line runs through the study area, which makes a potential connection opportunity available for the proposed projects. This was a considerable pull factor in selecting the preferred site, as grid connection is an important factor.
 - Proximity to the Square Kilometre Array (SKA): It was also important for the site to be located outside of the Karoo Central Astronomy Advantage Area (KCAAA) so that there are no unacceptable impacts on the SKA, which could potentially be a fatal flaw or require significant investment in Radio Frequency Interference and Electromagnetic Control studies to be undertaken.
- The Project Developer then consulted the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) Screening Tool, other available datasets, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) Biodiversity GIS (BGIS) system, as well as the Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) No-Go Screening Tool, in order to identify desktop environmental sensitivities and to determine if there are any clear fatal flaws and concerns. The findings indicated that the study area is generally developable.
- The Project Developer then consulted with the owners of the farm portions forming the study area to obtain consent to develop the proposed projects, and to also identify any areas where development must be excluded based on the requirements of the landowners. These landowner exclusion zones were then acknowledged and implemented, which influenced the site selection process. Specifically, the adjacent farms Reineke's Kraal and De Draai were also considered for development, however the landowner explained that these properties need to

be excluded from the study area, as these properties are currently being used by the landowner for other purposes.

At a local level, the 11 farm portions for the development of the proposed projects were selected based on a combination of the factors listed above. Furthermore, from an impact and risk assessment perspective, the implementation of the proposed projects at the **preferred site** will most likely result in fewer risks in comparison to its implementation at alternative sites within the Free State (i.e. regions with similar solar radiation levels), based on the following points:

- There is no guarantee that the current land use of alternative sites will be flexible in terms of development potential, for example, the agricultural potential at the alternative sites might be higher and of greater significance.
- There is no guarantee of the willingness of other landowners to allow the implementation of a solar facility, BESS and EGI (including the MTS and LILO) on their land and if the landowners strongly object, then the project will not be feasible.
- There is no guarantee that other sites will be located close to existing or proposed EGI to enable connection to the national grid. The further away a project is from the grid, the higher the potential for significant environmental and economic impacts.

5.1.5.1 Site Specific Considerations

On a site specific level, the preferred site was deemed suitable due to all the site selection factors (such as land availability, environmental sensitivities, irradiation levels, distance to the national grid, site accessibility, topography, current land use and landowner willingness) being favourable. The site selection criteria considered by Scatec Africa (Pty) Ltd and Veroniva (Pty) Ltd are discussed in detail below in Table 5.1.

Table 5.1: Site selection factors and suitability of the preferred site for the development of the proposed projects

FACTOR	SUITABILITY OF THE PREFERRED SITE
Land Availability	The farm portions comprising the preferred site are of a suitable size for the proposed projects. The land available for the development of all the proposed projects is approximately 3 060 ha in extent. Although this total area was assessed by the specialists during the site sensitivity verifications, not all will be required for the permanent development footprint of the proposed projects and its associated infrastructure.
Environmental Sensitivity	Although the preferred site for the proposed projects does contain environmental features that need to be avoided due to very high or high environmental sensitivity, as described in Chapter 3 and Appendix E of this Scoping Report, following these exclusions sufficient suitable land is still available to ensure the development feasibility of the proposed projects.
Irradiation Levels	The availability of the solar resource is the main driver of project viability. The site was identified by the Project Developer through a desktop analysis based on the estimation of the solar energy resource, and other factors. This viable solar resource ensures the best value for money is gained from the project, allowing for competitive pricing and maximum generation potential, with the resulting direct and indirect benefits for the South African economy. The study area has a GHI of 2 000 to 2 200 kWh/m ² in terms of the long-term yearly total.
Distance to and availability of the Grid	The proposed projects are planned to connect to the existing Eskom Beta – Delphi 400 kV overhead power line via dedicated proposed 132 kV power lines, as well as the independent Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) (i.e. the

FACTOR	SUITABILITY OF THE PREFERRED SITE
	subject of this report). The Eskom Beta – Delphi 400 kV power line is located within the study area. This proximity presents a significant benefit to potential connection to the grid.
Site Accessibility	The study area can be accessed via existing roads. Specifically, Access Route Option A, Option B and Option C, which runs along the N6; S1262; and S119. Access Route Options A, B and C have different access points off the S119. Direct access to the proposed projects will be taken from the S119 along an existing farm access point, and thereafter new access roads will be developed within the study area, where they do not align with existing roads, or existing roads will be used where possible. Where new access roads are required within the study area, these will be 4 - 8 m wide. Where existing roads are used within the study area, they may need to be upgraded. Additional information is provided in Chapter 2 of this Scoping Report.
Topography	The Visual Specialist noted that the study area lies within an expansive gently rolling landscape of the Southern Free State uplands, composed of mudstone and sandstone of the Tarkastad Subgroup, Beaufort Group (Karoo Supergroup), interspersed with dolerite-capped koppies. The koppies are the main scenic features of the area and provide topographic relief. The elevation ranges from about 1500 to 1600 m in the local area.
Current Land Use	Agriculture (mainly livestock grazing)
Landowner Willingness	All affected landowners have signed letters of consent for the use of the land for the proposed projects (should an EA be granted). This is considered an important aspect of the proposed projects in terms of its viability (i.e. this will limit potential appeals during the decision-making process, as the landowner is willing and supportive of the proposed projects being undertaken on the affected farm portions).

Furthermore, one of the main determining points for the Project Developer was to find suitable, developable land in one contiguous block to (i) optimize design, (ii) minimize construction and operational costs, and (iii) minimize sprawling development and limit the impact footprints. In addition, the proximity to the existing Eskom 400 kV power line was also a major determinant for identifying suitable sites for the proposed development.

Given the site selection requirements and the suitability of the land available on the **preferred site**, and the fact that no initial fatal flaws are present on the site, as well as the motivating factors listed above, **no other site alternatives were considered as part of this Scoping and EIA Process. Therefore, the site is deemed feasible and selected as the preferred site.**

5.1.6 Location Alternatives – Development Footprint within the Preferred Site

The location of the proposed MTS and LILO is dictated by and dependent on the location of the Biesjesvlei PV facilities and the Eskom 400 kV Beta – Delphi power line, and therefore certain alternatives are not applicable or feasible. One of the aims was to obtain the most cost-effective route and distance between the Biesjesvlei PV facilities and the 400 kV Eskom power line. The overall aim of this proposed project (i.e. Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) is to provide the necessary electrical infrastructure to ensure that the proposed PV facilities are equipped and enabled to transmit the generated electricity (from the PV facilities to the national grid).

The strategic process followed to reach the preferred site and to consider various development footprints (or location alternatives) within the preferred site is discussed in this section and illustrated in Figure 5.2. The approach followed was to use environmental and social constraints

to avoid sensitive features, thus applying mitigation hierarchy thinking. This approach replaces the need to rank alternative sites and locations, as it leads to the selection of the least sensitive development footprint.

Once the preferred site was identified, the study area was plotted on the DFFE Screening Tool to identify high-level environmental sensitivities. Following this, the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (CSIR) and Specialists were appointed to undertake the Scoping and EIA Processes for the proposed projects.

The specialists then considered these high-level sensitivities identified on the Screening Tool and undertook Site Sensitivity Verifications (SSVs) within the study area, where required, in order to confirm or dispute the sensitivities identified by the Screening Tool. The specialists assessed the full extent of the preferred site (i.e. approximately 3 060 ha), which serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Processes. The specialists then formulated environmental feature and sensitivity maps for the study area (included as Chapter 3 and Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report). These maps show the identified environmental features and sensitivities such as terrestrial biodiversity, aquatic features, avifauna, heritage, visual, and geohydrological features present within the study area.

Based on the specialist findings, the Project Developer took such sensitivities, and other considerations, into account and formulated the **Buildable Areas**, which avoid the no-go areas identified by the specialists. The Buildable Areas are estimated to be 2 130 ha in extent.

The no-go or very highly sensitive environmental features found within the preferred site are able to be avoided by the location, layout and design of the proposed projects. Following the exclusion of the required areas, sufficient developable area is still available on site which does not compromise the current ecological integrity of the site. The current layout is thus a culmination of extensive technical, economic and environmental planning.

The layout currently proposed at this Scoping Phase will be further refined and/or detailed during the EIA Phase. Chapter 7 of this Final Scoping Report includes the proposed preliminary project layout.

It must be re-iterated that a strategic site, location and development footprint identification process has been followed, where the selection is informed by the environmental constraints identified through screening. This is based on the mitigation hierarchy approach of firstly trying to avoid impacts through careful siting. Therefore, it must be noted that different site, location or development footprint alternatives are not ranked, but rather a strategic process was followed (as shown in Figure 5.2) where sensitive features are screened out, such as in Table 5.1, in order to reach the preferred location or development footprint within the preferred site.

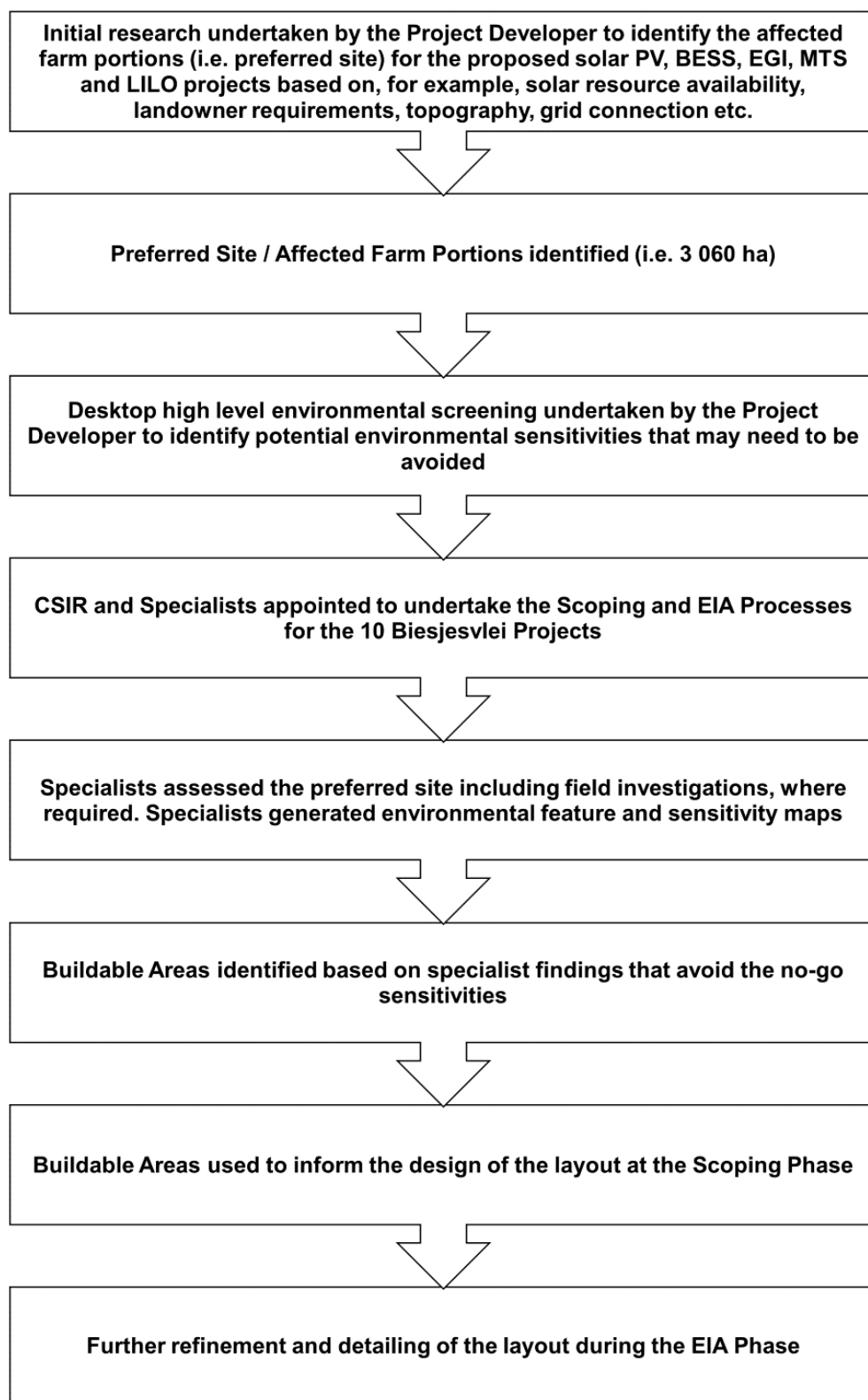


Figure 5.2: Process flow for the identification of the Preferred Site and Development Footprint

5.1.7 Technology Alternatives

The technology that is proposed for the construction and operation of the proposed MTS and LILO will be guided by national standards and best practice. The technology options and operational aspects are also governed by Eskom's requirements and building specifications. This therefore limits the amount of variability in terms of the technology and operational processes. The type of technology used will relate to the infrastructure being installed and constructed, such as the type of conductors, pylon structures and design, use of Bird Flight Diverters, and building structures for the MTS.

5.2 Concluding Statement of Preferred Alternatives

As per Appendix 2, Section 2 (1) (g) (xi) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), and based on Section 5.1 above, the following is a concluding statement on the alternatives considered:

- **No-Go Alternative:**
 - The no-go alternative would result in no environmental impacts (positive and negative) on the preferred site or surrounding local area, as a result of the proposed project. The no-go alternative will be assessed in the EIA Phase by all the specialists on the project team. **At this Scoping Phase, the no-go alternative is not preferred.**
- **Land-Use Alternative:**
 - The current land-use within the study area is limited to grazing. The buildable areas are confirmed as low to medium agricultural sensitivity. **Cultivation is not deemed feasible as a land-use alternative for assessment during the EIA Phase.** The development of the proposed projects at the preferred site is more favourable than the agricultural land-use alternative.
- **Type of Activity Alternative:**
 - The activity to be undertaken for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) is the transmission of electricity that will be generated by the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities. The only feasible method of transmitting the electricity to the national grid is via the proposed MTS and power lines (i.e. LILO). **Therefore, no other activity types were considered or deemed appropriate.**
- **Preferred Site and Development Footprint within the site:**
 - The preferred site for all the proposed Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 comprises the following farm portions, which serves as the 3 060 ha study area for this Scoping and EIA Process:
 - Farm Benoni 534;
 - Remaining Extent of Farm Biesjespoort 521;
 - Farm Biesjesvlei 372;
 - Farm Klein Badfontein 369;
 - Farm Modderkuil 396;
 - Farm Paalland 373;
 - Remaining Extent of Farm Pompoenfontein 118;

- Portion 1 of Farm Pompoenfontein 118;
 - Farm Ronde Bult 408;
 - Farm Salpetervlei 756; and
 - Portion 1 of Farm Schoemanskraal 34.
- At a specific (local) level, sites on the above listed farm properties were deemed suitable due to all the site selection factors (such as land availability, distance to the national grid, site accessibility, topography, current land use and landowner willingness) being favourable.
 - Furthermore, a screening and SSV exercise of the study area was undertaken by the specialist team during the Scoping Phase. This led to the identification of the Buildable Areas within the preferred site. The Buildable Areas avoid the no-go sensitivities identified by the specialists. The preliminary development footprint and layout was identified based on this.
 - The project layout will be detailed and confirmed following the input from the various specialists during the EIA Phase. A preliminary layout plan has been included in the Plan of Study for EIA (Chapter 7 of this Final Scoping Report).
- **Technology Alternatives:**
 - There are no feasible technology alternatives for power lines and substations.

5.3 Summary of Legislative Requirements for the Assessment of Alternatives

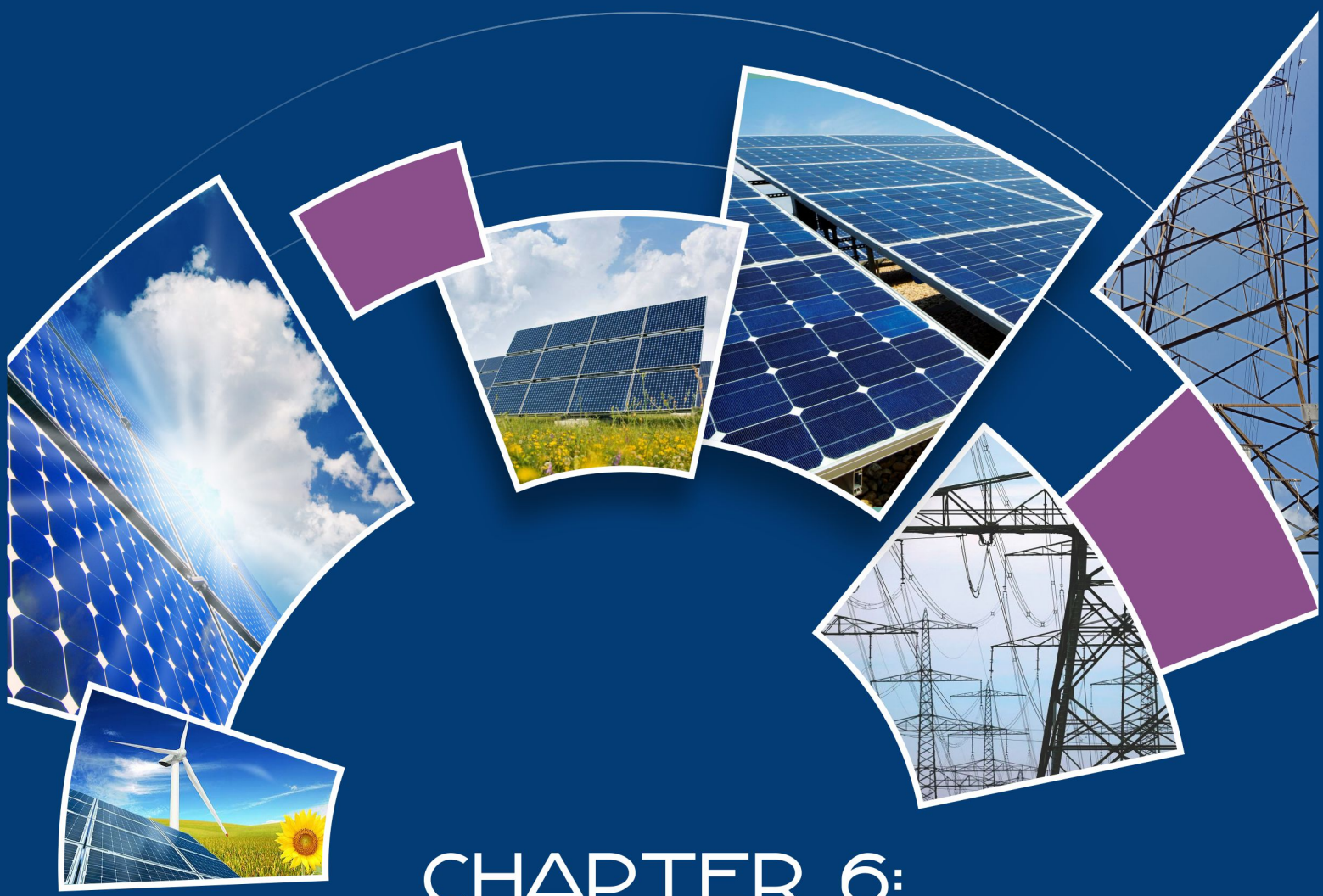
As noted in Chapter 1 of this Scoping Report, the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) have certain requirements in terms of the selection of the **proposed preferred activity, site and location of the development footprint within the site**. Table 5.2 below indicates the requirements of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) in terms of the process leading to the preferred activity, site and development footprint location alternatives. Table 5.2 also includes a response from the EAP showing how the requirements of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) have been addressed in this report.

Table 5.2: Requirements for the consideration of Alternatives based on the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)

	Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	Response from EAP
1	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (i)	<p>2. (1) A scoping report must contain the information that is necessary for a proper understanding of the process, informing all preferred alternatives, including location alternatives, the scope of the assessment, and the consultation process to be undertaken through the environmental impact assessment process, and must include:</p> <p>(g) a full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred activity, site and location of the development footprint within the site, including:</p> <p>(i) details of all the alternatives considered;</p>	<p>Refer to Section 5.1 and 5.3 (i.e. this section) of this chapter which provides a description of the process that led to the identification of the preferred alternatives and which alternatives will be taken further into the EIA Phase for assessment.</p>
2	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (ii)	<p>(ii) details of the public participation process undertaken in terms of regulation 41 of the Regulations, including copies of the supporting documents and inputs;</p>	<p>Refer to Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report and Appendix G, which details the process followed in terms of Public Participation and includes the supporting documentation.</p>
3	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (iii)	<p>(iii) a summary of the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and an indication of the manner in which the issues were incorporated, or the reasons for not including them;</p>	<p>Issues raised by Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) during the 30-day comment period on the Draft Scoping Report have been captured and responded to in an Issues and Responses Trail appended to this Final Scoping Report (Appendix G.7). No new issues or impacts were raised during this process that have not been addressed at a high-level during Scoping Phase or planned to be addressed in the EIA Phase. Chapter 6 of this Final Scoping Report includes a high-level assessment of the potential issues and impacts identified by the specialists during the Scoping Phase. Such issues are also captured in the Plan of Study for EIA (Chapter 7 of the Final Scoping Report).</p>
4	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (iv)	<p>(iv) the environmental attributes associated with the alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;</p>	<p>Refer to Chapter 3 and Appendix E of this Scoping Report for a description of the environmental sensitivities associated with the preferred site.</p> <p>Section 5.1.5 of this chapter also provides information on environmental attributes that</p>

	Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	Response from EAP
			were considered in the selection of the preferred site for the proposed projects.
5	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (v)	(v) the impacts and risks which have informed the identification of each alternative, including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of such identified impacts, including the degree to which these impacts: (aa) can be reversed; (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;	Feedback on the impacts and risks that informed the identification of the preferred activity (i.e. transmission of electricity generated by the Solar PV facilities) is provided in Section 5.1.5 and Section 5.1.6 above. Such feedback relating to the preferred site and location of the development footprint within the site is captured in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report. This chapter includes a high-level preliminary assessment of impacts and risks of the proposed projects at the preferred site, and it includes a description and assessment of the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the identified impacts for the preferred alternatives, as well as an assessment of the reversibility and irreplaceability of the potential identified impacts, as well as the degree to which the identified impacts can be avoided, managed or mitigated.
6	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (vi)	(vi) the methodology used in identifying and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks associated with the alternatives;	Refer to Chapter 7 of this Scoping Report for the impact assessment methodology that was used in the assessment of impacts captured in Chapter 6. The same impact assessment methodology will be used in the EIA Phase and as such has only been mentioned once in the Scoping Report.
7	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (vii)	(vii) positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;	Feedback on the impacts and risks that informed the identification of the preferred activity (i.e. transmission of electricity generated by the Solar PV facilities) is provided in Section 5.1.5 and Section 5.1.6 above. Such feedback relating to the preferred site is captured in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report. This chapter includes a high-level assessment of impacts and risks of the proposed projects at the preferred site.
8	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (viii)	(viii) the possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;	
9	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (ix)	(ix) the outcome of the site selection matrix;	Refer to Sections 5.1.4, 5.1.5 and 5.1.6 of this chapter for information on the process that led to the identification of the preferred site.
10	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (x)	(x) if no alternatives, including alternative locations for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and	Where no further alternatives were considered, a motivation has been provided in the relevant sections of this chapter.

	Section of the EIA Regulations	Requirements for a Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	Response from EAP
11	Appendix 2 – 2 – 1 – g – (xi)	(xi) a concluding statement indicating the preferred alternatives, including preferred location of the activity;	Refer to Section 5.2 of this chapter for a concluding statement.



CHAPTER 6: Issues and Potential Impacts

Contents

6. ISSUES AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS	6-3
6.1 Soils and Agriculture _____	6-3
6.2 Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species _____	6-4
6.3 Aquatic Biodiversity _____	6-9
6.4 Avifaunal Impacts _____	6-14
6.5 Visual Impacts _____	6-20
6.6 Heritage (including Archaeology and Cultural Landscape) _____	6-24
6.7 Palaeontology _____	6-27
6.8 Geotechnical _____	6-28
6.9 Civil Aviation _____	6-29
6.10 Conclusion _____	6-29

Tables

Table 6.1: Scoping level assessment of the potential Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species risks and impacts _____	6-4
Table 6.2: Scoping level assessment of the potential Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects _____	6-8
Table 6.3: Scoping level assessment of the potential Aquatic Biodiversity risks and impacts _____	6-9
Table 6.4: Scoping level assessment of the potential Avifauna risks and impacts _____	6-14
Table 6.5: Scoping level assessment of the potential Avifauna cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects _____	6-19
Table 6.6: Scoping level assessment of the potential Visual risks and impacts _____	6-20
Table 6.7: Scoping level assessment of the potential Visual cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects _____	6-22
Table 6.8: Scoping level assessment of the potential Heritage risks and impacts _____	6-24
Table 6.9: High-level summary table of potential preliminary impacts from a geotechnical perspective for the Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 _____	6-28

6. ISSUES AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS

This chapter presents a synthesis of the key preliminary issues, potential impacts (direct, indirect and cumulative, where applicable), and preliminary mitigation measures that have been identified by the specialist team thus far as part of the Scoping Process for the Biesjesvlei Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) project (i.e. Project 10).

The high-level preliminary impact assessment provided in each section is based on an evaluation of the status quo of the receiving environment, by the specialists, either through desktop assessments or site investigations. The impact ratings and mitigation measures are high-level for the purposes of Scoping, and, where necessary, will be confirmed and detailed during the EIA Phase. The issues raised during the 30-day review of the Draft Scoping Report (Appendix G.7 of this Final Scoping Report) are in line with the potential impacts and issues listed in this chapter. Where relevant, cumulative impacts are based on considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within a 30 km radius, as described in Chapter 7 of the Scoping Report, as well as the 10 proposed Biesjesvlei projects.

6.1 Soils and Agriculture

Formally rating potential agricultural impacts is not required by the Assessment Protocol of GN 320, however it is required to indicate whether the proposed development will have an unacceptable impact on the agricultural production capability of the site. The following potential impacts were identified during the Scoping Phase:

- Negative potential impacts (Construction, Operation and Decommissioning Phases):
 - Loss of agricultural potential by occupation of land. Agricultural land that is directly occupied by the proposed infrastructure will become unavailable for agricultural use.
 - Loss of agricultural potential by soil degradation. Erosion; topsoil loss; and contamination can cause soil degradation. Soil degradation will reduce the ability of the soil to support vegetation growth.
 - Loss of agricultural potential by dust generation. The disturbance of the soil surface will generate dust that can negatively impact the surrounding veld and farm animals.
- Positive potential impacts (Construction, Operation and Decommissioning Phases):
 - Increased financial security for farming operations. This is via the creation of a reliable income stream through the lease of the land for the proposed projects. This is likely to increase cash flow and could improve farming operations and productivity on other, higher potential parts of the farms through increased investment into farming.
 - Improved security against stock theft and other crime due to the presence of security infrastructure and security personnel.

The agricultural impact of the proposed projects is regarded as low significance. The potential cumulative agricultural impact of importance is a regional loss (including by degradation) of future agricultural production potential. The impact is regarded as low significance and will not have an unacceptable negative impact on the agricultural production capability of the area. Cumulative impacts will be discussed further in the EIA Phase in the Agricultural Compliance Statement.

6.2 Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species

Table 6.1 provides potential impacts for the proposed project from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective.

Table 6.2 provides a list of potential cumulative impacts from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective.

Table 6.1: Scoping level assessment of the potential Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species risks and impacts

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
DIRECT IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Habitat loss and fragmentation	Status	Negative	High (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The MTS should not be placed within High and Very High sensitivity areas and / or buffer zones. Accordingly, the Koppies habitat should be avoided. The Watercourse habitat should be avoided as per the sensitivity map compiled for Terrestrial Biodiversity. In addition, refer to the Aquatic Biodiversity SSV where the watercourse is delineated, mapped and suitable buffers recommended by the Aquatic specialist. ▪ Minimise impacts to surrounding natural areas by demarcating development footprint and clearly indicating no-go areas. Rehabilitate immediately after construction activities. ▪ Linear infrastructure such as roads and overhead powerlines can cross the Watercourse habitat as delineated and mapped by the Aquatic specialist, but it is advised to construct pylons outside the buffer areas. ▪ No construction related activities, such as the site camp, storage of materials, temporary roads or ablution facilities may be located in the very high sensitivity areas including their buffers. ▪ Vegetation and topsoil removal outside of areas planned for the MTS and LILo placement must be avoided. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Severe				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Loss of protected species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Where the approved layout designs impact on provincially protected individuals, permit applications are required for either the relocation or destruction of provincially protected species (FSNCO 8 of 1969). 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Long term				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Increased alien invasive species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implement an alien and invasive species control and monitoring plan in terms of NEMBA during and after construction. Alien invasive species establishment and spreading should be monitored on an ongoing basis to ensure that the disturbed areas do not become infested with such plants. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Increased erosion and soil compaction	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Utilise existing access routes as far as possible. Confine the movement of vehicles to the access routes to and from the site and to the construction areas. Do not drive in the natural veld. Rehabilitate new vehicle tracks and areas where the soil has been compacted (especially where pylons are constructed) as soon as possible. Monitor the entire site for signs of erosion throughout the construction phase of the project. Refer to mitigation measures relevant to watercourse crossings and development close to watercourses as recommended by the Aquatic Specialist. 	Very Low (5)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Littering and general pollution	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The site camp must not be located in very high sensitivity areas and their buffer zones. Dangerous goods may not be stored within 100m of a watercourse. Hydrocarbon fuels must be stored in a secure, bunded area. Sufficient waste disposal bins must be available on site and clearly marked. Skip bins may be required during the construction phase which must be emptied on a regular basis by an approved/licenced waste disposal contractor. Proof of disposal to be kept on file. Ablution facilities must be located outside sensitive areas and their buffer zones. 	Very Low (5)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short to Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Portable ablation facilities must be regularly cleaned and maintained in good working condition. Any spillage from ablation facilities must be cleaned up immediately and disposed of in an appropriate manner. Vehicles must be in good working condition, with no oil, water, or fuel leaks. Vehicles must be regularly inspected, and any problems corrected. Refuelling may only take place in an appropriate, bunded area. Refuelling may not take place in sensitive areas. Hydrocarbon spills must be contained and cleaned up immediately. Spill kits must be available on site in case of accidental spillage. 		
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Loss of species composition and diversity	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manage plants below overhead power line based on continuous maintenance as per the management plan. Implement appropriate rehabilitation measures to return the grassland to sustainable, productive use that was representative of the respective vegetation type prior to the commencement of construction. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Increased alien invasive species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow an alien and invasive species control and monitoring plan in terms of NEMBA by implementing appropriate control methods. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Littering and general pollution	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vehicles must be in good working condition, with no oil, water or fuel leaks. Vehicles must be regularly inspected, and any problems corrected. Refuelling may only take place in an appropriate, designated bunded area. Any spillages must be reported immediately and dealt with appropriately. Spill kits must be available on site in case of accidental spillage. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short to Medium term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sufficient waste disposal bins must be available on site and clearly marked. 		
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Loss of habitat	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The loss of vegetation is unavoidable within the approved layout development footprint, but sensitive areas must be avoided when dismantling of infrastructure. Implement appropriate rehabilitation measures to return the grassland to sustainable, productive use that was representative of the respective vegetation type prior to the commencement of construction. 	Very Low (5)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Short term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Low				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Increased alien invasive species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow an alien and invasive species control and monitoring plan in terms of NEMBA by implementing appropriate control methods during and after decommissioning. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Table 6.2: Scoping level assessment of the potential Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Status	Negative				
Habitat loss and fragmentation	Spatial Extent	Site specific	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimise impacts to surrounding natural areas by demarcating development footprint and clearly indicating no-go areas. Rehabilitate immediately after construction activities. Linear infrastructure such as roads and overhead powerlines can cross the Watercourse habitat as delineated and mapped by an Aquatic specialist, but it is advised to construct pylons outside the buffer areas. No construction related activities, such as the site camp, storage of materials, temporary roads or ablution facilities may be located in the very high sensitivity areas including their buffers. Vegetation and topsoil removal outside of areas planned for power line, MTS, IPP substation and switching station placement must be avoided. 	Very Low (5)	Medium
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Loss of protected species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where the approved layout designs impact on provincially protected individuals, permit applications are required for either the relocation or destruction of provincially protected species (FSNCO 8 of 1969). 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Increased alien invasive species	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implement an alien and invasive species control and monitoring plan in terms of NEMBA during and after construction. Alien invasive species establishment and spreading should be monitored on an ongoing basis to ensure that the disturbed areas do not become infested with such plants. If Alien Invasive Species are eradicated and managed at development sites, it should not be a problem cumulatively. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

6.3 Aquatic Biodiversity

Table 6.3 provides potential impacts from an aquatic biodiversity perspective.

Table 6.3: Scoping level assessment of the potential Aquatic Biodiversity risks and impacts

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
DIRECT IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Habitat Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Avoidance must be implemented i.e. the very high and high sensitivity areas identified, delineated and mapped by the Aquatic Specialist must be avoided. ▪ All contractors and staff are to have undergone an induction / training on the location of sensitive No-Go areas and basic environmental awareness using the mitigation provided in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment (to be detailed in the EIA Phase). ▪ Access routes into or adjacent to the wetlands must make use of existing road ways and crossings where possible. ▪ Areas where construction is to take place must be clearly demarcated. Any areas not demarcated must be avoided. ▪ Stormwater generated from roadways and denuded areas must be captured and buffered, where flow velocities are to be significantly reduced before discharge into the environment. ▪ Stormwater verges as well as other denuded areas must be grassed (re-vegetated) with local indigenous grasses to protect against erosion. ▪ Any materials excavated must not be deposited in the wetlands or areas where it is prone to being washed downstream or impeding natural flow. ▪ The installation of sedimentation/erosion protection measures must be implemented before the start of construction, e.g., 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
				<p>several rows of silt traps and fences (this is particularly important in the access roads leading or adjacent to the watercourses).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Stockpiling or storage of materials and/or waste must be placed beyond the defined buffers in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment for each respective activity. The buffers are also defined in the Aquatic Biodiversity SSV included as an appendix to the Scoping Report. ▪ No vehicles shall enter watercourse buffer zones outside of construction footprints. ▪ Hydrocarbons for refuelling purposes must be stored in a suitable storage device on an impermeable surface outside of the delineated wetland buffer zone. ▪ Disturbed areas must be re-vegetated after completion of the phase. A three-month timeframe for the initiation of this action is required. ▪ Drainage channels constructed for the access roads must be constructed so as not to result in erosion. ▪ An inspection of the drainage channels must be completed within 3 months following the end of activities and within a month after the first rainfall event which exceeds 50mm. Should excessive sediment be transported down the channels it is recommended that sediment screens are implemented. ▪ Sediment screens must be inspected, maintained and cleared every month or after significant rainfall (>150mm/24hrs). ▪ An alien vegetation removal and management plan must be implemented along the verges of the roads and crossing points. ▪ General stormwater management practices should be included in the design phase and implemented during the construction phase of this project. ▪ Watercourse monitoring should take place annually as part of the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr). The EMPr will be compiled during the EIA Phase. 		
Water Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Short term				

CHAPTER 6 – ISSUES AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Aquatic Habitat Connectivity Loss	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Habitat Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The implementation of the buffer zone stipulated in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment. The buffers are also defined in the Aquatic Biodiversity SSV included as an appendix to the Scoping Report. Clean and dirty surface water separation and a stormwater management plan must be put into place via standard best practice methods. A clear stormwater management plan for hardened surfaces must be implemented. The revegetation of disturbed non-active cleared areas must take place within the first growing season between September and March following completion of the activity. The above must be audited within 3 months of completing the phase. No discharge of domestic water must occur if possible. Domestic water must be reused for dust suppression. Monitoring of instream structures on an annual basis. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Water Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Aquatic Habitat Connectivity Loss	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Habitat Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All contractors and staff are to have undergone an induction / training on the location of sensitive No-Go areas and basic environmental awareness using the mitigation provided in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment (to be detailed in the EIA Phase). Areas where decommissioning is to take place must be clearly demarcated. Any areas not demarcated must be avoided. Stormwater generated from roadways must be captured and buffered, where flow velocities are to be significantly reduced before discharge into the environment. Stormwater verges as well as other denuded areas must be grassed (re-vegetated) with local indigenous grasses to protect against erosion. Any materials excavated must not be deposited in the wetlands or areas where it is prone to being washed downstream or impeding natural flow. Stockpiling or storage of materials and/or waste must be placed beyond the defined buffers in the Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Assessment for each respective activity. The buffers are also defined in the Aquatic Biodiversity SSV included as an appendix to the Scoping Report. No vehicles shall enter watercourse buffer zones outside of decommissioning footprints. No vehicles shall be serviced on site; a suitable workshop with appropriate pollution control facilities should be utilised offsite. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Short term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hydrocarbons for refuelling purposes must be stored in a suitable storage device on an impermeable surface outside of the delineated wetland buffer zone. Disturbed areas must be re-vegetated after completion of the phase. An alien vegetation removal and management plan must be implemented along the verges of the roads and crossing points. 		
Water Quality Degradation	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Short term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
Aquatic Habitat Connectivity Loss	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures provided above for the potential impact relating to Habitat Quality Degradation. 	Low (4)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Short term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Reversible				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				

6.4 Avifaunal Impacts

Table 6.4 provides potential impacts for the proposed project from an avifaunal perspective.

Table 6.5 provides potential cumulative impacts from an avifaunal perspective.

Table 6.4: Scoping level assessment of the potential Avifauna risks and impacts

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
DIRECT IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Disturbance of foraging and breeding behaviours of birds due to noise, dust and lighting. Sensory disturbances to avifauna are inevitable during the construction phase. Although dust, noise and human activity during construction is unavoidable, much can be done to reduce the effect of these sensory disturbance impacts on avifauna.	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Adopt temporal avoidance strategies to prevent executing the most intensive activities generating noise and dust during the most sensitive period between December to January when it is the most likely time that waterbirds will be attracted the site due to the presence of water. Therefore, intensive activities should be scheduled as far as practically possible between February-November (latest). Note that light activities such as normal vehicle use of the roads are not affected by this mitigation measure and these may proceed year-round. ▪ Minimise light pollution and fit external lighting with downward facing hoods. ▪ Enforce a speed limit of 40 km/h on site. ▪ If necessary, apply dust-suppression measures (road wetting) to limit dust. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
Irreplaceability	Low					
Loss of habitat due to clearing, trenching, alteration and exclusion from previously accessible habitats.	Status	Negative	High (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Limit the areas cleared for construction purposes (e.g. laydown areas). ▪ Do not implement a bare earth policy for construction of road servitudes. ▪ Rehabilitate all areas disturbed immediately after construction. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Severe				
Probability	Very likely					

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
Clearing of natural vegetation for the construction of the EGI will result in the loss, degradation and fragmentation of foraging and breeding habitat for avifauna.	Reversibility	Low		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prioritise existing roads for access routes, where possible. Implement an Alien and Invasive Plant Control Plan. All staff must undergo a strict induction process to inform them of the importance of preventing fires. 		
	Irreplaceability	Low				
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Continued disturbance due to operational activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.). Sensory disturbances to avifauna will still occur during the operation phase as described for the construction phase but is expected to be much reduced, intermittent and of lower intensity.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimise light pollution and fit external lighting with downward facing hoods. Enforce a speed limit of 40 km/h on site. If necessary, apply dust-suppression measures (road wetting) to limit dust. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
Irreplaceability	Low					
Loss of habitat due to altered and excluded habitats and threat of fire. Cleared natural vegetation replaced with infrastructure (i.e. EGI and substations) will result in the continued loss, degradation and	Status	Negative	High (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Limit the areas cleared for maintenance purposes. Implement an Alien and Invasive Plant Control Plan. All staff must undergo a strict induction process to inform them of the importance of preventing fires. 	Moderate (3)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Severe				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Low				
Irreplaceability	Low					

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
fragmentation of foraging and breeding habitat for avifauna.						
<p>Direct mortality from electrocution and collision with infrastructure (e.g. fences, overhead power lines)</p> <p>Mortality from collision and electrocution is a potential impact to avifauna from overhead power lines. This risk is likely to be highest in close proximity to areas of high habitat complexity and resource availability where bird abundances are higher (e.g. pans). In addition, vehicle induced collisions (direct collisions with vehicles or vehicle induced flushes into fence infrastructure) can pose significant direct mortality risk, especially to large ground dwelling species. In addition, electrocution of birds within the substations is also possible.</p>	Status	Negative	High (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For power lines, attempts should be made to minimise the route length to the closest existing substation and that the route should be aligned with existing power lines/roads as far as possible. ▪ Additionally, the route should avoid wetland crossings or potentially be routed underground if this is not possible utilising strict wetland rehabilitation measures to be captured in the EMPr. The EMPr will be compiled during the EIA Phase. ▪ In all raised power line crossings, power lines must install bird diverters to enhance visibility of lines. Install Eskom-approved bird flight diverters (flappers or coils) on above-ground transmission lines and any guide-wires used to anchor infrastructure such as pylons. This can help to increase the visibility of transmission lines and other infrastructure, especially the thinner earth line with which most collisions tend to be associated. ▪ Bird flight diverters need to be closely spaced (<15 m) on overhead power lines and must glow in the dark or have a light source to make the transmission lines more visible. ▪ Design of overhead electrical lines must take into account potential for electrocution by large species and pre-emptively avoid the likelihood of this by increasing distances between spans to avoid faecal “streamers” or large open wings creating a short. ▪ Avoid siting lines in areas where birds concentrate. ▪ Where possible, power lines of 132 kV or less should be buried underground. ▪ In order to reduce avian mortalities related to bird collisions or nests, perch guards should be installed on all infrastructure (such as poles and platforms). ▪ In all areas where the service road intersects with semi natural or natural habitat, all new fences that are constructed (if any) must be set back at least (strictly) 75 metres from the edge of every service road in order to allow for vulnerable species such as 	Moderate (3)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Medium Term				
	Consequence	Severe				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
				courssers, cranes and korhaans to obtain adequate height after being flushed by vehicle traffic. An alternative mitigation measure and where a 75 metre buffer is not possible, new fences must be set back preferably 2 metres and no more than 5 metres (directly adjacent) from the edge of service roads. Through the essential elimination of habitat, this will limit any chance of vulnerable species foraging on verge side vegetation and causing subsequent fence collisions. Speed limit enforcement must be implemented in conjunction with this.		
Attraction to the facility exacerbating potential impacts. Certain (mainly commensal species) are often attracted by the establishment of EGI as it presents additional resources in the form of perches, nesting habitat, shade and often food availability (increased rodents and weedy annual plants). This artificial increase in the abundance of some species has the effect of augmentation of the natural abundance and species composition of birds but more importantly places these opportunistic species and their predators at risk of	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Install bird deterrent devices on transmission line poles, pylons and / or monopoles to limit perching and minimise collision and electrocution risk. 	Low (4)	Moderate
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Long Term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
collision and electrocution.						
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Continued disturbance due to decommissioning activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.) Sensory disturbances to avifauna will still occur during the decommissioning phase as described for the construction phase but is expected to be of lower intensity.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Adopt temporal avoidance strategies to prevent executing the most intensive activities generating noise and dust during the most sensitive period between December to January when it is the most likely time that waterbirds will be attracted the site due to the presence of water. Therefore, intensive activities should be scheduled as far as practically possible between February-November (latest). Note that light activities such as normal vehicle use of the roads are not affected by this mitigation measure and these may proceed year-round. ▪ Minimise light pollution and fit external lighting with downward facing hoods. ▪ Enforce a speed limit of 40 km/h on site. ▪ If necessary, apply dust-suppression measures (road wetting) to limit dust. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Habitat loss reclamation from rehabilitation activities After removal of the EGI and the implementation of appropriate rehabilitation measures, the recovery of habitat and subsequently also the natural avifauna assemblages are expected to occur. However, this requires careful management to ensure success.	Status	Positive	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remove all infrastructure (mainly pylons) not originally present prior to the construction phase. ▪ Rehabilitate all areas disturbed immediately after decommissioning activities and removal of infrastructure. ▪ Continue to implement an Alien and Invasive Plant Control Plan until the rehabilitation specialist deems it unnecessary. 	Moderate (3)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	Low				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Potential mitigation measures / enhancement measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-Mitigation / Enhancement)	Confidence Level
	Status	Positive				
Removal of power lines to promote safe passage (lowering collision risk) through the site and avoiding attraction by birds perching and nesting.	Spatial Extent	Local	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> By removing the overhead electrical lines, the potential for electrocution by large species is no longer applicable. Removal of nests during decommissioning should not be a problem should the appropriate perch guards be installed during the construction period on all infrastructure (such as poles and platforms). 	High (2)	High
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Table 6.5: Scoping level assessment of the potential Avifauna cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Status	Negative				
CUMULATIVE IMPACTS						
Habitat loss Regional saturation of renewable energy facilities causing habitat loss	Status	Negative	High (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not able to be mitigated quantitatively within the project footprint / EIA. With regional application of mitigation measures (such as retrofitting and the application of diverters to lines within the PAOI, the Cumulative Impacts can be reduced to Low Significance). 	Moderate (3)	Medium
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Severe				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Low				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Collision mortality (power lines) Increased mortality due to higher densities of power lines	Status	Negative	High (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Application of bird diverters and flappers to all power line infrastructure as well as perch deterrents. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Regional				
	Duration	Long Term				
	Consequence	Severe				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

6.5 Visual Impacts

Table 6.6 provides potential impacts from a visual perspective.

Table 6.7 provides potential cumulative impact from a visual perspective.

Table 6.6: Scoping level assessment of the potential Visual risks and impacts

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
DIRECT IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Potential effect of dust and noise from trucks and construction machinery during the construction period, and the effect of this on nearby farmsteads and visitors to the area.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Locate construction camps and stockpiles in visually unobtrusive areas, away from public roads. Implement the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) with the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) during construction. The EMPr will be compiled during the EIA Phase. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Potential visual effect of haul roads, access roads, stockpiles and construction camps in the visually exposed landscape.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mitigation measures recommended are as per the above. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Potential visual intrusion of the MTS and LILo and related infrastructure on receptors.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> MTS and LILo to be located along unobtrusive corridors away from public roads and farmsteads if possible. The Salpetersvlei is owned/occupied by a landowner who is part of the project, hence this is not a concern from a visual perspective. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Reversibility	High		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Muted natural colours and non-reflective finishes to be used for structures generally. Access roads to be as narrow as possible, and existing roads or tracks used as far as possible. Outdoor/ security lighting to be fitted with reflectors to obscure the light source, and to minimise light spillage. 		
	Irreplaceability	Low				
Potential visual impact of an industrial type of activity on the pastoral / rural character and sense of place of the area.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mitigation measures recommended are as per the above. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Potential visual effect of any remaining structures, platforms and disused roads on the landscape.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> MTS and LILO facilities to be removed and/or recycled. Access roads no longer required to be ripped and regraded. Exposed or disturbed areas to be revegetated to blend with the surroundings. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Table 6.7: Scoping level assessment of the potential Visual cumulative risks and impacts of the proposed projects

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
CUMULATIVE IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Potential combined visual effect of the proposed three Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities; three Biesjesvlei BESS; three Biesjesvlei power lines and EGI; Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, and other developments in the 30 km radius (i.e. existing and proposed Eskom power lines and the proposed fibre optic cable) seen together.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mitigation measures recommended are as per those for the construction phase in Table 6.6. 	Low (4)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Potential combined visual effect of the proposed three Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities; three Biesjesvlei BESS; three Biesjesvlei power lines and EGI; Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, and other developments in the 30 km radius (i.e. existing and proposed Eskom power lines and the proposed fibre optic cable) seen together.	Status	Negative	Moderate (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mitigation measures recommended are as per those for the operational phase in Table 6.6. 	Moderate (3)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long Term				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Potential combined visual effect of the proposed three Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities; three Biesjesvlei BESS; three Biesjesvlei power lines and EGI; Biesjesvlei MTS and LILo, and other developments in the 30 km radius (i.e. existing and proposed Eskom power lines and the proposed fibre optic cable) seen together.	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mitigation measures recommended are as per those for the decommissioning phase in Table 6.6. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Short Term				
	Consequence	Moderate				
	Probability	Very Likely				
	Reversibility	High				
	Irreplaceability	Low				

6.6 Heritage (including Archaeology and Cultural Landscape)

The potential impacts are based on the types of heritage resources found to occur in the study area. These are primarily archaeological but also include graves, structures and the cultural landscape. All potential impacts might occur during construction, but landscape impacts would also occur during operation and decommissioning. The impact assessment will be refined during the EIA Phase.

Table 6.8 provides potential impacts from a heritage perspective.

Table 6.8: Scoping level assessment of the potential Heritage risks and impacts

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
DIRECT IMPACTS						
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
Damage or destruction of archaeological materials	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Report any chance finds to the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) and/or an archaeologist. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Site Specific				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Non-reversible				
Damage or destruction of graves	Status	Negative	Low (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fence known graves with a wire farm fence at least 5 m from all visible graves. Report any chance finds to the SAHRA and/or an archaeologist. Protect chance finds <i>in situ</i> and appoint an archaeologist to exhume with the necessary permits in place. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Extreme				
	Probability	Very unlikely				
	Reversibility	Non-reversible				
Damage to built heritage resources	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Demarcate buildings as no-go areas. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Site specific				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Substantial				
	Probability	Extremely unlikely				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Reversibility	Non-reversible				
	Irreplaceability	High				
Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimise the duration of the construction period, as best as possible. Ensure effective rehabilitation of areas that are not needed during operation. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
OPERATIONAL PHASE						
Intrusion of the power line, MTS into the landscape	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure that all maintenance vehicles stay within designated areas. Make use of lighting mitigation measures such as motion sensors and downlighting. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Long term				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
DECOMMISSIONING PHASE						
Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimise the duration of the decommissioning period, as best as possible. Ensure effective rehabilitation of all areas that are decommissioned and affected. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Medium				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				
CUMULATIVE IMPACTS						
Impacts to archaeology, graves, and buildings	Status	Negative	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures noted above for the corresponding impact for the construction phase. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Spatial Extent	Local				
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Unlikely				
	Reversibility	Non-reversible				
	Irreplaceability	High				

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance / Ranking (Pre-mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance / Ranking (Post-mitigation)	Confidence Level
	Status	Negative				
Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape	Spatial Extent	Local	Very Low (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the mitigation measures noted above for the corresponding impacts for the construction, operational and decommissioning phases. 	Very Low (5)	High
	Duration	Permanent				
	Consequence	Slight				
	Probability	Very likely				
	Reversibility	Moderate				
	Irreplaceability	Moderate				

6.7 Palaeontology

Refer to the Palaeontology Site Sensitivity Verification (SSV)¹ in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report for additional information on the palaeontology within the study area, as well as feedback on the motivation for no further palaeontology assessments being required for the proposed projects. The Palaeontology SSV applies to Projects 1 to 10 collectively.

Based on a recent palaeontological site visit, the specialist concluded that the overall palaeosensitivity of the study area is rated as Low to Very Low. However, the potential for rare, largely unpredictable fossil sites of High palaeosensitivity associated with older alluvial and pan deposits in the subsurface cannot be entirely discounted. Such sites are best handled using the Chance Fossil Finds Protocol outlined in the Palaeontology SSV.

If any fossiliferous deposits are exposed by surface clearance or excavations during the construction phase of the proposed projects, the Chance Fossils Finds Protocol outlined in the Palaeontology SSV should also be fully implemented. These recommendations will also be included in the Environmental Management Programmes (EMPrs) for the proposed project during the EIA Phase.

Pending the discovery of significant, previously unrecorded fossil sites in the Construction Phase (which can be handled using a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol), no further specialist palaeontological studies, reporting, monitoring or mitigation are considered necessary for the proposed projects.

Based on the above, an impact assessment is not required. The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) confirmed that this approach for Palaeontology is accepted. Refer to Appendix G.6 of this Final Scoping Report for a copy of this correspondence.

¹ The Palaeontology SSV addresses all projects (i.e. Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10).

6.8 Geotechnical

Refer to Appendix E.8 of this Scoping Report for the Geotechnical Letter of Opinion that applies to Projects 1 to 10 collectively. The letter of opinion is not a formal impact assessment, as discussed and agreed with the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) during the Pre-Application Meeting. However, the impacts are listed and described on a high-level. Potential impacts on the geotechnical conditions as a consequence of the proposed development are described in Table 6.9 for the construction, operation and decommissioning phases. Based on previous similar projects, these potential impacts are generally considered low significance without the implementation of mitigation measures.

Table 6.9: High-level summary table of potential preliminary impacts from a geotechnical perspective for the Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10²

Phase	Potential Impact	Description
Construction	Displacement of geologic material	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initial construction stages often involve actions like topsoil removal, site grading, and rock extraction. These actions lead to the depletion of geological resources, disruption of natural soil integrity, and removal of vegetation, all contributing to soil erosion.
Construction Operational Decommissioning	Contamination of subsoils and loss of topsoil.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Construction activities necessitate the use of heavy machinery, notably during earthwork tasks. This machinery includes graders, bulldozers, rollers, excavators, water trucks, and concrete mixers. Such equipment requires regular maintenance, involving greasing, and operates using hydraulic fluid and diesel, posing a potential risk of contaminating geological materials. Throughout the operational phase, maintenance activities or accidental spillages may lead to potential contamination of geological materials. During the decommissioning phase, dismantling the infrastructure may require heavy machinery. The maintenance and refuelling of this machinery increase the likelihood of spillages, posing a potential risk of contaminating geological materials.
Operational Decommissioning	Increased unnatural hard surfaces yielding increased runoff, potentially increasing erosion.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Throughout the operational phase, access points and internal roads will be established, characterized by newly constructed road layers that create artificial hardened surfaces. This construction may also involve the installation of earth or concrete drains designed to redirect water away from access points and roads. However, these measures could lead to heightened runoff, consequently amplifying erosion. In the decommissioning phase, the presence of access points, internal roads, and adequate drainage will persist. The enduring existence of artificial hard surfaces will likely perpetuate increased runoff, contributing to ongoing erosion.

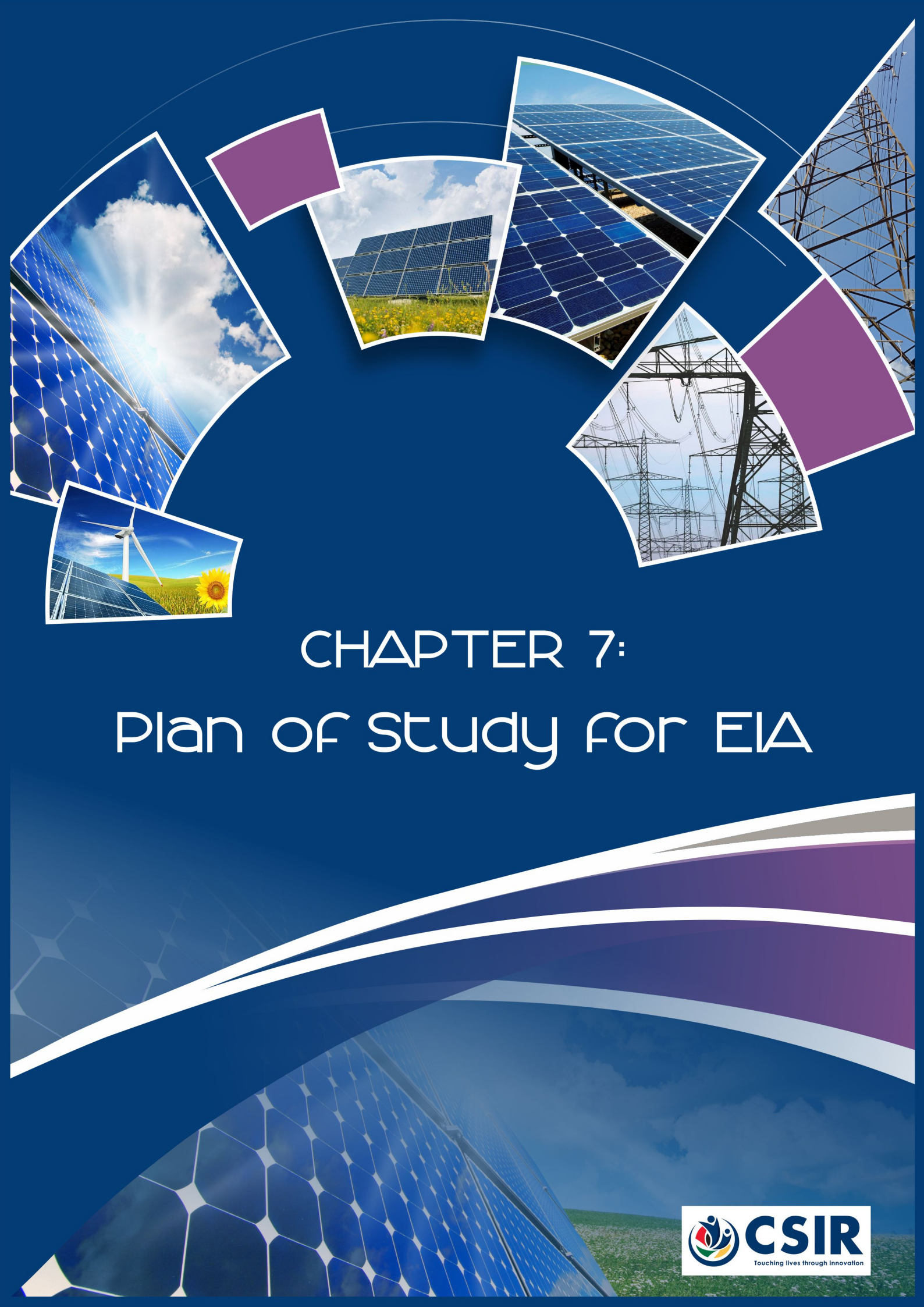
² The Geotechnical Letter of Opinion addresses all projects (i.e. Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10).

6.9 Civil Aviation

As indicated in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report, the National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool (Screening Tool) has indicated that the study area and development footprints fall within an area of low sensitivity from a Civil Aviation perspective. The low sensitivity was verified and confirmed via a site visit. An SSV is provided in Appendix E.9 of this Scoping Report. Based on the requirements of GN 320, if a site is verified as low sensitivity, there are no further requirements. Therefore, no impact assessment is required in this regard.

6.10 Conclusion

At the Scoping Phase, based on the preliminary impacts described above, there are no negative impacts that are rated as Very High significance after mitigation. Overall, it can be concluded that the effect of potential impacts can be limited or reduced to acceptable levels through avoidance, minimisation and the implementation of appropriate mitigation measures and management actions during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases.



CHAPTER 7: Plan of Study for EIA

Contents

7. PLAN OF STUDY FOR THE EIA	7-3
7.1 Purpose of EIA and Requirements of the EIA Regulations	7-3
7.2 Overview of Approach to Preparing the EIA Report and EMPr	7-5
7.3 Public Participation Process	7-6
7.3.1 Task 1 – I&AP Review of the EIA Report and EMPr	7-6
7.3.2 Task 2 – Comments and Responses Report	7-8
7.3.3 Task 3 – Compilation of the Final EIA Reports for Submission to DFFE	7-8
7.3.4 Task 4 – Environmental Authorisation (EA) and Appeal Process	7-9
7.4 Authority Consultation during the EIA Phase	7-9
7.5 Approach to the Impact Assessment Methodology and Specialist Assessments	7-10
7.5.1 Impact Assessment Methodology	7-10
7.5.2 Cumulative Impact Assessment Methodology	7-16
7.6 Issues or impacts to be assessed as part of the EIA Process	7-19
7.7 Alternatives to be assessed in the EIA Phase	7-26
7.8 Terms of Reference for the Specialist Assessments	7-27
7.8.1 Agricultural Compliance Statement	7-28
7.8.2 Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment and Species Compliance Statement	7-30
7.8.3 Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment	7-32
7.8.4 Avifauna Impact Assessment	7-34
7.8.5 Visual Impact Assessment	7-37
7.8.6 Heritage Impact Assessment	7-38
7.8.7 Palaeontology SSV	7-40
7.8.8 Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion	7-40
7.8.9 Civil Aviation	7-42
7.9 Project Layout to be Assessed/Refined during the EIA Phase	7-42

Tables

Table 7.1: Requirements for the Plan of Study for EIA in accordance with the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)	7-4
Table 7.2: EMPRs to be compiled in the EIA Phase	7-5
Table 7.3: Authority Communication Schedule	7-10
Table 7.4: Example of Table for Assessment of Impacts/Risks	7-16
Table 7.5: Proposed EGI projects, located within 30 km of the proposed Biesjesvlei projects, that will be considered in the Cumulative Impact Assessment (in addition to the Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10) (Source: DFFE REEA, Quarter 4, 2023; and SAHRIS)	7-17
Table 7.6: Summary of Issues to be addressed during the EIA Phase as part of the specialist assessments / input	7-19
Table 7.7: Summary of Issues raised by Stakeholders during the 30-day comment period on the Draft Scoping Report	7-23

Figures

Figure 7.1: Guide to assessing risk/impact significance as a result of consequence and probability	7-14
Figure 7.2: EGI projects within the 30 km radius considered for the Cumulative Impact Assessment (Source: DFFE REEA Quarter 4, 2023; and SAHRIS).	7-18
Figure 7.3: Preliminary Project Layout Map for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)	7-43
Figure 7.4: Combined Preliminary Project Layout and Sensitivity Map for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)	7-44

7. PLAN OF STUDY FOR THE EIA

This chapter presents the Plan of Study for the Environmental Impact Assessment (PSEIA), which sets out the process to be followed in the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Phase as required by the 2014 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998, as amended) (NEMA) EIA Regulations, as amended. The PSEIA is based on the outcomes of the Scoping Phase (to date, i.e. until submission of the Final Scoping Report (FSR) for consideration) and provides the Terms of Reference (ToR) for the specialist assessments that have been identified, the alternatives that will be considered and assessed, as well as the public participation process (PPP) that will be undertaken during the EIA Phase for the proposed Biesjesvlei Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) (Project 10).

7.1 Purpose of EIA and Requirements of the EIA Regulations

As captured in Section 2 of Appendix 3 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), which specifies the content requirements for EIA Reports, *“the purpose of the EIA Phase is to, through a consultative process:*

- *Determine the policy and legislative context within which the activity is located and document how the proposed activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;*
- *Describe the need and desirability of the proposed activity, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the development footprint on the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report;*
- *Identify the location of the development footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report based on an impact and risk assessment process inclusive of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects of the environment;*
- *Determine the:*
 - *nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts occurring to inform identified preferred alternatives; and*
 - *degree to which these impacts:*
 - (aa) can be reversed;*
 - (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources, and*
 - (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;*
- *Identify the most ideal location for the activity within the development footprint of the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report based on the lowest level of environmental sensitivity identified during the assessment;*
- *Identify, assess and rank the potential impacts that the activity will impose on the development footprint on the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report through the life of the activity;*
- *Identify suitable measures to avoid, manage or mitigate identified impacts; and*
- *Identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.”*

The EIA Phase consists of three parallel and overlapping processes:

- Central assessment process through which inputs are integrated and presented in an EIA Report that is submitted for approval to the National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) and other commenting authorities (Sections 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4 of this chapter);
- Undertaking of a PPP whereby findings of the EIA Phase are communicated and discussed with Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) and responses are documented (Section 7.3 of this chapter); and
- Undertaking of specialist assessments / inputs / technical studies / letter of opinions that provide additional information or assessments required to address the issues raised in the Scoping Phase (Sections 7.5, 7.6 and 7.8 of this chapter).

Table 7.1 below shows the requirements for the PSEIA in accordance with Appendix 2 (2) (1) (h) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

Table 7.1: Requirements for the Plan of Study for EIA in accordance with the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended)

Section of the EIA Regulations: Appendix 2 (2) (1) (h)	Requirements for a PSEIA in the Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended (Government Notice (GN) R326)	Section of this Chapter of the PSEIA in which the required information is discussed
h	A plan of study for undertaking the EIA process to be undertaken, including –	
i	a description of the alternatives to be considered and assessed within the preferred site, including the option of not proceeding with the activity;	Section 7.7
ii	a description of the aspects to be assessed as part of the environmental impact assessment process;	Sections 7.5 to 7.8
iii	aspects to be assessed by specialists;	Sections 7.5 to 7.8
iv	a description of the proposed method of assessing the environmental aspects including aspects to be assessed by specialists;	Section 7.5
v	a description of the proposed method of assessing duration and significance;	Section 7.5
vi	an indication of the stages at which the Competent Authority will be consulted;	Section 7.3 and Section 7.4
vii	particulars of the public participation process that will be conducted during the environmental impact assessment process;	Section 7.3
viii	a description of the tasks that will be undertaken as part of the environmental impact assessment process; and	Section 7.2, Section 7.3, Section 7.4, Section 7.5 and Section 7.8
ix	identify suitable measures to avoid, reverse, mitigate or manage identified impacts and to determine the extent of the residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.	Section 7.8 (note that Chapter 6 includes high-level management actions identified during the Scoping Phase. Section 7.8 of this

Section of the EIA Regulations: Appendix 2 (2) (1) (h)	Requirements for a PSEIA in the Scoping Report in terms of Appendix 2 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended (Government Notice (GN) R326)	Section of this Chapter of the PSEIA in which the required information is discussed
		chapter highlights which specialist studies will include such measures).

7.2 Overview of Approach to Preparing the EIA Report and EMPr

The specialist studies / inputs / technical studies / letters of opinion are being undertaken based on compliance with relevant legislation and based on the ToR indicated in Section 7.8 of this chapter. The results of the specialist assessments and other relevant project information and research undertaken for the proposed projects will be integrated into the Draft EIA Report. The Draft EIA Report will be released for a 30-day I&AP and authority comment period, as outlined in Sections 7.3 and 7.4 of this chapter. I&APs registered on the project database will be notified in writing of the release of the Draft EIA Report for comment.

Comments raised, through written correspondence (emails and letters) will be captured in a Comments and Responses Report for inclusion in the Final EIA Report that will be submitted to the DFFE for decision-making. Refer to Section 7.3.2 of this chapter for additional information regarding this process.

The Draft and Final EIA Reports will include Environmental Management Programmes (EMPrs), which will be prepared in compliance with the relevant regulations. The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) or must be a Generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a Government Notice (GN). As part of the 2016 Electricity Grid Infrastructure (EGI) Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA), a Generic EMPr was compiled for the development and expansion of (a) overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure; and (b) substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity. On 2 March 2018, these two Generic EMPrs were gazetted in Government Gazette (GG) 41473, GN 162 and GN 163, for public comment for a period of 45 days. On 22 March 2019, these two Generic EMPrs were gazetted for implementation, in GG 42323, GN 435.

The following EMPrs are planned to be compiled for the proposed project and will comply the following legislation noted in Table 7.2.

Table 7.2: EMPrs to be compiled in the EIA Phase

Projects	Environmental Management Programmes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ PROJECT 10: The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV Main Transmission Substation (MTS) and a 400 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Generic EMPr for the MTS (GG 42323, GN 435, Generic EMPr for Substations).

Projects	Environmental Management Programmes
kV Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) from the MTS to an existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Generic EMPr for the 400 kV LILO (GG 42323, GN 435, Generic EMPr for Power Lines).

The EMPrs will be based broadly on the environmental management philosophy presented in the ISO 14001 standard, which embodies an approach of continual improvement. Actions in the EMPr will be drawn primarily from the impact management actions in the specialist assessments for the construction and operational phases of the project. If the project components are decommissioned or re-developed this will need to be done in accordance with the relevant environmental standards and clean-up/remediation requirements applicable at the time. However, general management actions for the decommissioning phase will be provided.

7.3 Public Participation Process

The PPP in the EIA Phase will be undertaken in compliance with Chapter 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

The key steps in the PPP for the EIA Phase are described below.

The PPP for the Scoping Phase is described in detail in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report. As discussed in Chapter 1 and Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report, an integrated PPP is being undertaken for the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar Photovoltaic (PV) facilities, Battery Energy Storage Systems (BESS), 132 kV power lines, MTS and LILO, which will entail that all public participation documents will serve to notify the I&APs and Organs of State of the joint availability of the reports for the aforementioned projects, and will provide I&APs with an opportunity to comment on the reports.

7.3.1 Task 1 – I&AP Review of the EIA Report and EMPr

The first stage in the process will entail the release of the Draft EIA Reports for a 30-day I&AP and stakeholder comment period. Relevant stakeholders, Organs of State and I&APs will be informed of the review period in the following manner:

- **Database Maintenance:** In line with Regulation 42 of GN R326, an initial database of potential I&APs (including key stakeholders and Organs of State) was developed for the Scoping and EIA processes and will be updated throughout the process. Appendix F of this Scoping Report includes a copy of the I&AP database, which indicates all I&APs that have been added to the electronic project database, to date. While I&APs have been encouraged to register their interest in the project from the start of the process, following the public announcements, the identification and registration of I&APs is ongoing for the duration of the study. As a result, I&AP details will be captured and automatically updated as and when information is distributed to or received from I&APs. I&APs will only be removed or de-registered from the database,

upon request. The updated database will be used to provide written notification of the release of the Draft EIA Reports for comment.

- **Protection of Personal Information:** In accordance with the Protection of Personal Information Act (Act 4 of 2013), the CSIR will conduct itself responsibly when collecting, processing, storing and sharing any personal information collected for the purposes of PPP in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). By registering as an I&AP and/or submitting information and comments, the stakeholder essentially consents to the collection, collation, processing, and storing of such information and the use and disclosure of such information for the aforementioned purpose¹. The stakeholders will also be given an opportunity to send an email to the EAP if they wish to opt out of communications on the proposed projects.
- **Advertisements to Register Interest:** Advertisements will be placed in Afrikaans, English, isiXhosa, and Sesotho in at least two local newspapers, at the commencement of the 30-day comment period for the Draft EIA Reports. A copy of the content of the advertisement will be included as an Appendix in the Draft EIA Reports, along with proof of placement included in the Final EIA Report.
- **Letter 3² to I&APs (Outcome of the consideration of the FSRs and commencement of EIA Phase):** Written notification of the outcome of the consideration of the FSRs and the commencement of the EIA Phase (i.e. Letter 3) will be sent to all I&APs and Organs of State included on the updated project database via email, where email addresses are available. This letter will be sent once the outcome of the consideration of the FSRs is received by the Competent Authority (i.e. at most 43 days after acknowledgment of receipt of the FSRs by the DFFE). Letter 3 will include notification of the commencement of the EIA Phase for the proposed projects, and it will be written in English. Copies of Letter 3 and emails sent will be included in the Draft EIA Reports that will be released for a 30-day review period.
- **Letter 4 to I&APs (Availability of the Draft EIA Reports for public comment):** Written notification of the availability of the Draft EIA Reports (i.e. Letter 4) will be sent to all I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State included on the updated project database via email, where email addresses are available. This letter will be sent at the commencement of the 30-day review period on the Draft EIA Reports, and will include information on the proposed projects and notification of the release and availability of the reports. Letter 4 will be written in English. Proof of email, as well as copies of the Letter 4, will be included in the Final EIA Reports that will be submitted to the DFFE for decision-making.
- **Text Messaging:** SMS texts will also be sent to all I&APs on the updated project database, where cell phone numbers are available, to inform them of the proposed projects and how to access the Draft EIA Reports.

¹ CSIR Privacy Notice. Website: <https://www.csir.co.za/csir-privacy-notice>

² Note that Letters 1, 2, and 3 are addressed in Chapter 4 of this Scoping Report and apply to the Scoping Phase.

- **Local Networks:** Where possible, communication will be made with the relevant Municipal Ward Councillor and/or similar community forums to request that they send notifications of the proposed projects, report availability and executive summaries via their local networks (such as WhatsApp groups, Neighbourhood Watch groups, other social media mechanisms etc.).
- **30-day Comment Period:** As noted above, potential I&APs, including authorities and Organs of State, will be notified via Letter 4, of the 30-day comment and registration period within which to submit comments on the Draft EIA Reports and/or to register on the I&AP database.
- **Executive Summaries:** Executive summaries of the Draft EIA Reports will also be uploaded to the project website and alternative web-platforms.
- **Availability of Information:** The Draft EIA Reports will be uploaded to the project website (i.e. <https://www.csir.co.za/environmental-impact-assessment>) for I&APs to access it. As a supplementary mechanism, the Draft EIA Reports will also be uploaded to other alternative web-platforms such as Google Drive. If an I&AP cannot access the reports via the project website, via the alternative web-platforms such as Google Drive, and if additional information is required (other than what is provided in the Executive Summaries), then the I&AP can contact the EAP, who will then make an electronic copy available (where feasibly possible).

7.3.2 Task 2 – Comments and Responses Report

A key component of the S&EIA process is documenting and responding to the comments received from I&APs and the authorities. Copies of all written comments received during the review of the Draft EIA Reports will be compiled into a Comments and Responses Report for inclusion in an appendix to the Final EIA Reports that will be submitted to the DFFE for decision-making. The Comments and Responses Report will indicate the nature of the comment, as well as when and who raised the comment. The comments received will be considered by the EIA team and appropriate responses provided by the relevant member of the EIA team, the Project Developer and/or specialists. The response provided will indicate how the comment received has been dealt with in the EIA Process and considered in the Final EIA Reports, the project design or EMPs. Should the comment received fall beyond the scope of this EIA, clear reasoning will be provided.

7.3.3 Task 3 – Compilation of the Final EIA Reports for Submission to DFFE

Following the 30-day commenting period on the Draft EIA Reports and incorporation of the comments received into the reports, the Final EIA Reports will be submitted to the DFFE for decision-making in line with Regulation 23 (1) (a) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). The reports will be submitted electronically to the DFFE via the Novell S-Filer system, as recommended by the DFFE since June 2020.

In line with best practice, I&APs on the project database will be notified via **Letter 5** via email (where email addresses are available) of the submission of the Final EIA Reports to the DFFE for decision-making. To ensure ongoing access to information, copies of the Final EIA Reports that have been submitted for decision-making and the Comments and Response Reports (detailing comments received during the EIA Phase and responses thereto) will be placed on the project

website (i.e. <https://www.csir.co.za/environmental-impact-assessment>). As a supplementary mechanism, the Final EIA Reports will also be uploaded to other alternative web-platforms such as Google Drive.

The Final EIA Reports, which will be submitted for decision-making to the DFFE, will include proof of the PPP that was undertaken to inform Organs of State, Stakeholders and I&APs of the availability of the Draft EIA Reports for the 30-day comment period (as explained above).

The DFFE will have 107 days (from receipt of the Final EIA Reports) to either grant or refuse EA (in line with Regulation 24 (1) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended). However, it is understood that decision-making for renewable energy applications is being reduced to 57 days, as best as possible.

7.3.4 Task 4 – Environmental Authorisation (EA) and Appeal Process

Subsequent to the decision-making phase, if EAs are granted by the DFFE for the proposed projects, all registered I&APs, Organs of State and Stakeholders on the project database will receive notification of the issuing of the EAs and the associated appeal period. The 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) (i.e., Regulation 4 (1)) states that after the Competent Authority has reached a decision, it must inform the Project Applicant of the decision, in writing, within 5 days of such decision. Regulation 4 (2) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) stipulates that I&APs need to be informed of the EA and associated appeal period within 14 days of the date of the decision.

The notification of the EAs (should such authorisations be granted by the DFFE), as well as the notification of the appeal period, will include a letter (i.e., **Letter 6** (Release of EAs and Notification of Opportunity to Appeal)) to be sent via email to all registered I&APs, Stakeholders and Organs of State on the project database, where email addresses are available. The letter will include information on the appeal period, as well as details regarding where to obtain a copy of the EAs. SMS texts will also be sent to all I&APs on the database, where cell phone numbers are available, to inform them of the EAs (should they be granted).

7.4 Authority Consultation during the EIA Phase

Authority consultation is integrated into the PPP, with meetings or discussions held on online platforms with the lead authorities, where necessary. It is proposed that the Competent Authority (i.e., DFFE) as well as other lead authorities will be consulted at various stages during the EIA Process, if required. At this stage, the following authorities have been identified for the purpose of this EIA Process (additional authorities might be added to this list as the EIA Process progresses):

- Air Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS)
- AgriSA;
- Agri Free State (Free State Agriculture);
- Birdlife South Africa;
- Department of Transport;
- Department of Water and Sanitation;
- DFFE Integrated Environmental Authorisations Directorate;
- DFFE Biodiversity and Conservation Directorate;
- DFFE Protected Areas Directorate;
- Endangered Wildlife Trust;
- Eskom SOC Ltd;

- Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEA);
- Free State Provincial Heritage Resources Authority (FSPHRA);
- National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA);
- Xhariep District Municipality;
- Mohokare Local Municipality;
- South African Civil Aviation Authority (CAA);
- South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA);
- South African Local Government Association (SALGA) (Free State);
- South African National Parks (SANParks);
- South African National Roads Authority (SANRAL);
- South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO);
- South African Weather Services (SAWS);
- VulPro;
- Wildlife and Environmental Society of South Africa (WESSA); and
- World Wildlife Fund South Africa (WWF SA).

The authority consultation process for the EIA Phase is outlined in Table 7.3 below.

Table 7.3: Authority Communication Schedule

STAGE IN EIA PHASE	FORM OF CONSULTATION
During preparation of EIA Reports	Communication (via email or online platforms (i.e. Microsoft Teams)) with the DFFE on the outcome of Specialist Studies, if required.
On submission of EIA Reports for comment	Online meetings with dedicated departments, if requested by the DFFE, with jurisdiction over particular aspects of the project (e.g. Local Authority).

7.5 Approach to the Impact Assessment Methodology and Specialist Assessments

This section outlines the assessment methodology and legal context for specialist assessments, as recommended by the then Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) 2006 Guideline on Assessment of Impacts.

7.5.1 Impact Assessment Methodology

The Impact Assessment Methodology has been aligned with the requirements for EIA Reports as stipulated in Appendix 3 (3) (1) (j) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended) which states the following:

“An environmental impact assessment report must contain the information that is necessary for the Competent Authority to consider and come to a decision on the application, and must include an assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk, including-

- (i) *cumulative impacts;*
- (ii) *the nature, significance and consequences of the impact and risk;*
- (iii) *the extent and duration of the impact and risk;*

- (iv) *the probability of the impact and risk occurring;*
- (v) *the degree to which the impact and risk can be reversed;*
- (vi) *the degree to which the impact and risk may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and*
- (vii) *the degree to which the impact and risk can be mitigated”.*

The identification of potential impacts includes impacts that may occur during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the development. The assessment of impacts includes direct, indirect as well as cumulative impacts. In order to identify potential impacts (both positive and negative) it is important that the nature of the proposed projects is well understood so that the impacts associated with the projects can be assessed. The process of identification and assessment of impacts will include:

- Determining the current environmental conditions in sufficient detail so that there is a baseline against which impacts can be identified and measured;
- Determining future changes to the environment that will occur if the activity does not proceed;
- Develop an understanding of the activity in sufficient detail to understand its consequences; and
- The identification of significant impacts, which are likely to occur if the activity is undertaken.

The following principles underpin the application of this methodology:

- Transparent and repeatable process - specialists are to describe the thresholds and limits they apply in their assessment, wherever possible.
- Adapt parameters to context (where justified) – the methodology proposes some thresholds (e.g. for spatial extent, in Step 3 below), however, if the nature of the impact requires a different definition of the categories of spatial extent, then this can be provided and described by the specialist.
- Combination of a quantitative and qualitative assessment – where possible, specialists are to provide quantitative assessments (e.g. areas of habitat affected, number of jobs), however, it is recognised that not all impacts can be quantified, and then qualitative assessments are to be provided.

As per the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEAT) Guideline 5: Assessment of Alternatives and Impacts, the following methodology is applied to the prediction and assessment of impacts and risks. Potential impacts and risks will be rated in terms of direct, indirect and cumulative impacts:

- **Direct impacts** are impacts that are caused directly by the activity and generally occur at the same time and at the place of the activity. These impacts are usually associated with the construction, operation or maintenance of an activity and are generally obvious and quantifiable.
- **Indirect impacts** of an activity are indirect or induced changes that may occur as a result of the activity. These types of impacts include all the potential impacts that do not manifest immediately when the activity is undertaken, or which occur at a different place as a result of the activity.

- **Cumulative impacts** are impacts that result from the incremental impact of the proposed activity on a common resource when added to the impacts of other past, present or reasonably foreseeable future activities. Cumulative impacts can occur from the collective impacts of individual minor actions over a period of time and can include both direct and indirect impacts.

In addition to the above, the Impact Assessment Methodology includes the following aspects:

- **Step 1: Nature of impact/risk** - this reviews the type of effect that a proposed activity will have on the environment and includes “what will be affected and how?” The term environment has a broad interpretation that includes both the natural (biophysical) environment and the socio-economic environment. The term socio-ecological system is also used to describe the natural and socio-economic environment and the interactions amongst these components.
- **Step 2: Status** - Whether the impact/risk on the overall environment (social, biophysical and economic) will be:
 - Positive - environment overall will benefit from the impact/risk;
 - Negative - environment overall will be adversely affected by the impact/risk; or
 - Neutral - environment overall will not be affected.
 - Note: The significance of a negative impact may be called a risk, and the significance of a positive impact may be called an opportunity.
- **Step 3: Qualitative determination of the consequence of the impact/risk by identifying the a) spatial extent; b) duration; c) reversibility; and d) irreplaceability.**
 - **A) Spatial extent** – The size of the area that will be affected by the impact/risk:
 - Site specific;
 - Local (<10 km from site);
 - Regional (<100 km of site / within the district municipality);
 - National; or
 - International (e.g. Greenhouse Gas emissions or migrant birds).
 - **B) Duration** – The timeframe during which the impact/risk will be experienced:
 - Very short term (instantaneous);
 - Short term (less than 1 year);
 - Medium term (1 to 10 years);
 - Long term (the impact will cease after the operational life of the activity (i.e. the impact or risk will occur for the project duration)); or
 - Permanent (mitigation will not occur in such a way or in such a time span that the impact can be considered transient (i.e. the impact will occur beyond the project decommissioning)).
 - **C) Reversibility** of the Impacts - the extent to which the impacts/risks are reversible assuming that the project has reached the end of its life cycle (decommissioning phase):
 - High reversibility of impacts (impact is highly reversible at end of project life i.e. this is the most favourable assessment for the environment);
 - Moderate reversibility of impacts;

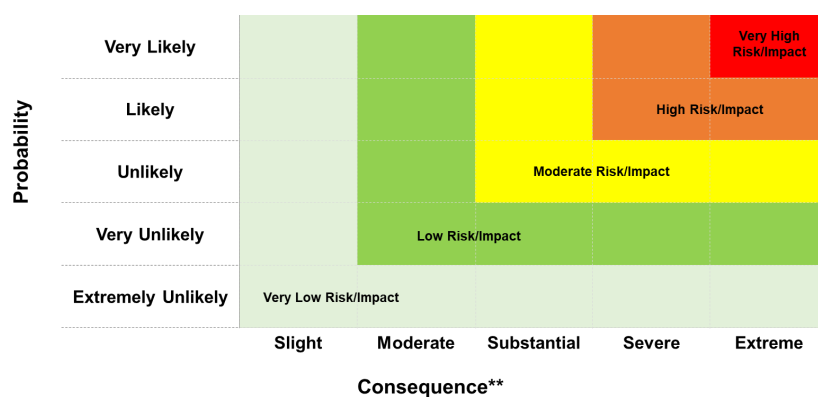
- Low reversibility of impacts; or
 - Impacts are non-reversible (impact is permanent, i.e. this is the least favourable assessment for the environment).
- **D) Irreplaceability** of Receiving Environment/Resource Loss caused by impacts/risks – the degree to which the impact causes irreplaceable loss of resources assuming that the project has reached the end of its life cycle (decommissioning phase):
- High irreplaceability of resources (project will destroy unique resources that cannot be replaced, i.e. this is the least favourable assessment for the environment);
 - Moderate irreplaceability of resources;
 - Low irreplaceability of resources; or
 - Resources are replaceable (the affected resource is easy to replace/rehabilitate, i.e. this is the most favourable assessment for the environment).

These criteria are then combined in a qualitative manner to determine the **consequence**. The consequence terms ranging from slight to extreme (as described below) will be calibrated per Specialist Study, where required, so that there is transparency and consistency in the way a risk/impact is measured.

- **Consequence** – The anticipated consequence of the risk/impact is generally defined as follows:
 - Extreme (extreme alteration of natural or socio-economic systems, patterns or processes, i.e. where environmental or socio-economic functions and processes are altered such that they permanently cease);
 - Severe (severe alteration of natural or socio-economic systems, patterns or processes, i.e. where environmental or socio-economic functions and processes are altered such that they temporarily or permanently cease);
 - Substantial (substantial alteration of natural or socio-economic systems, patterns or processes, i.e. where environmental or socio-economic functions and processes are altered such that they temporarily or permanently cease);
 - Moderate (notable alteration of natural or socio-economic systems, patterns or processes, i.e. where the natural or socio-economic environment continues to function but in a modified manner; or
 - Slight (negligible and transient alteration of natural or socio-economic systems, patterns or processes, i.e. where natural systems/environmental or socio-economic functions, patterns, or processes are not affected in a measurable manner, or if affected, that effect is transient and the system recovers).

- **Step 4:** The **probability** of the impact/risk must be rated using the criteria below:
 - **Probability** – The probability of the impact/risk occurring:
 - Extremely unlikely (little to no chance of occurring);
 - Very unlikely (<30% chance of occurring);
 - Unlikely (30-50% chance of occurring)
 - Likely (51 – 90% chance of occurring); or
 - Very Likely (>90% chance of occurring regardless of prevention measures).

- **Step 5:** Determination of the **significance** of the identified impact/risk using both the **consequence** and **probability** (qualitatively as shown in Figure 7.1). The approach incorporates internationally recognised methods from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) (2014) assessment of the effects of climate change and is based on an interpretation of existing information in relation to the proposed activity, to generate an integrated picture of the risks related to a specified activity in a given location, with and without mitigation. Risk is assessed for each significant stressor (e.g. physical disturbance), on each different type of receiving entity (e.g. the municipal capacity, a sensitive wetland), qualitatively (very low, low, moderate, high, very high) against a predefined set of criteria. Significance definitions and rankings are provided below:



***[Qualitatively determined based on Spatial Extent, Duration, Reversibility and Irreplaceability]*

Figure 7.1: Guide to assessing risk/impact significance as a result of consequence and probability

- **Significance** – Will the impact cause a notable alteration of the environment?
 - Very low (the risk/impact may result in very minor alterations of the environment and can be easily avoided by implementing appropriate mitigation measures, and will not have an influence on decision-making);
 - Low (the risk/impact may result in minor alterations of the environment and can be easily avoided by implementing appropriate mitigation measures, and will not have an influence on decision-making);
 - Moderate (the risk/impact will result in moderate alteration of the environment and can be reduced or avoided by implementing the appropriate mitigation measures, and will only have an influence on the decision-making if not mitigated);
 - High (the risk/impact will result in major alteration to the environment even with the implementation on the appropriate mitigation measures and will have an influence on decision-making); and
 - Very high (the risk/impact will result in very major alteration to the environment even with the implementation on the appropriate mitigation measures and will have an influence on decision-making (i.e. the project cannot be authorised unless major changes to the engineering design are carried out to reduce the significance rating)).

With the implementation of mitigation measures, the residual impacts/risks are ranked as follows in terms of significance:

- Very low = 5;
 - Low = 4;
 - Moderate = 3;
 - High = 2; and
 - Very high = 1.
- **Step 6:** Determine the **Confidence Level** – The degree of confidence in predictions based on available information and specialist knowledge:
- Low;
 - Medium; or
 - High.

Other aspects to be taken into consideration in the assessment of impact significance are:

- Impacts are to be evaluated for the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the proposed developments. The assessment of impacts for the decommissioning phase will be brief, as there is limited understanding at this stage of what this might entail. The relevant rehabilitation guidelines and legal requirements applicable at the time will need to be applied;
- Impacts will be evaluated with and without mitigation in order to determine the effectiveness of mitigation measures on reducing the significance of a particular impact;
- The impact evaluation will, where possible, take into consideration the cumulative effects associated with the Biesjesvlei projects (Projects 1 to 10) and other Wind and Solar PV, and EGI projects which are either developed or in the process of being developed in the local area (i.e. within 30 km from the proposed study area). Refer to Section 7.5.2 for a description of the cumulative impact assessment methodology; and
- The impact assessment will attempt to quantify the magnitude of potential impacts (direct, indirect and cumulative effects) and outline the rationale used. Where appropriate, national standards are to be used as a measure of the level of impact.

Impacts will then be collated into the EMPs and these will include the following:

- Quantifiable standards for measuring and monitoring mitigatory measures and enhancements will be set. This will include a programme for monitoring and reviewing the recommendations to ensure their ongoing effectiveness;
- Identifying negative impacts and prescribing mitigation measures to avoid or reduce negative impacts. Where no mitigatory measures are possible this will be stated; and
- Positive impacts will be identified and augmentation measures will be identified to potentially enhance positive impacts where possible.

Table 7.4 below will be used by the specialists for the rating of impacts, and repeated for the Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases.

Table 7.4: Example of Table for Assessment of Impacts/Risks

Impact	Impact Criteria		Significance and Ranking (Pre-Mitigation)	Potential mitigation measures	Significance and Ranking (Post-Mitigation)	Confidence Level
CONSTRUCTION PHASE						
<i>Habitat and species loss as a result of clearance of vegetation for the PV Facility</i>	Status	<i>Negative</i>	<i>Moderate (3)</i>	<i>Plant search and rescue (EMPr)</i>	<i>Low (4)</i>	<i>Medium</i>
	Spatial Extent	<i>Site Specific</i>				
	Duration	<i>Long-term</i>				
	Consequence	<i>Substantial</i>				
	Probability	<i>Very likely</i>				
	Reversibility	<i>Moderate</i>				
	Irreplaceability	<i>Moderate</i>				

7.5.2 Cumulative Impact Assessment Methodology

The cumulative impact assessment will aim to include other renewable energy projects (i.e. Wind and Solar PV) and EGI projects within a 30 km radius that are in different stages of planning and/or development (e.g. have received an EA, BA/EIA in progress at the commencement of this Scoping and EIA Process, or has been constructed); including the proposed Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10.

The information has been sourced from the National DFFE Renewable Energy EIA Application (REEA) database; the South African Heritage Resources Information System (SAHRIS), as well as the 2022 Eskom Eskom Generation Connection Capacity Assessment (GCCA).

Based on the above databases, no other proposed or existing BESS, Solar PV or Wind developments have been identified within a 30 km radius of the Biesjesvlei study area. All withdrawn or lapsed projects will not be considered.

The REEA states that the following project is located within the 30 km radius of the study area:

- Reference Number: 12/12/20/2179;
- Title: Proposed construction of a 10 MW PV Solar Facility near Kakamas, Northern Cape Province; and
- EA Status: Approved.

However, the above project is incorrectly indicated on REEA as being located in the Free State. The above project is in fact located within the Northern Cape (i.e. the proposed development of the Inca Solar PV project near Kakamas) (SAHRA, 2011³), and thus does not fall within the 30 km radius of the study area.

Table 7.5 provides more details, whilst Figure 7.2 provides an illustration of the projects that will be considered in the cumulative impact assessment.

³ SAHRA (2011). Review Comment on Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed Inca Solar PV Power Plant near Kakamas, Northern Cape. Accessed online: <https://sahris.sahra.org.za/sites/default/files/heritagereports/ARC%20Inca%20PV.pdf> [December 2023].

Table 7.5: Proposed EGI projects, located within 30 km of the proposed Biesjesvlei projects, that will be considered in the Cumulative Impact Assessment (in addition to the Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10) (Source: DFFE REEA, Quarter 4, 2023; and SAHRIS)

CSIR NUMBER	DFFE REFERENCE	TECHNOLOGY	MW/KV	STATUS	PROJECT TITLE	EIA REGULATIONS	ASSESSMENT PROCESS	APPLICANT	EAP
1	• 12/12/20/2139	Fibre Optics	N/A	Unknown	• Fibre Optic Cable between Johannesburg and Cape Town	NEMA 2010	Basic Assessment	Sirius Access Solutions (Pty) Ltd / Opti-Communications (Pty) Ltd	Jeffares & Green (Pty) Ltd
2	• Not Applicable	Electrical infrastructure	22 kV	Unknown	• 8.8 km 22 kV powerline in the area between Edenburg and Smithfield, Free State province	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Eskom SOC Ltd	Not Applicable
3	• Not Applicable	Electrical infrastructure	22 kV	Unknown	• Notification of a deviation of a 692 m of fox conductor power line in the Smithfield area, Free State	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Eskom SOC Ltd	Not Applicable
4	• Not Applicable	Electrical infrastructure	22 kV	Unknown	• Eskom RESY 22 kV power line deviation	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Eskom SOC Ltd	Not Applicable
5	• 12/12/20/230	Electrical infrastructure	400 kV	Operational	• Existing Beta Delphi 1 powerline - 400 kV	GN R1182 (September 1997) of the Environmental Conservation Act (Act 73 of 1989)	Scoping and EIA	Eskom SOC Ltd	P. D. Naidoo & Associates
Shown as the study area	• Biesjesvlei PV1: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2526 • Biesjesvlei PV2: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2531 • Biesjesvlei PV3: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2533	Solar PV	Up to 350 MW DC each	In Scoping and EIA Phase	• PROJECTS 1 to 3: The proposed development of three Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Facilities and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei PV1 to Biesjesvlei PV3).	NEMA 2014	Scoping and EIA	Biesjesvlei 1 (Pty) Ltd Biesjesvlei 2 (Pty) Ltd Biesjesvlei 3 (Pty) Ltd	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)
Shown as the study area	• Biesjesvlei BESS 1: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2527 • Biesjesvlei BESS 2: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2529 • Biesjesvlei BESS 3: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2532	BESS	Not Applicable	In Scoping and EIA Phase	• PROJECTS 4 to 6: The proposed development of three Battery Energy Storage Systems (BESS) and associated infrastructure for Biesjesvlei PV1 to PV3 (Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to Biesjesvlei BESS 3).	NEMA 2014	Scoping and EIA	Biesjesvlei 4 (Pty) Ltd	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)
Shown as the study area	• Biesjesvlei EGI 1: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2528 • Biesjesvlei EGI 2: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2530 • Biesjesvlei EGI 3: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2534	Electrical infrastructure	132 kV each	In Scoping and EIA Phase	• PROJECTS 7 to 9: The proposed development of a 132 kV Overhead Power Line from each Biesjesvlei PV Facility to the proposed MTS, and associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to Biesjesvlei EGI 3).	NEMA 2014	Scoping and EIA	Biesjesvlei 1 (Pty) Ltd Biesjesvlei 2 (Pty) Ltd Biesjesvlei 3 (Pty) Ltd	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)
Shown as the study area	• Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2535	Electrical infrastructure	400 kV LILO 400/132kV MTS	In Scoping and EIA Phase	• PROJECT 10: The proposed development of an independent 400/132kV MTS and a 400 kV LILO from the MTS to the existing Eskom power line, as well as associated infrastructure (i.e. Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)	NEMA 2014	Scoping and EIA	Biesjesvlei 1 (Pty) Ltd	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

Proposed 3 x 350 MW Biesjesvlei Solar PV, BESS and EGI Development near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

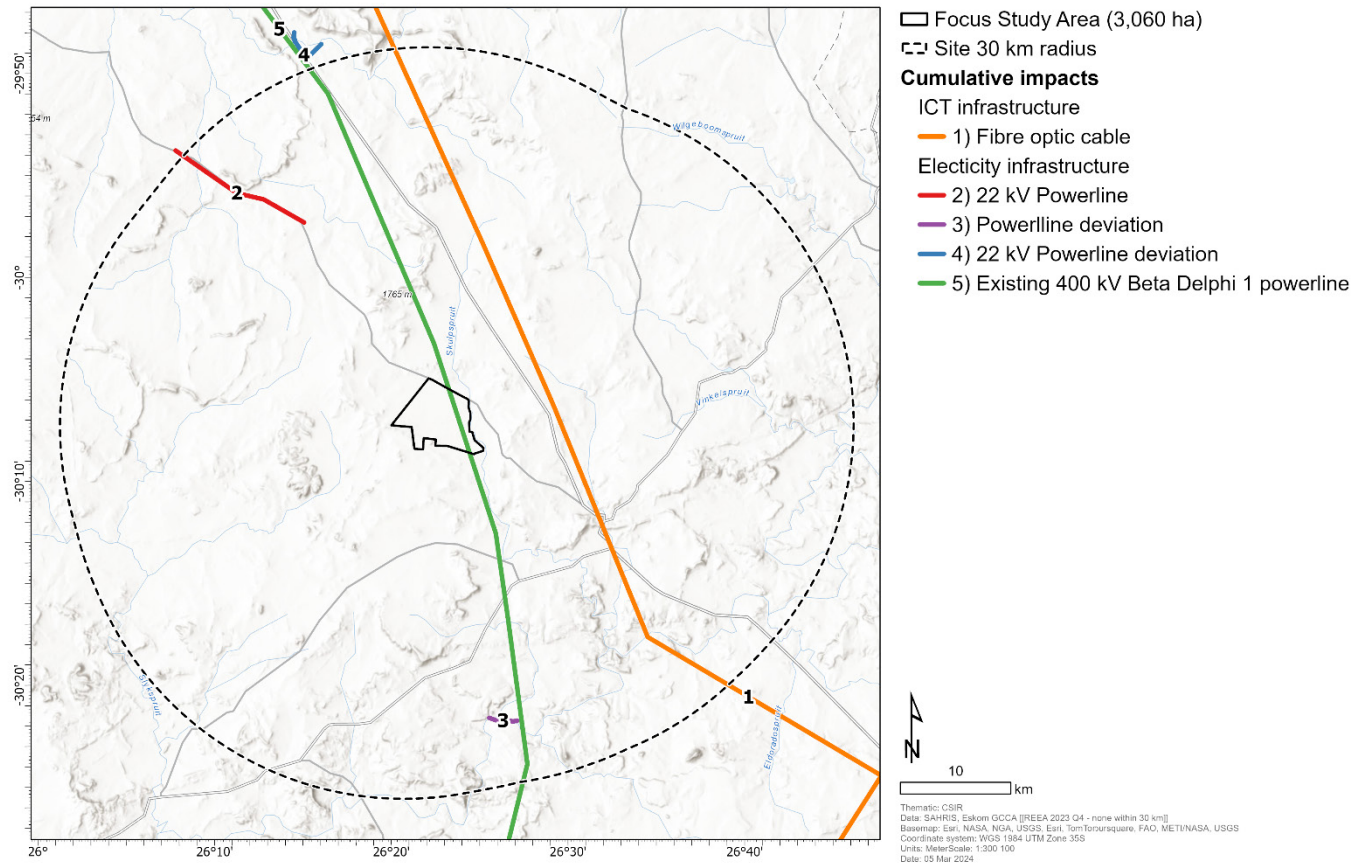


Figure 7.2: EGI projects within the 30 km radius considered for the Cumulative Impact Assessment (Source: DFFE REEA Quarter 4, 2023; and SAHRIS).

7.6 Issues or impacts to be assessed as part of the EIA Process

The preliminary potential issues and impacts presented in this section have been identified at a high-level at the Scoping Phase by the specialists that form part of the EIA project team. These issues and impacts have been rated at a high-level in Chapter 6 of this Scoping Report and will be updated and finalised, as required, during the EIA Phase.

Table 7.6 provides a summary of the main direct preliminary and potential issues and impacts identified during the Scoping Phase. Refer to Chapter 6 for a list of preliminary potential cumulative impacts.

Table 7.6: Summary of Issues to be addressed during the EIA Phase as part of the specialist assessments / input

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key issues to be addressed
Agriculture and Soils Compliance Statement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Negative potential impacts: (Construction, Operation and Decommissioning Phases): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Loss of agricultural potential by occupation of land. ○ Loss of agricultural potential by soil degradation. ○ Loss of agricultural potential by dust generation. ▪ Positive potential impacts (Construction, Operation and Decommissioning Phases): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Increased financial security for farming operations. ○ Improved security against stock theft and other crime due to the presence of security infrastructure and security personnel.
Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment; Terrestrial Plant Species Compliance Statement; Terrestrial Animal Species Compliance Statement	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat loss and fragmentation; ▪ Loss of protected species; ▪ Increased alien invasive species; ▪ Increased erosion and soil compaction; and ▪ Littering and general pollution. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loss of species composition and diversity; ▪ Increased alien invasive species; and ▪ Littering and general pollution.

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key issues to be addressed
	<p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loss of habitat; and ▪ Increased alien invasive species. <p>Note: The information presented below applies to all Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 as well as the proposed and existing EGI projects within a 30 km radius (noted in Table 7.5).</p> <p>Cumulative Impacts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat loss and fragmentation. ▪ Loss of protected species; and ▪ Increased alien invasive species.
Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment	<p>Construction, Operational, Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat quality degradation; ▪ Water quality degradation; and ▪ Aquatic habitat connectivity loss.
Avifauna Impact Assessment	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Disturbance of foraging and breeding behaviours of birds due to noise, dust and lighting; and ▪ Loss of habitat due to clearing, trenching, alteration and exclusion from previously accessible habitats. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Continued disturbance due to operational activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.); ▪ Loss of habitat due to altered and excluded habitats and threat of fire; ▪ Direct mortality from electrocution and collision with infrastructure (e.g. fences, overhead power lines); ▪ Attraction to the facility exacerbating potential impacts. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Continued disturbance due to decommissioning activities (use of vehicles, lights etc.); ▪ Habitat loss reclamation from rehabilitation activities (<i>positive impact</i>); and ▪ Removal of power lines to promote safe passage (lowering collision risk) through the site and avoiding attraction by birds perching and nesting (<i>positive impact</i>). <p>Note: The information presented below only applies to all Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 as well as the proposed and existing EGI projects within a 30 km radius (noted in Table 7.5).</p>

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key issues to be addressed
Visual Impact Assessment	<p>Cumulative Impacts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat loss; and ▪ Collision mortality (power lines). <p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential effect of dust and noise from trucks and construction machinery during the construction period, and the effect of this on nearby farmsteads and visitors to the area. ▪ Potential visual effect of haul roads, access roads, stockpiles and construction camps in the visually exposed landscape. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential visual intrusion of the MTS and LILO and related infrastructure on receptors. ▪ Potential visual impact of an industrial type of activity on the pastoral / rural character and sense of place of the area. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential visual effect of any remaining structures, platforms and disused roads on the landscape. <p>Note: The information presented below applies to all Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 as well as the proposed and existing EGI projects within a 30 km radius (noted in Table 7.5).</p> <p>Cumulative Impacts (Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential combined visual effect of the proposed three Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities; three Biesjesvlei BESS; three Biesjesvlei power lines and EGI; Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO, and other developments in the 30 km radius (i.e. existing and proposed Eskom power lines and the proposed fibre optic cable) seen together.
Heritage Impact Assessment (Archaeology and Cultural Landscape)	<p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Damage or destruction of archaeological materials; ▪ Damage or destruction of graves; ▪ Damage to built heritage resources; and ▪ Intrusion of power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape. <p>Operational Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intrusion of the power line and MTS into the landscape. <p>Decommissioning Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape.

Specialist Assessment / Input	Key issues to be addressed
	<p>Cumulative Impacts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Impacts to archaeology, graves, buildings; and ▪ Intrusion of the power line, MTS and equipment into the landscape.
Palaeontology Site Sensitivity Verification Report	<p>Note: The information presented below applies equivalently to Projects 1 to 10 (i.e. Biesjesvlei PV1 to 3; Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to 3; and Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The study area has been confirmed as low to very low palaeo-sensitivity. Provided that the Chance Fossil Finds Protocol is incorporated into the Environmental Management Programmes (EMPrs) and fully implemented during the construction phase, there are no objections on palaeontological heritage grounds to authorisation of the proposed projects. No further specialist palaeontological studies, reporting, monitoring or mitigation are considered necessary for the proposed projects. This approach is accepted and supported by the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA), as indicated in Appendix G.6 of this Final Scoping Report (FSR).
Geotechnical Assessment	<p>Note: The information presented below applies equivalently to Projects 1 to 10 (i.e. Biesjesvlei PV1 to 3; Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to 3; Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to 3; and Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).</p> <p>Construction Phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Displacement of geologic materials. <p>Construction, Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Contamination of subsoils and loss of topsoil. <p>Operational and Decommissioning Phases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increased unnatural hard surfaces yielding increased runoff, potentially increasing erosion.
Civil Aviation Site Sensitivity Verification Report	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A Civil Aviation Site Sensitivity Verification was undertaken, which confirmed that the study area does not include any civil aviation installations, and therefore the low sensitivity is confirmed. No further requirements need to be fulfilled in terms of the Assessment Protocols of March 2020 (GN R320).

The issues raised by stakeholders during the 30-day review period on the Draft Scoping Report are in line with the potential impacts and issues listed in Table 7.6 for further assessment in the EIA Phase. The issues raised by stakeholders are included in Issues and Responses Trail in Appendix G.7 of this FSR. Refer to Table 7.7 for a summary of the key issues raised during the Scoping Phase.

Table 7.7: Summary of Issues raised by Stakeholders during the 30-day comment period on the Draft Scoping Report

Summary of Key Issues / Comments Raised	Summary of Response
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ General comments from the Competent Authority on listed activities, comment from relevant stakeholders that have jurisdiction of the geographical areas in Listing Notice 3 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), recommendations for layout and sensitivity maps, public participation process (PPP), specialist assessments and cumulative impact assessment to be undertaken during the EIA Phase. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The Draft Scoping Report (DSR) included the relevant listed activities triggered by the proposed projects. As more information becomes available in the EIA Phase, an amended Application Form may be submitted, if needed. ▪ The relevant officials that have jurisdiction of the relevant geographical areas in Listing Notice 3 have provided comment on the DSR, and where comment has not been received, proof of follow-up has been provided in Appendix G.4 of this Final Scoping Report (FSR). ▪ Layout and sensitivity maps were provided accordingly in the DSR and have been retained in this FSR. ▪ The PPP is being undertaken in compliance with the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). ▪ The recommendations for specialist assessments and cumulative impact assessments will be addressed during the EIA Phase when the specialist assessments / reports / inputs are provided.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The EIA Report must comply with the relevant requirements of the EIA guideline for renewable energy projects and BirdLife South Africa Birds and Solar Energy best practice guidelines (Jenkins et al. 2017). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The relevant guidelines will be considered and complied with, where relevant, during the EIA Phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Relevant stakeholders must be provided with the PPP documents available for comment during relevant stages of the EIA Process e.g. DFFE Biodiversity and Conservation, Provincial Departments Local Municipality etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All relevant stakeholders and organs of state were included on the project stakeholder database since inception of the Scoping and EIA Process and were provided with an opportunity to comment on the Draft Scoping Reports during the Scoping Phase. All relevant stakeholders and organs of state will also be provided with an opportunity to comment on the Draft EIA Reports during the EIA Phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The proposed projects do not take place within protected areas and their buffers in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (NEMPAA), nor do they take place within National Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NPAES) focus areas. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ This comment is concurred with, as described in Chapter 3 of the DSR and FSR.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Impact of the potential increase in crime and stock theft as a result of the construction activities. ▪ Notification of an ongoing security system in place by the Smithfield Agriculture. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ As indicated in Table 7.6 above, at Scoping, the Agriculture Specialist identified improved security against stock theft and other crime due to the presence of security infrastructure and security personnel as a potential positive impact. This will be detailed during the EIA Phase. ▪ The Project Applicant will consider potentially contributing financially to this safety and security programme in the future.

Summary of Key Issues / Comments Raised	Summary of Response
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potential impact on civil aviation, whereby a formal application must be lodged with Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS) for a formal obstacle assessment to be conducted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ATNS has not provided any feedback on the proposed project to date. Proof of follow up communication is included in Appendix G.4 of this FSR. Note that the Applicant will submit an application with the ATNS Obstacle Evaluator for a formal obstacle assessment to be conducted (outside of this EIA Process).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA): Impacts on heritage features and acceptance of the approach towards the Palaeontology Site Sensitivity Verification (SSV). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Heritage Impact Assessment required under Section 38 (8) of the National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999) (NHRA) will be undertaken during the EIA Phase and will be included in the Draft EIA Report. Based on SAHRA's feedback, no further assessment is required for palaeontology, and the SSV is sufficient for the EIA Phase as well.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS): General notes on when a Water Use Authorisation may be required in terms of activities close to or within aquatic features or abstraction of water etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a Water Use Licence or General Authorisation (GA) is needed, this will be applied for post Environmental Authorisation (EA) (should such authorisation be granted), i.e. consent will be applied for from the DWS prior to commencement of the proposed projects.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from the DWS: Measures to manage storm water, erosion, spills, waste, hazardous material, and pollution occurring as a result of the proposed projects must be specified. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The relevant specialists will provide impact management actions regarding these aspects, which will be included in the Environmental Management Programmes (EMPrs) during the EIA Phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from Eskom: Recommendations for the placement of the Main Transmission Substation (MTS) to ensure that other Independent Power Producers (IPPs) have access to the MTS in the future. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Eskom comments regarding the MTS are noted and acknowledged. VulPro's comments regarding the presence of a temporary Cape Vulture roost on existing transmission and distribution power line infrastructure within the study area is noted and acknowledged. The actual location of the LILO has not been confirmed at this stage. At Scoping, only a corridor for the LILO has been indicated within the 3060 ha study area. The location of the MTS and the location / actual route of the LILO will be updated and finalised during the EIA Phase. This approach is suitable because one of the objectives of Scoping is to identify and confirm the preferred site. The preferred site in this case is the 3060 ha study area. One of the objectives of the EIA Phase is to identify the location of the development footprint within the approved site as contemplated in the accepted scoping report. Therefore, the exact placement / location and layout of the MTS and LILO i.e. the development footprint, will be confirmed and finalised in the EIA Phase, based on the comments received from Eskom and VulPro during the Scoping Phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from VulPro: Recommendations for the placement of the Loop-In-Loop-Out (LILO) to the Eskom Beta Delphi 1 400 kV Transmission Power Line based on the presence of a temporary Cape Vulture power line roost. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from Openserve: Once detailed plans of the proposed projects are available, these need to be submitted to Openserve, in order to indicate their existing/proposed underground and/or overhead services. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Openserve will be contacted by the relevant parties prior to the commencement of the proposed projects, should EA be granted.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comments from the Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs (DESTEA): Potential environmental impacts need to be evaluated and mitigation measures included in the EMPr during the EIA Phase. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This will be complied with during the EIA Phase, which will include compiling EMPrs for managing all potential impacts associated with the proposed projects.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Queries / comments from Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs): Impact of the proposed projects on gravel roads and who will be responsible for maintenance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Project Applicant will maintain access roads that are impacted on by the proposed development during the construction and decommissioning phases.

Summary of Key Issues / Comments Raised	Summary of Response
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Queries / comments from I&APs: Clarity on the number of employment opportunities during the construction phase, the length of the construction period and the extent (hectares) of the proposed projects. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The information was provided in Chapter 2 of the DSR and has been summarised for the stakeholder in Appendix G.7 of this FSR.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Queries / comments from I&APs: Prevention and occurrence of fires. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Specific recommendations regarding fire management will be included in the EMPs to be compiled during the EIA Phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Queries / comments from I&APs: Consideration of hunting on adjacent farms. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ It will be recommended during the EIA Phase that an open form of communication should be maintained between the surrounding farm owners and the Contractor and PV Facility Manager with regards to planned hunts. This will be included in the EMPs to be compiled during the EIA Phase.

Based on the comments received on the Draft Scoping Report relating to the proposed projects and Plan of Study for EIA, it is inferred that there is a reasonable level of agreement from IA&Ps on the suggested Plan of Study for EIA (Refer to the Comments and Responses Report in Appendix G.7 of this FSR). Based on the comments, no updates to the proposed Plan of Study for EIA were necessary.

7.7 Alternatives to be assessed in the EIA Phase

A description of the alternatives that will be assessed or considered during the EIA Phase is provided in Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report. However, they have been summarised below for ease of reference, also highlighting which alternatives are deemed unfeasible for further assessment as per the motivation provided in Chapter 5:

- **No-go Alternative:**

- The no-go alternative assumes that the proposed project will not go ahead i.e. it is the option of not constructing the proposed project. This alternative would result in no environmental impacts (positive and negative) on the preferred site or surrounding local area, as a result of the proposed project. It will provide a baseline to inform the impact assessment during the EIA Phase. The no-go alternative will be assessed by all the specialists on the project team during the EIA Phase.

- **Land Use Alternative:**

- The current land-use within the study area is limited to grazing i.e. the production potential of the land within the study area is limited to only being suitable as grazing land. The buildable areas are confirmed as low to medium agricultural sensitivity. Cultivation (i.e. agricultural land-use) is not deemed feasible as a land-use alternative for assessment during the EIA Phase. The proposed project will also have wider societal benefits of generating additional income and employment in the local economy. The development of the proposed project at the preferred site is more favourable than the agricultural land-use alternative.

- **Type of Activity Alternative:**

- Essentially, the proposed Solar PV facility governs the type of activity associated with the proposed projects. The activity to be undertaken for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) is the transmission of electricity that will be generated by the proposed Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities. The only feasible method of transmitting the electricity to the national grid is via the proposed MTS and power lines (i.e. LILO). **Therefore, no other activity types were considered or deemed appropriate.**

- **Preferred Site and Development Footprint within the site:**

- The preferred site for all the proposed Biesjesvlei Projects 1 to 10 comprises the farm portions listed in Chapters 2 and 5 of the Scoping Report, which serves as the study area for this Scoping and EIA Process.
- At a specific (local) level, sites on the above listed farm properties were deemed suitable due to all the site selection factors (such as land availability, distance to the national grid, site accessibility, topography, current land use and landowner willingness) being favourable.
- Furthermore, a screening and site sensitivity verification (SSV) exercise of the study area was undertaken by the specialist team during the Scoping Phase. This led to the identification of the Buildable Areas within the preferred site. The Buildable Areas avoid the no-go sensitivities identified by the specialists. The preliminary development footprint and layout was identified based on this.

- The preferred project layout will be detailed and confirmed following the input from the various specialists during the EIA Phase. A preliminary layout plan has been included in Section 7.9 of this chapter.
- **Technology Alternatives:**
 - There are no feasible technology alternatives for power lines and substations.

It is important to note that where alternatives are not feasible or will not be assessed, a motivation has been provided in Chapter 5 of this Scoping Report. The preferred alternatives will be assessed during the EIA Phase.

7.8 Terms of Reference for the Specialist Assessments

The ToRs for the Specialist Assessments will essentially consist of the generic assessment requirements and the specific issues identified for each discipline. None of the comments received from I&APs and authorities during the 30-day commenting period of the Draft Scoping Report warranted an update of the ToRs for the Specialist Assessments below.

Refer to Chapter 1 and Chapter 4 for the list of Specialist Assessments, SSVs, Letter of Opinions, and Technical Inputs that have been identified following consultation with the DFFE during the Pre-Application Meeting held on 06 October 2023, as well as the Screening Tool, to determine a baseline description of the prevalent environmental sensitivities within the proposed project site and based on an understanding of potential issues associated with the proposed projects. Additional Specialist Assessments could possibly be commissioned as a result of concerns raised during the Scoping Phase. However, at the time of submission of this FSR to the DFFE for consideration, no additional Specialist Assessments were warranted.

The ToR for each Specialist Assessment is discussed in detail below.

The requirements for Specialist Assessments are specified in Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), and, where relevant, the Assessment Protocols that were published on 20 March 2020, in GG 43110, GN R320; and on 30 October 2020 in GG 43855, GN R1150. However, the Geotechnical inputs are in the form of a letter of professional opinion, thus the aforementioned legislation will thus not apply.

The Assessment Protocols stipulate the procedures for the assessment and Minimum Reporting Criteria for identified environmental themes in terms of Sections 24 (5) (a) and (h) and Section 44 of the NEMA when applying for EA. The Assessment Protocols in GN R320 include the following sections:

- **Part A:** This includes the SSV requirements where a Specialist Assessment is required but no Specific Assessment Protocol has been prescribed. This is applicable to the following specialist assessments for this project: Visual Impact Assessment; Heritage Impact Assessment; and Palaeontology Assessment. The current use of the land and the environmental sensitivity of the site under consideration identified by the Screening Tool, where determined, must be verified and confirmed by undertaking an SSV. An SSV must be compiled. Where there are no sensitivity layers on the Screening Tool for a particular Specialist Assessment, then this must

be stated in the actual Specialist Assessment. For example, as of March 2024, there are no sensitivity layers on the Screening Tool for Geotechnical features. For all Specialist Assessments that fall within the ambit of Part A of GN R320, Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations, as amended, must be complied with.

- **Part B:** This includes the SSV requirements and the Assessment and Minimum Reporting Criteria where a Specialist Assessment is required, and a specific Assessment Protocol has been prescribed. The following prescribed protocols are relevant to the proposed projects:
 - **Agriculture:** SSV Report required and specific Assessment Protocol to be followed. This applies to all onshore wind and/or solar PV energy activities requiring EA (which is applicable to Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO) as it will support the Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities);
 - **Terrestrial Biodiversity:** SSV Report required and specific Assessment Protocol to be followed. This applies to all relevant activities requiring EA (based on the classification identified by the Screening Tool);
 - **Aquatic Biodiversity:** SSV Report required and specific Assessment Protocol to be followed. This applies to all relevant activities requiring EA (based on the classification identified by the Screening Tool); and
 - **Civil Aviation:** SSV Report required and specific Assessment Protocol to be followed. This applies to all relevant activities requiring EA (based on the classification identified by the Screening Tool).

GN 1150 prescribes protocols in respect of specific environmental themes for the assessment of, as well as the minimum report content requirements on, the environmental impacts for activities requiring EA. GN 1150 includes a protocol for the specialist assessment and minimum report content requirements for environmental impacts on a) **terrestrial animal species** and b) **terrestrial plant species**. The requirements of these protocols apply from the date of publication (i.e. from 30 October 2020). Therefore, these protocols are applicable to the projects.

GN 1150 was amended on 28 July 2023 in GG 49028, GN 3717, whereby the term “terrestrial” was removed from GN 1150. This does not apply to the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Species Assessment and Avifauna Assessment, as these studies were commissioned in November 2022, and prior to the date of publication of the GN 3717 amendment. The latter studies will be undertaken in compliance with GN 1150, as applicable.

7.8.1 Agricultural Compliance Statement

The Agricultural Compliance Statement will comply with the Assessment Protocols that were published on 20 March 2020, in GG 43110, GN R320. This specifically includes the Agriculture Protocol that applies to all onshore wind and/or solar PV energy activities requiring EA, which will be complied with for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO), as it supports the Biesjesvlei Solar PV facilities. GN R320 replaces the requirements of Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

The Agricultural Compliance Statement will include the following:

- Specification of development setbacks or buffers required (if any), and clear motivations for these recommendations;
- A map showing the proposed development footprint (including supporting infrastructure) with a 50 m buffered development envelope, overlaid on the agricultural sensitivity map generated by the Screening Tool;
- Calculations of the physical development footprint area for each land parcel as well as the total physical development footprint area of the proposed development including supporting infrastructure;
- Confirmation that the development footprint is in line with the allowable development limits contained in GN R320 (as applicable);
- Identification of the direct, indirect and cumulative impacts associated with the proposed development, where possible, (although an assessment and rating of impacts is not strictly required for a Compliance Statement stipulated in GN R320);
- Cumulative impacts to be identified by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above);
- Confirmation that all reasonable measures have been taken through micro-siting to avoid or minimise fragmentation and disturbance of agricultural activities;
- A substantiated statement indicating the level of acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should go ahead or not; as well as any conditions to which this statement is subjected;
- A description of assumptions, any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge or data, and limitations;
- The compliance statement must be applicable to the preferred site and proposed development footprint; confirm that the site is of “low” or “medium” sensitivity for agriculture; and indicate whether or not the proposed development will have an unacceptable impact on the agricultural production capability of the site.
- A signed specialist statement of independence and details and relevant expertise as well as the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP) registration number of the specialist, including a Curriculum Vitae;
- Where required, provide recommendations with regards to proposed impact management outcomes or any monitoring requirements for inclusion in the EMPs for the proposed projects, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports; and
- Determine mitigation and/or management measures, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs. If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.2 Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment and Species Compliance Statement

The Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment and Terrestrial Animal and Terrestrial Plant Species Compliance Statements will be undertaken for the proposed MTS and LILO project, and one report will be compiled to address these projects.

The specialist confirmed that the Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity of the study area warrants an Impact Assessment, which will be in adherence to the following gazetted Assessment Protocols, which replace the requirements of Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended):

- Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Terrestrial Biodiversity (GG 43110 / GN R320, 20 March 2020).

The specialist confirmed that the Terrestrial Plant and Animal Species sensitivity of the study area warrants Compliance Statements, which will be in adherence to the following gazetted Assessment Protocols, which replace the requirements of Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended):

- Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental Impacts on Animal Species and Plant Species (GG 43855 / GN R1150, 30 October 2020).

The Terrestrial Biodiversity Specialist Assessment, and Terrestrial Animal and Plant Species Compliance Statements, will be based on existing information, national and provincial databases, and professional experience and fieldwork conducted by the specialist, as considered necessary and in accordance with relevant legislated requirements. The Assessment Report and Compliance Statements must also be in adherence to any additional relevant legislation and guidelines that may be deemed necessary. One combined report will be provided to address the Terrestrial Biodiversity, Plant Species and Animal Species Protocols. Note that the Avifauna Assessment is undertaken separately, in compliance with the Terrestrial Animal Species (GG 43855 / GN R1150, 30 October 2020).

The Terrestrial Biodiversity Specialist Assessment will include the following:

- Contact details of the specialist, SACNASP registration number, field of expertise, relevant experience, and a Curriculum Vitae;
- A signed statement of independence by the specialist;
- A statement on the duration, date and season of the site inspection and the relevance of the season to the outcome of the assessment;
- A description of the methodology used to undertake the SSV and impact assessment and site inspection, including equipment and modelling used, where relevant;
- A description of assumptions and limitations in the report and any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge or data as well as a statement of the timing and intensity of site inspection observations;
- A location of the areas not suitable for development, which are to be avoided during construction and operation (where relevant);

- Description of the terrestrial ecology and ecosystem features of the project site, with focus on features that are to be potentially impacted by the proposed project. The description will include the major habitat forms within the study area, giving due consideration to terrestrial biodiversity;
- A motivation must be provided if there were development footprints identified that were identified as having a “low” terrestrial biodiversity sensitivity and that were not considered appropriate;
- Determination, description and mapping of the baseline environmental condition and sensitivity of the study area. Specification of development setbacks or buffers required, and clear motivations for these recommendations. Include a description of the extent of disturbance and transformation of the site;
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Assessment of local and regional biodiversity conservation planning relevant to the project area;
- Identification and assessment of the potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed developments on terrestrial biodiversity:
 - Cumulative impacts to be assessed by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above).
 - Impact significance must be rated both without and with mitigation, and must cover the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project. The Impact Assessment Methodology to be followed is contained in Section 7.5.1 of this Chapter, and must include the degree to which impacts and risks can be mitigated; reversed; and can cause loss of irreplaceable resources.
- A substantiated statement indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should go ahead or not; and any conditions to which this statement is subjected;
- Identification of any additional protocols, licensing and/or permitting requirements that are relevant to the project and the implications thereof;
- Assessment of the project alternatives and identification of a preferred alternative with motivation for this selection;
- Provision of recommendations with regards to potential monitoring programmes; and
- Determine mitigation, impact management actions and outcomes, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. Also, identify best practice management actions, monitoring requirements, and rehabilitation guidelines for all identified impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Terrestrial Plant and Animal Species Compliance Statements will be prepared by a specialist registered with SACNASP and will include the following:

- The compliance statement will be applicable to the study area; confirm that the study area is of “low” sensitivity for terrestrial animal species and terrestrial plant species; and indicate whether or not the proposed development will have any impact on Species of Conservation Concern (SCC);
- Contact details and relevant experience as well as the SACNASP registration number of the specialist, including a Curriculum Vitae;
- Signed statement of independence by the specialist;

- Statement on the duration, date and season of the site inspection and the relevance of the season to the outcome of the assessment;
- A description of the methodology used to undertake the site survey and to prepare the compliance statement, including equipment and modelling used where relevant;
- The mean density of observations/number of samples sites per unit area, where possible, as noted in the Species Environmental Assessment Guideline;
- Where required, proposed impact management actions and outcomes or any monitoring requirements for inclusion in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports;
- A description of the assumptions made and any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge or data; and
- Any conditions to which the compliance statement is subjected.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs (Part B – Section 1). If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.3 Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment

The Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment will be undertaken for the proposed project. The specialist confirmed that the Aquatic Biodiversity sensitivity of the study area warrants an Impact Assessment, which will be in adherence to the following gazetted Assessment Protocols, which replace the requirements of Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended):

- Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Aquatic Biodiversity (GG 43110 / GN R320, 20 March 2020).

The Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment is to be based on existing information, national and provincial databases, and professional experience and fieldwork conducted by the Specialist, as considered necessary and in accordance with relevant legislated requirements (e.g. GN R320). The Impact Assessment Report must also be in adherence to any additional relevant legislation and guidelines that may be deemed necessary.

The Aquatic Biodiversity and Species Impact Assessment will include the following:

- Contact details of the specialist, SACNASP registration number, field of expertise, relevant experience, and a Curriculum Vitae;
- A signed statement of independence by the specialist;
- A statement on the duration, date and season of the site inspection and the relevance of the season to the outcome of the assessment;

- A description of the methodology used to undertake the SSV and impact assessment and site inspection, including equipment and modelling used, where relevant;
- Description of the aquatic biodiversity and ecosystems of the project site, with focus on features that are to be potentially impacted by the proposed project. The description should include the aquatic ecosystem types, presence of aquatic species, the major habitat forms giving due consideration to the composition of aquatic species communities, their habitat, distribution and movement patterns within the study area;
- Describe the extent of disturbance and transformation of the site, as necessary;
- Indication of the historic ecological condition (reference) and the Present Ecological State (PES) of identified aquatic features (in- stream, riparian and floodplain habitat) on site that are to be potentially impacted by the proposed project i.e. possible changes to the channel and flow regime (surface and groundwater); and comment on the recommended ecological condition of aquatic habitats to be achieved within the project area;
- A map (if possible) describing the ecosystem processes that operate in relation to the aquatic ecosystems on and immediately adjacent to the project site (e.g. movement of surface and subsurface water, recharge, discharge, sediment transport, etc.);
- Identify and delineate wetlands that may occur on the sites, using the relevant protocols established;
- An indication of the national and provincial priority status of the aquatic ecosystem, including a description of the criteria for the given status (i.e. if the site includes a wetland or a river freshwater ecosystem priority area or sub catchment, a strategic water source area, whether or not they are free-flowing rivers, wetland clusters, a critical biodiversity or ecologically sensitive area);
- Consideration of seasonal changes and long-term trends, such as due to climate change;
- Identify any SCC or protected species on site;
- Compilation of a Risk Matrix and determining whether an application for Water Use Authorisation (e.g. General Authorisation or Water Use License) is required and if so, determining the requirements thereof;
- Assessment of local and regional biodiversity conservation planning relevant to the project area;
- A motivation must be provided if there were development footprints identified that were identified as having a “low” aquatic biodiversity sensitivity and that were not considered appropriate;
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Assessment of the project alternatives and identification of a preferred alternative with motivation for this selection;
- Determination, description and mapping of the baseline environmental condition and sensitivity of the study area. Specification of development setbacks or suitable construction and operational buffers for the aquatic ecosystem, using the accepted methodologies, and clear motivations for these recommendations including a description of the location of areas not suitable for development and to be avoided during construction and operation, where relevant;
- A section indicating how the Screening Tool was interrogated and whether classification of the site is accurate or not. If not, it must be motivated why the classification is not accurate;
- The threat status of the ecosystem and species as identified by the Screening Tool;
- Identification and assessment of the potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed developments on aquatic biodiversity and species:

- Cumulative impacts to be assessed by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above).
- Impact significance must be rated both without and with mitigation, and must cover the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project. The Impact Assessment Methodology to be followed is contained in Section 7.5.1 of this Chapter, and must include the degree to which impacts and risks can be mitigated; reversed; and can cause loss of irreplaceable resources.
- A substantiated statement indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should receive approval or not; and any conditions to which this statement is subjected;
- A description of assumptions and limitations in the report and any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge or data;
- Identification of any additional protocols, licensing and/or permitting requirements that are relevant to the project and the implications thereof;
- Provision of recommendations with regards to potential monitoring programmes; and
- Determine mitigation, impact management actions and outcomes, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. Also, identify best practice management actions, monitoring requirements, and rehabilitation guidelines for all identified impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs (Part B – Section 1). If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.4 Avifauna Impact Assessment

The Avifauna Specialist is required to compile a Specialist Assessment in adherence to the protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements for Environmental Impacts on Animal Species (GG 43855 / GN R1150, 30 October 2020). This protocol replaces the requirements of Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended).

The Avifauna Assessment will also be undertaken in terms of the following:

- Guidelines for the Implementation of the Terrestrial Flora and Terrestrial Fauna Species Protocols for EIAs in South Africa produced by the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) on behalf of the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (2020); and

- The BirdLife South Africa (BLSA) Guidelines for assessing and monitoring the impact of solar power generating facilities on birds in southern Africa⁴ to determine the level of survey effort that is required.

The pre-construction avifaunal monitoring programme followed the Regime 2 protocol as defined in the Birds and Solar Energy best practice guidelines (Jenkins et al. 2017). This is based on the size of the study area (> 150 ha), the high avifaunal sensitivity (based on the animal species theme on the Screening Tool), and type of technology that will be used for the proposed project. The duration, in terms of data collection, for this study was a minimum of 3 surveys (of which one must be in the peak season) of 3-4 days. Surveys were undertaken in November 2022 (early wet season); February 2023 (wet season); April 2023 (late wet season). This complies with the requirements of the Best Practice Guidelines available at the time (Jenkins et al., 2017).

The avifaunal sensitivity was determined based on the number of priority species occurring, or potentially present, within or around the study area, the regional or global threat status of these species, avifaunal habitat found in the area, population of priority species, bird movement corridor and proximity to Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas.

Based on the findings of the site visit and the SSV undertaken by the specialist, it was confirmed that a full assessment is required during the EIA Phase.

The Avifauna Specialist Assessment will be based on existing information, national and provincial databases, and professional experience and fieldwork conducted by the Specialist, as considered necessary and in accordance with relevant legislated requirements. The Assessment Report must also be in adherence to any additional relevant legislation and guidelines that may be deemed necessary.

The Avifauna Impact Assessment will include the following:

- Contact details of the specialist, SACNASP registration number, field of expertise, relevant experience, and a Curriculum Vitae;
- A signed statement of independence by the specialist;
- A statement on the duration, date and season of the site inspection and the relevance of the season to the outcome of the assessment;
- A description of the methodology used to undertake the SSV, impact assessment and site inspection, including equipment and modelling used where relevant;
- A description of the mean density of observations/number of sample sites per unit area of site inspection observations, where possible, as noted in the Species Environmental Assessment Guideline;
- Details of all SCC found or suspected to occur on site, ensuring sensitive species are appropriately reported;
- Finalisation of the findings and outcomes of the pre-construction avifaunal monitoring programme that was conducted over a period of six months in accordance with the BLSA guideline for Solar PV developments (i.e. Regime 2);

⁴ Jenkins, A.R., Ralston-Patton, Smit-Robinson, A.H. 2017. Guidelines for assessing and monitoring the impact of solar power generating facilities on birds in southern Africa. BirdLife South Africa. BirdLife South Africa by Jenkins, A.R., Ralston-Patton, Smit- Robinson, A.H. 2017.

- Determination, description and mapping of the baseline environmental condition and sensitivity of the study area in terms of avifaunal features such as habitat use, roosting, feeding and nesting/breeding;
- Specification of development setbacks or buffers required, and provide clear motivations for these recommendations, including a description of the location of areas not suitable for development and to be avoided during construction and operation, where relevant;
- A motivation must be provided if there were any development footprints identified as having “low” or “medium” terrestrial animal species sensitivity and were not considered appropriate.
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Assessment of the project alternatives and identification of a preferred alternative with motivation for this selection;
- Describe the affected environment from an avifaunal perspective, including consideration of the surrounding habitats and avifaunal features (e.g. Ramsar sites, Important Bird Areas, wetlands, migration routes, feeding, roosting and nesting areas, etc.);
- Describe and map bird habitats on the site, based on on-site monitoring, desk-top review, collation of available information, studies in the local area and previous experience. The assessment must also consider the maps generated by the Screening Tool;
- Identification and assessment of the potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed development on birds:
 - Cumulative impacts to be assessed by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above).
 - Impact significance must be rated both without and with mitigation, and must cover the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project. The Impact Assessment Methodology to be followed is contained in Section 7.5.1 of this Chapter and must include the degree to which impacts and risks can be mitigated; reversed; and can cause loss of irreplaceable resources.
- A reasoned opinion, based on the findings of the specialist assessment, indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should receive approval or not; and any conditions to which the opinion is subjected if relevant;
- A description of the assumptions made, any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge or data, and limitations in the report;
- A section indicating how the Screening Tool was interrogated and whether classification of the site is accurate or not. If not, it must be motivated why the classification is not accurate;
- Identification of any additional protocols, licensing and/or permitting requirements that are relevant to the project and the implications thereof;
- Recommendations for mitigation of impacts to acceptable levels (where possible) and potential monitoring programmes;
- Determine mitigation, impact management actions and outcomes, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. Also, identify best practice management actions, monitoring requirements, and rehabilitation guidelines for all identified impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs (Part B – Section 1). If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.5 Visual Impact Assessment

The Visual Specialist is required to undertake a Specialist Assessment in adherence with “Part A - General Protocol for the SSV and Minimum Report Content Requirements where a Specialist Assessment is required but no specific Environmental Theme Protocol has been prescribed” (GG 43110 / GNR 320, 20 March 2020).

The VIA Report must be compiled in adherence to Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), as well as to any other additional relevant legislation and guidelines that may be deemed necessary, if applicable.

The VIA must include the following:

- Determination, description and mapping of the baseline environmental condition and sensitivity of the study area. Specify set-backs or buffers, and provide clear reasons for these recommendations;
- Description of the visual character and visual absorption capacity of the local area. Any significant visual features or visual disturbances must be identified and mapped, as well as any sensitive visual receptors within the study area or within viewsheds of the proposed projects;
- Assessment of the preferred project layout following the SSV and layout identification;
- Viewshed for various elements of the proposed development must be calculated, defined and presented, and the varying sensitivities of these viewsheds must be highlighted;
- Mapping of visual sensitivity of the site taking into consideration visual receptors outside the site, and sensitivity to development on the site for potentially affected visual receptors of “very high” sensitivity;
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Identification and assessment of the potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed development on the receiving environment from a visual perspective;
 - Cumulative impacts to be assessed by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above).
 - Impact significance must be rated both without and with mitigation, and must cover the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project. The Impact Assessment Methodology to be followed is contained in Section 7.5.1 of this Chapter.
- Maps depicting viewsheds or line of sight across the sites should be generated and included in the VIA Report. These maps must indicate current viewsheds/visual landscape/obstructions,

as well as expected visual impacts during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the proposed projects, as relevant.

- A reasoned opinion indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should go ahead or not;
- A description of assumptions and limitations in the report;
- A section indicating how the Screening Tool was interrogated and whether classification of the site is accurate or not. If not, it must be motivated why the classification is not accurate;
- Identification of any additional protocols, licensing and/or permitting requirements that are relevant to the project and the implications thereof;
- Specialist Declaration of Independence and Curriculum Vitae;
- Provide recommendations with regards to potential monitoring programmes; and
- Determine mitigation and/or management measures, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. Also, identify best practice management actions, monitoring requirements, and rehabilitation guidelines for all identified impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs (Part B – Section 1). If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.6 Heritage Impact Assessment

The Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be undertaken for the proposed projects. The Heritage Specialist is required to undertake a Specialist Assessment in adherence to “Part A - General Protocol for the SSV and Minimum Report Content Requirements where a Specialist Assessment is required but no specific Environmental Theme Protocol has been prescribed” (GG 43110 / GNR 320, 20 March 2020).

The HIA Report will be compiled in adherence to Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended). The HIA must also comply with the requirements of SAHRA and the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999). The HIA must also be in adherence to any other additional relevant legislation and guidelines that may be deemed necessary, if applicable.

The HIA must include the following:

- Description and assessment of the heritage features of the sites and surrounding area. This is to be based on desktop reviews, fieldwork, available databases and findings from other heritage studies in the area, where relevant. Reference to the grade of heritage feature and any heritage status the feature may have been awarded will be included (where possible);

- Specification of development setbacks or buffers required, and clear motivations for these recommendations;
- Map the heritage sensitivity for the study area, clearly showing any “no-go” areas in terms of heritage (i.e. “very high” sensitivity).
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Identify and assess the potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed developments on the full scope of heritage features, including archaeology and the cultural-historical landscape, as required by heritage legislation:
 - Cumulative impacts to be assessed by considering other renewable energy and EGI projects within 30 km of the proposed projects (refer to Table 7.5 above).
 - Impact significance must be rated both without and with mitigation, and must cover the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project. The Impact Assessment Methodology to be followed is contained in Section 7.5.1 of this Chapter.
- Liaison with the relevant authorities (i.e. SAHRA) in order to obtain a letter of approval, comments or a Permit in terms of the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999), including Regulations issued thereunder, as necessary. This also includes meeting the reporting requirements of SAHRA;
- A reasoned opinion indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should go ahead or not;
- A description of assumptions and limitations in the report;
- A section indicating how the Screening Tool was interrogated and whether classification of the site is accurate or not. If not, it must be motivated why the classification is not accurate;
- Identification of any additional protocols, licensing and/or permitting requirements that are relevant to the project and the implications thereof;
- Assessment of the project alternatives and identification of a preferred alternative with motivation for this selection;
- Specialist Declaration of Independence and Curriculum Vitae;
- Provide recommendations with regards to potential monitoring programmes; and
- Determine mitigation and/or management measures, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. Also, identify best practice management actions, monitoring requirements, and rehabilitation guidelines for all identified impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making; and
- Review the Generic EMPs for Substations and Power Lines (GN R435) and confirm if there are any specific environmental sensitivities or attributes present on the project site and any resultant site-specific impact management outcomes and actions that are not included in the pre-approved generic EMPs (Part B – Section 1). If so, a list of the required specific impact management outcomes and actions must be provided.

7.8.7 Palaeontology SSV

The Palaeontology SSV has been undertaken for the following projects, and one report was compiled to address these 10 projects, as per DFFE's approval of the combination request:

- Projects 1 to 3 (Biesjesvlei PV1 to PV3);
- Projects 4 to 6 (Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to BESS 3); and
- Projects 7 to 9 (Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to EGI 3); and
- Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

This section therefore applies equivalently to all 10 of the above projects.

The Palaeontologist was required to undertake an SSV in adherence to with "Part A - General Protocol for the SSV and Minimum Report Content Requirements where a Specialist Assessment is required but no specific Environmental Theme Protocol has been prescribed" (GG 43110 / GNR 320, 20 March 2020).

The Palaeontologist conducted a site visit and field surveys in August 2023 in order to identify the level of sensitivity assigned to the study area, and to verify and confirm this sensitivity and land use as per the Screening Tool. The Palaeontology SSV is included in Appendix E.7 of this Scoping Report. According to the Screening Tool, the majority of the study area is of Medium to Very High palaeo-sensitivity. This provisional assessment has been contested by the specialist, based on a 2-day palaeontological site visit. It is concluded that the study area is of low to very low palaeo-sensitivity. If any fossiliferous deposits are exposed by surface clearance or excavations during the construction phase of the development, the Chance Fossils Finds Protocol included in Appendix E.7 should be fully implemented.

Pending the discovery of significant, previously unrecorded fossil sites in the Construction Phase (which can be handled using a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol); and provided that the Chance Fossil Finds Protocol is incorporated into the EMPs and fully implemented during the construction phase, the specialist has confirmed that no further specialist palaeontological studies, reporting, monitoring or mitigation are considered necessary for the proposed developments. The specialist also confirmed that there are no fatal flaws and no objections on palaeontological heritage grounds to the authorisation of the 10 proposed projects. This approach is accepted and supported by the SAHRA, as indicated in Appendix G.6 of this FSR.

7.8.8 Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion

The Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion has been undertaken for the following projects, and one report was compiled to address these 10 projects, as per DFFE's approval of the combination request, and approval that a letter of professional opinion could be undertaken instead of a full study:

- Projects 1 to 3 (Biesjesvlei PV1 to PV3);
- Projects 4 to 6 (Biesjesvlei BESS 1 to BESS 3); and
- Projects 7 to 9 (Biesjesvlei EGI 1 to EGI 3); and
- Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

This section therefore applies equivalently to all 10 of the above projects.

The primary objective of the letter of professional opinion is to confirm whether the study area is suitable from a geotechnical perspective and a statement of whether there are any fatal flaws.

The letter is not a full Geotechnical Assessment report that complies with Appendix 6 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended), but it does, on a desktop basis, summarise the geology of the area, including the likely distribution of potential geotechnical challenges related to the underlying geology for the proposed projects. The Geotechnical Letter of Professional Opinion is included as Appendix E.8 of this Scoping Report.

The Scope of Work for the letter of professional opinion includes:

- Determine whether problem soils are likely to be encountered within the study area;
- Describe the geology and anticipated soil conditions;
- Include a general discussion of possible and likely engineering characteristics of the respective geological materials;
- Identify possible development constraints that may be present across the study area, e.g., topographical constraints, major discontinuities, or shallow groundwater conditions (permanent or non-permanent);
- Evaluation of the seismic potential of the area based on available published literature;
- Provide commentary on any potentially sensitive areas across the study area, such as ridges, outcrops and exposures;
- Provide broad recommendations that may be used to guide the geotechnical design and plan future investigations within the study area;
- Specification of set-backs or buffers, and provide clear reasons for these recommendations;
- Provide review input on the preferred infrastructure layout following the sensitivity analysis and layout identification;
- Identify significant features or disturbances within the proposed project area and define any environmental risks in terms of geology or geotechnical features and the proposed project infrastructure;
- Identify the potential impacts of the proposed developments from a geotechnical perspective. This is not a formal assessment, however the impacts will be listed and described;
- A reasoned opinion indicating the acceptability of the proposed development and a recommendation if the development should go ahead or not;
- A description of assumptions and limitations;
- Specialist Declaration of Independence and Curriculum Vitae;
- Provide recommendations with regards to potential monitoring programmes; and
- Determine mitigation and/or management measures, which could be implemented to as far as possible, reduce the effect of negative impacts and enhance the effect of positive impacts. This will be included in the EMPs, which will be appended to the Draft and Final EIA Reports.

The Specialist is also required to:

- Incorporate and address relevant comments and concerns raised by the stakeholders, commenting authorities and I&APs prior to submitting the Final EIA Report to the Competent Authority for decision-making.

7.8.9 Civil Aviation

Civil Aviation Assessments are required to comply with the “Protocol for the Specialist Assessment and Minimum Report Content Requirements of Environmental Impacts on Civil Aviation Installations” (GG 43110 / GN R320, 20 March 2020). As indicated in Chapter 3, Chapter 4, and Appendix E.9 of this Scoping Report, the entire study area is classified as low sensitivity on the Screening Tool. Therefore, in line with GN R320, only an SSV is necessary to confirm the site as a low sensitivity. This has been verified and confirmed by means of a site visit. Therefore, there are no further requirements as per GN R320.

7.9 Project Layout to be Assessed/Refined during the EIA Phase

As noted in previous chapters, the study area / preferred site for all the proposed projects (i.e., Projects 1 to 10) comprises a combined footprint of 3 060 ha.

At the commencement of this Scoping and EIA Process, the study area was plotted on the National DFFE Screening Tool to identify high-level environmental sensitivities. The specialists considered these sensitivities and undertook SSVs within the study area, where required, in order to confirm or dispute the sensitivities identified by the Screening Tool.

The specialists then formulated environmental feature and sensitivity maps for the study area. Thereafter, the Project Developer took such sensitivities, and other considerations, into account and formulated the **Buildable Areas**, which avoid the no-go areas identified by the specialists.

The Buildable Areas were also used to inform the design of the layout.

The layout currently proposed at the Scoping Phase will be further refined and/or detailed during the EIA Phase in order to identify the location of the development footprint within the study area (i.e. the preferred site).

Figure 7.3 illustrates a preliminary project layout map for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO).

Figure 7.4 has been overlain with the identified environmental sensitivities for the proposed project. The no-go environmental sensitivities have been avoided. These maps serve as combined layout and sensitivity maps, to be refined as part of the EIA Phase, where necessary.

Proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO connection infrastructure near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

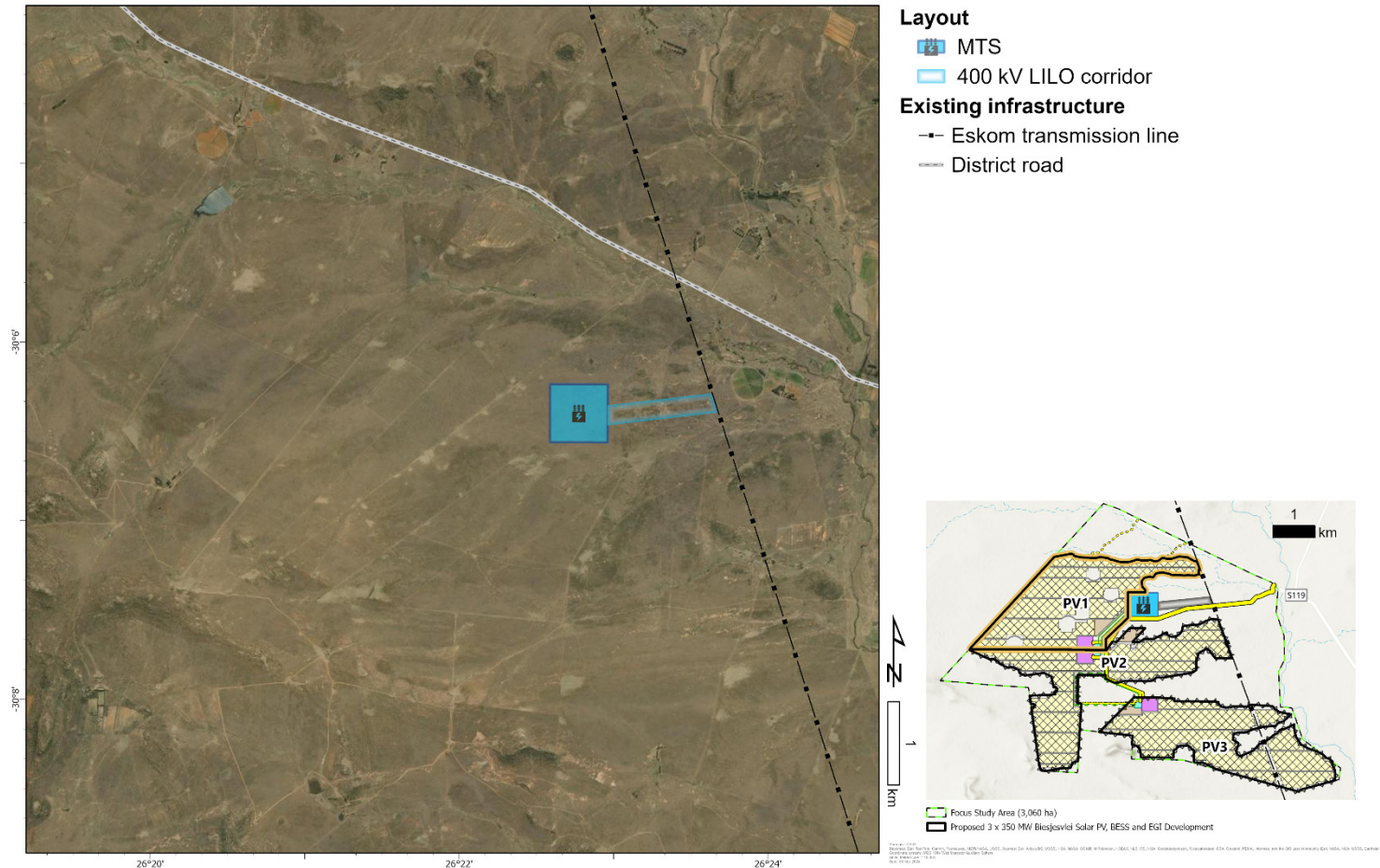


Figure 7.3: Preliminary Project Layout Map for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)

Proposed Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO connection infrastructure near Smithfield, Free State, South Africa

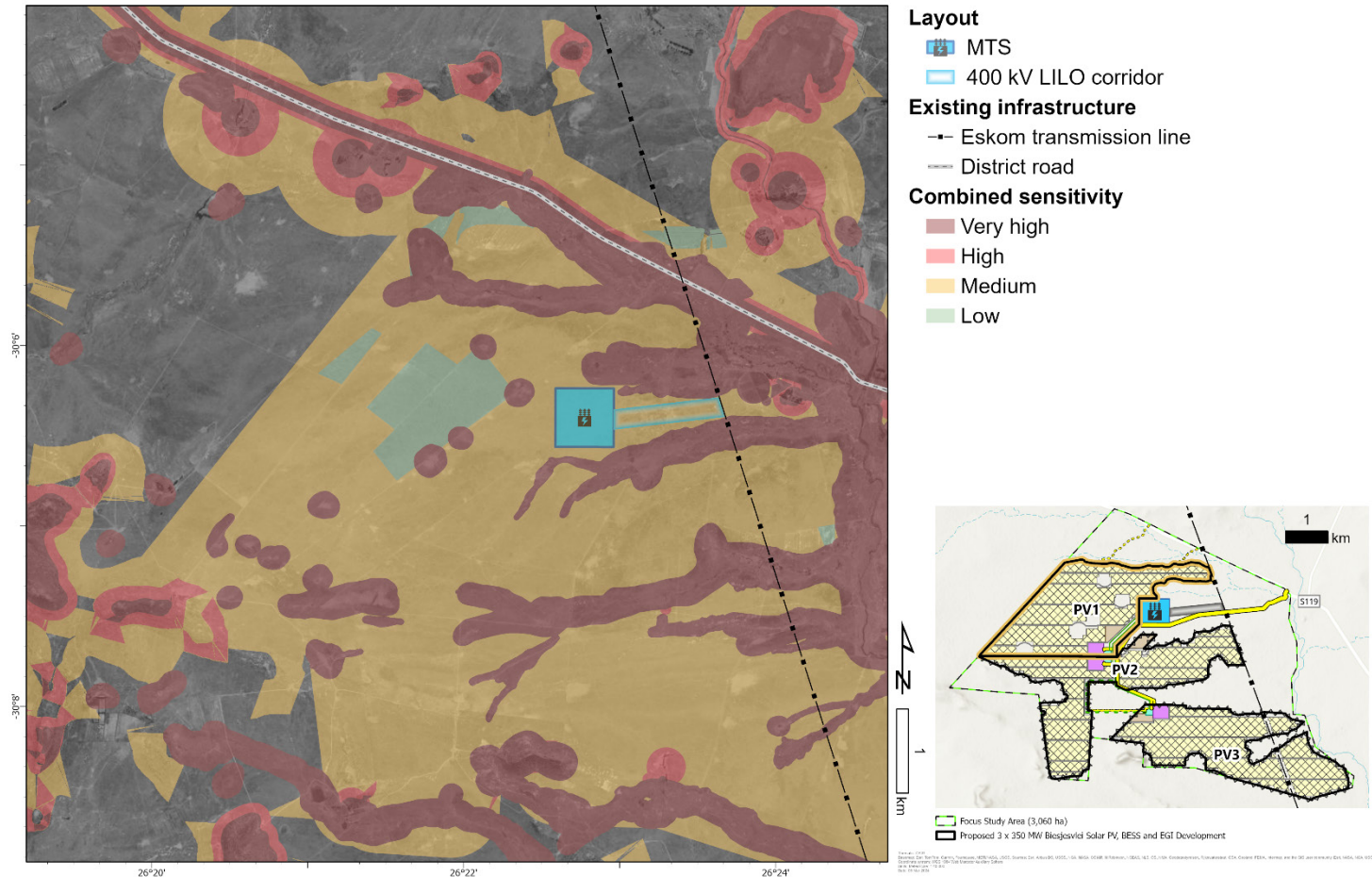


Figure 7.4: Combined Preliminary Project Layout and Sensitivity Map for Project 10 (Biesjesvlei MTS and LILO)